The History of al-Ṭabarī

VOLUME XXIII

The Zenith of the Marwānid House

TRANSLATED BY MARTIN HINDS
This volume covers the years 700-715 A.D., a period that witnessed the last five years of the caliphate of the Umayyad ʿAbd al-Malik b. Marwān and the whole of the caliphate of his son al-Walid. In retrospect, this period can be seen to have marked the apogee of Marwānid Umayyad power. It began with the dangerous revolt of the Iraqi tribal leader Ibn al-Ashfath, which seriously imperilled Marwānid control of Iraq and was countered with considerable difficulty; but this proved to be the last of the obstacles faced by ʿAbd al-Malik in the wake of the Second Civil War of 685-693. Thereafter he was able to preside over a strong and dynamic Arab kingdom, with al-Ḥajjāj b. Yusuf as his powerful governor of Iraq and the East.

When ʿAbd al-Malik died in 705, the caliphate passed to his son al-Walid, during whose decade of office al-Ḥajjāj remained at his post and further Arab expansion took place in Central Asia, in Sind, and in the Iberian Peninsula. To many of their contemporaries, the Arabs of that time must have looked like potential world conquerors.

The volume ends shortly after the deaths of al-Ḥajjāj and al-Walid and just two years before the dispatch in 717 of the ill-fated Arab expedition to Constantinople.
THE HISTORY OF AL-ΤABARĪ
AN ANNOTATED TRANSLATION

VOLUME XXIII

The Zenith of the Marwānid House
The Last Years of 'Abd al-Malik
And
The Caliphate of al-Walīd
A.D. 700–715/A.H. 81–96
The History of al-Ṭabarī

Editorial Board
Ihsan Abbas, University of Jordan, Amman
C. E. Bosworth, The University of Manchester
Franz Rosenthal, Yale University
Ehsan Yar-Shater, Columbia University (General Editor)

The preparation of this volume was made possible in part by a grant from the National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent federal agency.
Bibliotheca Persica
Edited by Ehsan Yar-Shater

The History of al-Tabari
(Ta'rikh al-rusul wa'l-mulūk)

Volume XXIII

The Zenith of the Marwānid House
translated and annotated
by

Martin Hinds
University of Cambridge

State University of New York Press
The History of Prophets and Kings (Ta'rikh al-rusul wa'1-mulūk) by Abū Ja'far Muḥammad b. Jarīr al-Ṭabarī (839–923), here rendered as the History of al-Ṭabarī, is by common consent the most important universal history produced in the world of Islam. It has been translated here in its entirety for the first time for the benefit of non-Arabists, with historical and philological notes for those interested in the particulars of the text.

Al-Ṭabarī's monumental work explores the history of the ancient nations, with special emphasis on biblical peoples and prophets, the legendary and factual history of ancient Iran, and, in great detail, the rise of Islam, the life of the Prophet Muḥammad, and the history of the Islamic world down to the year 915. The first volume of this translation will contain a biography of al-Ṭabarī and a discussion of the method, scope, and value of his work. It will also provide information on some of the technical considerations that have guided the work of the translators.

The History has been divided into 38 volumes, each of which covers about two hundred pages of the original Arabic text in the Leiden edition. An attempt has been made to draw the dividing lines between the individual volumes in such a way that each is to some degree independent and can be read as such. The page numbers of the original in the Leiden edition appear on the margins of the translated volumes.

Al-Ṭabarī very often quotes his sources verbatim and traces the chain of transmission (isnād) to an original source. The chains of
transmitters are, for the sake of brevity, rendered by only a dash (—) between the individual links in the chain. Thus, “according to Ibn Ḥumayd—Salamah—Ibn Ishāq” means that al-Ṭabari received the report from Ibn Ḥumayd, who said that he was told by Salamah, who said that he was told by Ibn Ishāq, and so on. The numerous subtle and important differences in the original Arabic wording have been disregarded.

The table of contents at the beginning of each volume gives a brief survey of the topics dealt with in that particular volume. It also includes the headings and subheadings as they appear in al-Ṭabari’s text, as well as those occasionally introduced by the translator.

Well-known place names, such as, for instance, Mecca, Baghdad, Jerusalem, Damascus, and the Yemen, are given in their English spellings. Less common place names, which are the vast majority, are transliterated. Biblical figures appear in the accepted English spelling. Iranian names are usually translated according to their Arabic forms, and the presumed Iranian forms are often discussed in the footnotes.

Technical terms have been translated wherever possible, but some, such as dirham and imām, have been retained in Arabic forms. Others that cannot be translated with sufficient precision have been retained and italicized as well as footnoted.

The annotation aims chiefly at clarifying difficult passages, identifying individuals and place names, and discussing textual difficulties. Much leeway has been left to the translators to include in the footnotes whatever they consider necessary and helpful.

The bibliographies list all the sources mentioned in the annotation.

The index in each volume contains all the names of persons and places referred to in the text, as well as those mentioned in the notes as far as they refer to the medieval period. It does not include the names of modern scholars. A general index, it is hoped, will appear after all the volumes have been published.

For further details concerning the series and acknowledgments, see Preface to Volume I.

Ehsan Yar-Shater
Preface / v

Translator's Foreword / xi

Map: Khurasan and Transoxania in the Early Eighth Century / xvi

The Last Years of 'Abd al-Malik

The Events of the Year 81 (cont'd) (700/701) / 3
What Led 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muhammad b. al-Ash'ath to Do What He Did . . . / 3

The Events of the Year 82 (701/702) / 14
[Operations at al-Baṣrāh and al-Kūfah] / 14
The Reason for Ibn al-Ash'ath's Progress to Dayr al-Jamājim and [the Battle] between Him and al-Ḥajjāj / 20
[The Death of al-Mughirah b. al-Muhallab] / 26
The Reason for al-Muhallab's Departure from Kish / 29
The Cause and Place of the Death [of al-Muhallab] / 31
The Events of the Year 83 (702/703) / 35
The Cause of [Ibn al-Ash’ath’s] Defeat / 35
The Cause of the Battle [of Maskin], with a
Description of It / 46
[The Breakup of Ibn al-Ash’ath’s Defeated Army] / 49
[A Second Account of the Battle of Maskin] / 68
[The Reason Why al-Ḥajjāj Built Wāsit] / 70

The Events of the Year 84 (703/704) / 72
The Reason Why [Yazīd b. al-Muhallab] Conquered [the
Fortress of Nizak] / 74

The Events of the Year 85 (704/705) / 77
What [Ibn al-Ash’ath] Died of and How It Came About / 77
[Al-Mużaḍdal’s Conquest of Bādghis] / 88
[Muṣā b. ‘Abdallāh’s] Going to al-Tirmidh [and His Activities] until He Was Killed There / 90
[‘Abd al-Malik’s Desire to Remove His Brother from the Succession] / 108

The Events of the Year 86 (705) / 116
[The Death of ‘Abd al-Malik] / 116
Report on His Age When He Died / 117
His Descent and His Teknonym [Kunyah] / 117
His Children and Wives / 118

The Caliphate of al-Walid b. ‘Abd al-Malik

The Events of the Year 86 (cont’d) (705) / 125
What Happened to Qutaybah in Khurasan in This Year / 127

The Events of the Year 87 (705/706) / 131
[The Appointment of ‘Umar b. ‘Abd al-‘Azīz as Governor of Medina] / 131
Contents

[Qutaybah's Peace Agreement with the People of Bādghīs] / 133

The Events of the Year 88 (706/707) / 140
[Reconstruction of the Mosque of Medina] / 141
[Qutaybah's] Campaign [against Tūmushkath and Rāmithanah] / 143

The Events of the Year 89 (707/708) / 146

The Events of the Year 90 (708/709) / 149
[Qutaybah's Conquest of Bukhārā] / 150
[Renewed Peace between Qutaybah and the Soghdians] / 152
[Nīzak's] Perfidy and Why He Was Vanquished / 153
[Qutaybah's Retribution against the People of al-Tālaqān] / 155
The Reason for [the Muhallabids' Escape from al-Hājjāj's Prison and Their Going to Sulaymān / 156

The Events of the Year 91 (709/710) / 164
[Qutaybah's Capture and Killing of Nīzak] / 164
[Qutaybah's Campaign in Transoxania] / 174
[Khālid al-Qasrī's Strict Governorship of Mecca] / 177
[Al-Walid's Visit to Medina] / 179

The Events of the Year 92 (710/711) / 182

The Events of the Year 93 (711/712) / 184
[The Killing of the King of Khām Jird and Renewed Peace with Khwārāzm] / 185
[Qutaybah's Conquest of Samarqand] / 189
Why al-Walid Dismissed ['Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz] / 201

The Events of the Year 94 (712/713) / 204
Qutaybah's Campaign [in al-Shāsh and Farghānah] / 205
['Uthmān b. Ḥayyān al-Murri's] Governorship / 206
Contents

The Events of the Year 95 (713/714) / 215

The Events of the Year 96 (714/715) / 218
[The Death of al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik] / 218
Report of Some of What He Did / 219
[Al-Walid's Desire to Remove Sulaymān from the Succession] / 222
[Qutaybah in Kāshghar and China] / 224

Bibliography of Cited Works / 231

Index / 237
Translator's Foreword

The early years of the eighth century constitute what in retrospect can be seen as the high point of Marwânid Umayyad power. When, in 693, the prolonged war against the Zubayrids had finally come to an end, the Caliph 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwân had been free to set about Umayyad consolidation; this took longest in Iraq, in a sequence of events culminating in the revolt led in 700–702 by the Iraqi sharīf 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Aṣḥāb al-Kindī (with which this volume begins), which seriously imperiled Marwânid control of Iraq and was countered with considerable difficulty. Thereafter, however, 'Abd al-Malik presided over a strong and dynamic Arab kingdom, with al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf al-Thaqafi as his powerful governor of Iraq and the East. When 'Abd al-Malik died in 705, the kingdom passed to his son al-Walīd, during whose ten-year caliphate al-Ḥajjāj remained at his post and further Arab expansion took place: in Central Asia, in Sind, and in the Iberian Peninsula. To many of their contemporaries, the Arabs of that time must have looked like potential world conquerors. The volume ends in 715, shortly after the deaths of al-Ḥajjāj and al-Walīd, and just two years before the dispatch of the ill-fated Arab expedition to Constantinople.  

In this volume, as is often the case in his chronicle, al-Tabari's focus is on events in Iraq and the East, and he pays only fleeting attention to what was going on in Syria, Egypt, and the West; and it so happens that the central figure in the Arab history of this period was al-Hajjāj b. Yūsuf. Both of the subjects receiving the most attention in this volume involved him: (1) the revolt of Ibn al-Ash'ath and how al-Hajjāj managed to deal with it; and (2) events in Khurasan and Transoxania, notably the conquests effected by al-Hajjāj's protégé and governor of Khurasan, Qutaybah b. Muslim. In the case of the first of these subjects, much of what is relayed by al-Tabari is also relayed by al-Baladhuri, in the case of the second, al-Tabari is unquestionably the major source.

Ibn al-Ash'ath's revolt began in Sijistān and moved to Iraq; many grievances were involved, but the main reason why the revolt so nearly succeeded was that it brought together, on an unprecedented scale, highly disparate elements of Iraqi opposition to Syrian domination. The earlier Sufyanid Umayyad administration of Iraq had involved controlling the Iraqi Arab tribesmen through the local tribal ashrāf, and the Zubayrids tried similarly to involve them in the power structure (albeit with less success than the Sufyānids); on occasions when the established order in Iraq was exposed to any local threat or opposition, the ashrāf formally aligned themselves (or were required to align themselves) with the representatives of Umayyad/Zubayrid government there. It is therefore a telling comment on the state of affairs in Iraq under al-Hajjāj that the sharīf Ibn al-Ash'ath, supported by other ashrāf, led a revolt against the representative of Marwānid rule; it was a revolt that constituted a major departure from the earlier pattern of sharīfian behavior and provided a leadership capable of uniting the various disgruntled Iraqi interest groups.


Al-Ḥajjāj was able to counter it only by bringing in massive Syrian reinforcements for the Syrian troops already with him. Following the suppression of the revolt, the role of the Iraqi Arab tribesmen and their leaders was obviously to be diminished even more than it had been already, and al-Ṭabarī gives us detailed accounts of the stern measures then taken by al-Ḥajjāj in Iraq. In addition, he established Wāsīt (rather than making any more use of al- Başrah and/or al- Kūfah) as the base for his Syrian troops in Iraq. The Iraqi Arabs were for the time being well and truly subjugated to Syrian domination.

As for events in Khorasan and beyond, the period opens with Muhallabid governors of Khorasan, first al- Muhallab b. Abi Șufrah himself, then successively his sons Yazid and al- Mufaḍḍal. Following the failure of Ibn al- Ash’ath’s insurrection, the Muhallabids were the last Iraqi family of major importance, and al- Ḥajjāj soon succeeded in ousting them from Khorasan. Al-Ṭabarī goes on to regale us with the remarkable story of Musa b. ‘Abdallah b. Khāzim, the Sulamī who for fifteen years operated independently from his base at al- Tirmidh, before proceeding to the most important part of his account: the conquests effected in Central Asia by Qutaybah b. Muslim al- Bāhili, al- Ḥajjāj’s governor of Khorasan from 86 (705). Between that date and 96 (715), Qutaybah brought the whole of Lower Ṭukharistan and Transoxania under Arab sway and made important inroads beyond the Jaxartes. Despite the fact that the account of the expedition to Kashghar in 96 (715) seems to be an exaggeration (as Gibb has shown), it is nonetheless clear that Qutaybah achieved more in Central Asia than any other Arab conqueror of the Umayyad period; “with Ḥajjāj at his back, [he] held his conquests together, and when he disappeared there was neither leader nor organization to take his place.”4 Al-Ṭabarī tells us a great deal about these important conquests, but he says almost nothing about the less important conquests in Sind effected at the same time by Muḥammad b. al- Qāsim al- Thaqafi,5 who was a relative of al- Ḥajjāj’s and was directly responsible to him; one might have thought that the Ḥajjāj

4. Gibb, Arab Conquests, p. 54.
connection would have led al-Ṭabari to say more about these operations, but it is necessary in fact to turn to al-Baladhuri’s Futūḥ al-buldān for details about them. More predictably, al-Ṭabari also pays very little attention to the third instance of Arab expansion at this time, namely, the conquest of much of the Iberian Peninsula by Mūsā b. Nuṣayr and Ṭāriq b. Ziyād.6

Of the other matters touched on in this volume, something may be said, first, about Arab operations against the Byzantines. Here, as is apparent from the digest made by Brooks,7 al-Ṭabari tells us more than any other single Arabic source; and it is clear that in general there was more activity on that front in the caliphate of al-Walid than in that of ʿAbd al-Malik, which is scarcely surprising in view of ʿAbd al-Malik’s more pressing concerns. Even so, the sum of information available is depressingly meager, and numerous contradictions and problematic place names remain to be resolved.8

Secondly, there were two attempts during this period to divert succession to the caliphate. The first of these, when ʿAbd al-Malik wished to divert it from his brother ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz to his son al-Walid, was blocked by ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz; the matter was resolved for ʿAbd al-Malik when his brother predeceased him. The second, when al-Walid wished to divert the succession from his brother Sulaymān to his son ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz, was blocked by Sulaymān, who outlived al-Walid and succeeded to the caliphate. As Hawting has remarked, “In view of the potentiality for conflict inherent in the lack of a fixed order of succession to the caliphate in the Umayyad period, it is remarkable how seldom real trouble developed from it.”9

Thirdly, it can be noted, too, that during this period there emerged into prominence two figures who would subsequently play roles of major importance. ʿUmar b. ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. Marwān, a son of ʿAbd al-Malik’s brother mentioned in the preceding para-

graph, and later the Caliph 'Umar II, served as governor of Medina for six years under al-Walid, until the latter was persuaded by al-Ḥajjāj to dismiss him; and Khālid al-Qasrī, who was to become the governor of Iraq for most of the caliphate of Hishām b. 'Abd al-Malik, served as governor of Mecca for perhaps as long as the last seven years of al-Walid's caliphate.10

This was above all what Shaban had styled "the age of Ḥajjāj,"11 and particularly so in the caliphate of al-Walid, who, as Wellhausen has pointed out, "gave him a free hand, and even in his own sphere of government gave in to him and consulted his wishes."12 This most unforgettable of Arab governors did more than any other individual to turn the period covered by the present volume into the pinnacle of the Marwānid achievement. Yet even he did not get his way in one important regard: in 90 (708–9), Yazid b. al-Muhallab and other Muhallabids escaped from his custody in Iraq and gained the protection of the Caliph's brother, Sulaymān, in Palestine. Al-Ḥajjāj's attempts to put pressure on al-Walid to remedy the matter came to nothing. Six years later, Sulayman was caliph and the Muhallabids were in the ascendant.

There remains only the agreeable task of thanking those who have been kind enough to put their expertise at my disposal in the course of making and annotating this translation. Professor Iḥsān ʿAbbās not only gave freely of his time to provide me with fatwās on all manner of queries that came up in the course of making the translation, but he also went through the penultimate draft and made further valuable suggestions. Professor Edmund Bosworth and Dr. Patricia Crone also went through the draft and made helpful comments and criticisms, for which I am grateful. All three scholars are of course to be absolved from any blame for such infelicities as may appear in the translation in its final form.

Martin Hinds

10. See EI², s.v. Khālid b. ʿAbd Allāh al-Kasri (G. R. Hawting), where the chronological difficulties relating to Khālid's governorship of Mecca are discussed.
11. Islamic History, ch. 6; see also EI², s.v. al-Ḥadjdjādī b. Yūsuf (A. Dietrich).
Khurasan and Transoxania in the Early Eighth Century
The Last Years of ‘Abd al-Malik
Abū Ja'far said: In this year 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Aṣ'ath and those of the Iraqi army who were with him disobeyed al-Ḥajjāj and advanced upon him to fight him. This is what Abū Mikhnaf said on the authority of Abū al-Mukhāriq al-Rāsibī, as for al-Wāqīḍī, he claimed that this took place in the year 8z.

What Led 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Aṣ'ath to Do What He Did, with an Account of His Actions after Disobeying al-Ḥajjāj

We have already mentioned under the year 80 the presence of 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad in the territory of the Zunbil1 and his letter to al-Ḥajjāj concerning what he had done there and what he proposed to do in the future. We shall now mention what happened to him in the year 81, this being the account of Abū Mikhnaf on the authority of Abū al-Mukhāriq.

1. The literature relating to the question of whether this title was Rutbil (and variants) or Zunbil (and variants) is listed by Sayed, Die Revolte des Ibn al-Aṣ'at und die Koranleser, p. 148. The form Zunbil has been preferred here and below (the text consistently gives the form Rutbil).
According to Hishām—Abū Mikhnaf—Abū al-Mukhāriq al-Rāsibi: Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to 'Abd al-Raḥmān, in reply to his letter, "To continue: Your letter has reached me and I have understood what you have mentioned in it. Your letter is the letter of a man who wants a truce and is pleased with reconciliation, having blandished a lowly and slight foe. They have struck down Muslim troops whose performance was good and whose capacity in the cause of Islam was mighty. By your life, O son of the mother of ‘Abd al-Raḥmān, if you hold back from the enemy with my troops and arms you will be heedless of those Muslims who were struck down. I do not consider the decision you claim to have reached to be based on a strategem; I think that all that impels you to do that is your weakness and your confused judgment. So do what I ordered you to do, penetrating far into their territory, destroying their fortresses, killing their fighting men, and taking their children captive."

Then he sent after [that letter] another in which he said, "To continue: Order the Muslims who are with you to till the soil and settle. That is your abode until God grants [you] victory over them."

Then he sent after [that letter] a further one in which he said, "To continue: Do what I ordered you to do, and penetrate far into their territory. Otherwise your brother Isḥāq b. Muḥammad2 is to be the amir of the people, and you are to let him have that to which I have appointed him."

When ['Abd al-Raḥmān] read [this] letter, he said, "Shall I bear responsibility for Isḥāq?" and he showed [the letter] to him.3 [Isḥāq] said, "Don't do it." ['Abd al-Raḥmān] said, "By the Lord of this," meaning the copy of the Qurʾān, "if you mention [this] to anyone, I'll kill you." [Isḥāq] thought that he meant the sword and put his hand on the pommel of his sword.

Then ['Abd al-Raḥmān] summoned the people, praised God, and said, "O people, I am one who gives you sincere advice, one who has your well-being at heart, and one who is watchful of all benefit that encompasses you. My view in the matter of your dealings

2. According to al-Balādhurī [Anonyme arabische Chronik, Band XI [henceforward AAC], p. 3241, Isḥāq had been sent out by al-Ḥajjāj at the head of a separate army.

3. The drift of what immediately follows is not entirely clear, and it is likely that some text is missing.
The Events of the Year 81 (cont'd) 5

with the enemy was a view about which I consulted [both] the
discerning among you and those of you who are experienced in
war. They were satisfied with it in respect of you, considering it
to be conducive to your well-being, and in both the short term
and the long. I wrote to your amir al-Ḥajjāj [telling him this], and
he responded with a letter in which he charged me with incompe-
tence and weakness and ordered me to hasten the business of
taking you far into the territory of the enemy, that being the
territory in which your brethren perished but yesterday. I am one
of you: I go on when you go on, and I balk when you do.” [At this,]
the people were stirred up in support of him and said, “No, we
balk against the enemy of God: We shall not heed him, nor shall
we obey.”

Abū Mikhnaf said: Muṭarrif b. ʿAmīr b. Wāthilah al-Kinānī told
me that his father, 4 who was a poet and khatīb, 5 was the first to
speak on that day. After praising God, he said, “To continue: Al-
Ḥajjāj wants for you none other than what the sayer of yore 6
wanted when he said to his brother, ‘Mount your servant on the
mare: If he perishes he perishes, and if he escapes [then so much
the better] for you.’ By God, al-Ḥajjāj does not care that he is
taking chances with you by forcing you into a territory of sheer
cliffs and narrow passes. If you win and take booty, he will devour
the territory and appropriate [its] wealth, thereby extending his
dominion; while if your enemy wins, you will become hated
enemies, whose distress will be of no concern to him and whom
he will not pity. So disavow al-Ḥajjāj, the enemy of God, and give
the oath of allegiance to ʿAbd al-Rahmān. I [hereby] cause you to
witness that I am the first to disavow 7 him.” [At this,]
the people
called out from every side, “We do so, we do so, we disavow the
enemy of God.”

ʿAbd al-Muʿmin b. Shabath b. Ribʿī al-Tamīmī, 7 who was in
charge of [ʿAbd al-Rahmān's] police force when he arrived [in Si-
jistān], stood up next and said, “O servants of God, if you obey al-
Ḥajjāj he will make this land your land for as long as you live. He

4. Abū al-Ṭufayl ʿAmīr b. Wāthilah: see Sezgin, Geschichte des arabischen
Schrifttums [henceforward GAS], vol. II, p. 412.
5. A term signifying a tribal spokesman in pre-Islamic times and subsequently
the deliverer of the Friday sermon [see EI2, s.v.].
6. So rendering al-qāʾīl al-awwal; al-Baladhuri, AAC, p. 325, gives simply al-
qāʾīl. I have not encountered elsewhere the piece of wisdom that follows.
will keep you out in the field in the manner of Pharaoh, who, I
have been informed, was the first to keep armies out in the field; I
think that most of you will be dead before seeing your loved ones.
So give the oath of allegiance to your amir, set off against your
enemy, and expel him from your land [that is, Iraq].” [At this] the
people rose up to ‘Abd al-Rahmān and gave him the oath of alle-
giance. He said, “Give me the oath of allegiance to disavow al-
Hajjāj, the enemy of God, and to help me, and to fight against him
along with me until God expels him from the land of Iraq”, and
they rendered the oath of allegiance to him. No mention was
made at that time of any disavowal of ‘Abd al-Malik.

Abū Mikhnaf said: 'Umar b. Dharr,8 the qāṣṣ,9 related to me
that his father was there with him and that 'Abd al-Rahmān had
flogged him and imprisoned him because of his attachment to his
brother al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad.10 But when he came out in
revolt, he summoned Dharr, and gave him a mount, raiment, and
gifts; [Dharr] was among those who set off with him, functioning
as a qāṣṣ and khaṭṭīb.11

According to Abū Mikhnaf—Sayf b. Bishr al-'Ijli—al-
Munakhkhal b. Ḥābis al-'Abdī: When Ibn Muḥammad set off from
Sijistān, he appointed over Bust 'Iyād b. Himyān12 al-Bakrī, from
the Banū Sadūs b. Shaybān b. Dhuhl b. Tha'alabah, and over Zaranj
‘Abdallāh b. ‘Amir al-Tamīmī al-Dārimī. Then he sent to the
Zunbil and made peace with him on the understanding that, if Ibn
al-Ash‘ath were to win, the Zunbil would not be liable to tax
(kharāj) as long as he lived, and, if Ibn al-Ash‘ath were to be
defeated and so desired it, the Zunbil would give him refuge with
him.

According to Abū Mikhnaf—Khushaynah b. al-Walīd: When
‘Abd al-Rahmān left Sijistān heading for Iraq, al-A’shā went before
him on a mare, saying (rajaz):13

---
8. Caskel, Ğamharat an-nasab, register.
10. A slightly fuller account of this is given in al-Balādhurī, AAC, p. 326.
12. Thus too in Ibn al-Athir, but ‘Iyād b. ‘Amr according to al-Balādhurī, AAC, p.
327.
13. This is A’shā Hamdān (see EP, s.v., and Sezgin, GAS, vol. II, pp. 345–46).
Regarding the following verses, cf. von Gouutta, Der Aganiartikel über ‘A’sā von
Hamdān, pp. 38, 54; Geyer, The Diwān of al-A‘shā, pp. 341–42 [Arabic text]; al-
Balādhurī, AAC, pp. 328–29; Aghānī,2 vol. VI, p. 59; and al-Mas‘ūdi, Murūj, vol. V,
p. 356 = par. 2109.
The Events of the Year 81 (cont’d)

Distant is he whose residence is at the Īwān,\(^{14}\)
the Īwān of Chosroes, the possessor of villages
and sweet-smelling plants,
For a lover who has emerged in Zābulistān.
There have been two liars from Thaqīf,
Their past liar\(^ {15}\) and a second one.
May my Lord give power to Hamdān over Thaqīf,
For a day until nighttime, so consoling us for what took place
[before].
We betook ourselves to the devilish infidel,
When, in unbelief after belief, he exceeded the bounds
with the noble lord ‘Abd al-Raḥmān.
He set forth with a throng of Qaḥtān, like locusts,
while from Ma’add b. ‘Adnān he brought
A tumultuous and mighty multitude.
So tell Ḥajjāj, Satan’s friend, [if he can]
Stand steady against Madhlij and Hamdān,
that they will give him to drink from the
goblet of poison,
And will send him off to the villages of Ibn Marwān.\(^ {1057}\)

‘Amr al-‘Anbari over his vanguard. Al-Ḥajjāj sent the cavalry
against him, but he defeated it at each engagement. Al-Ḥajjāj
asked who it was and was told that it was ‘Aṭiyyah. This is why
al-A’shā said [kāmil]:

When you put the mountain roads of Fārs,
one by one, behind them,
Then send ‘Aṭiyyah with the cavalry
to cast them down upon him.\(^ {16}\)

Then ‘Abd al-Raḥmān advanced with the people. He asked about
Abū Ishāq al-Sabī’i,\(^ {17}\) whom he had inscribed among his companions, saying, “You are my maternal uncle”’; [Abū Ishāq] was told,

---

\(^{14}\) The Sasanian palace at Ctesiphon is meant here (see \(EP\), s.v.).
\(^{15}\) Presumably, al-Mukhtār b. Abī ’Ubayd is meant.
\(^{16}\) Reading ‘alayhi (von Goutt, Āgāniartikel, p. 55; Geyer, \(The \Diwān\ of al-
A’shā\), p. 312 [Arabic text]; al-Balādhuri, \(AAC\), p. 320; and al-Mas‘ūdī, loc. cit.) in
\(^{17}\) Caskel, \(Gamharat an-nasab\), register, s.v. ‘Amr b. ‘Abd Allāh.
"Don't go to him, for he has asked about you," and he did not like to go. 'Abd al-Rahmān then went on until he passed through Kirmān and placed over them (sc. the people of Kirmān) Kharashah b. 'Amr al-Tamīmī. Abū Ishāq stayed there and did not take part in the civil war (fitnah) until [the battle of Dayr] al-Jamājām. When ['Abd al-Rahmān] entered Fārs, the people gathered together and said, "If we have disavowed al-Ḥajjāj, the governor of 'Abd al-Malik, then we have [as a consequence] disavowed 'Abd al-Malik"; and they gathered around 'Abd al-Rahmān.18

Abū Mikhnaf said: Among what Abū al-Salt related to me [was this]: [The first person who]19 disavowed 'Abd al-Malik was Tayhān b. Abjar of the Banū Taym Allah b. Thaʿlabah. He stood up and said, "O people, I have disavowed Abū Dhibbān20 just as I divest myself of my shirt." All but a few of the people then disavowed him, rose up to Ibn Muḥammad, and rendered the oath of allegiance to him. His oath of allegiance was: "Do you swear allegiance on [the basis of] the Book of God, the Sunnah of his Prophet,21 disavowal of the imāms of error, and struggle against those who violate that which is sacred?" -If they said "Yes," he accepted the oath.

When it reached al-Ḥajjāj that he had been disavowed, he wrote to 'Abd al-Malik informing him about 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Ash'āth and asking him to hasten the sending of troops to him. He sent his letter to 'Abd al-Malik, citing at the end of it these verses by al-Ḥârīth b. Waʿlāh (basīt):22

Ask the one who is the neighbor (or: under the protection, mujāwir) of Jarm, "Have I brought upon them a war that will divide neighbors of

---

18. Omitting the following fa-kāna awwal al-nās.
19. Inserting kāna awwal man, as given by manuscripts O and B.
20. Literally, "father of the flies," i.e., one who has stinking breath, an epithet applied in particular to 'Abd al-Malik (see Lane, Lexicon, p. 952b); see also al-Thaʿalibī, Lāṭāʾif al-maʿārif, p. 36 [English trans. pp. 56–57].
21. On the significance of this wording, see Crone and Hinds, God's Caliph, pp. 59ff.
sincere and friendly conduct?
Have I risen up with a clamorous army full of
neighing horses between the plain and the mountain?23
Have I left the women of the tribe exposed to the sun,
out in the open, trying to make fires out of
hawdaj saddles?"

And he went along until he stopped at al-Baṣrah.

[News of] the rebellion of ʿAbd al-Raḥmān while he was in
Sijistān reached al-Muhallab,24 who wrote to him, "To continue:
O Ibn Muḥammad, you have put your foot in a stirrup that is very
wrong for the community of Muḥammad. By God, look to your-
self and do not destroy it; do not spill Muslim blood; do not
sunder unity; do not violate the oath of allegiance. By God, if you
say, 'I fear the people for myself (nafs),' [know that] God is more
properly to be feared for it than the people. Do not expose it to
God's anger] by shedding blood or by deeming licit that which is
not. Peace be upon you."

Al-Muhallab [also] wrote to al-Ḥajjāj, "To continue: The people
of Iraq have advanced toward you, like a flood coming down from
above, unstoppable until it reaches its resting place. The people of
Iraq are fierce at the start of their exodus, desiring their sons and
womenfolk; nothing will stop them getting to their families and
embracing [lit. sniffing]25 their children. So encounter them
there. God willing, He will give you victory over them." When al-
Ḥajjāj read this letter, he said, "God damn him; he is not looking
to my interests but to those of his cousin."26

When al-Ḥajjāj's letter came to ʿAbd al-Malik, it appalled him.
He descended from his throne, sent for Khalid b. Yazid b.
Muʿāwiyah,27 called him [in], and had him read the letter. When

23. Reading bayna ʾl-sahiḥ waʾl-furūṭi, as given in other versions, rather than
bayna ʾl-jamīʿ waʾl-furūṭi (which appears to have arisen by dittography).
24. Al-Muhallab b. Abī Ṣufrah, the governor of Khurasan at this time [see EP,
s.v. [forthcoming]].
25. Yashummu: al-Baladhuri, AAC, p. 336, gives yatakassamū, which makes
no obvious sense and is presumably a corruption of yashummū, cf. Khalifah,
IX, p. 37, line 10 [shammū awlādahum].
27. EP, s.v.
Khalid saw his concern, he said, "O Commander of the Faithful, if this incident arises from the direction of Sijistan, do not fear it, but if it is from the direction of Khurasan, then I myself fear it." Then 'Abd al-Malik went to the people, stood up among them, praised God, and said, "The people of Iraq have found my life too long and wish to hasten my demise. O God, empower the swords of the people of Syria over them, so that they may achieve Thy pleasure; if they do so, they will fall short of Thy displeasure." Then he descended.

Al-Hajjaj stayed in al-Basrah, prepared himself for the encounter with Ibn Muhammad, and ignored the advice of al-Muhallab. At the same time Syrian horsemen were reaching him daily from 'Abd al-Malik, borne on post-mules in groups of one hundred, fifty, ten, and less, while he daily sent to 'Abd al-Malik letters and messages with information about Ibn Muhammed—what district he had stopped in, what district he had set off from, which people had hastened to him [and so on].

Abu Mikhnaf said: Fuṣayl b. Khadij related to me that the place where he was registered as a soldier (maktab) was in Kirkman, where there were four thousand Kufan and Basran horsemen, and that, when Ibn Muhammed b. al-Ash'ath passed by them, [these forces] quickly went off with him. Al-Hajjaj [in the meantime] resolved to engage Ibn al-Ash'ath and went with the Syrians to Tustar; and [from there] he sent out advance parties led by Muṭahhar b. Ḥurr al-‘Akki—or al-Judhami—and ‘Abdollah b. Rumaythah al-Ṭā‘i, with Muṭahhar in overall command. These reached [the river] Dujayl, which had already been crossed by a troop sent by 'Abd al-Rahmān—three hundred horsemen commanded by 'Abdollah b. Abān—al-Ḥārithi—who formed a strongpoint for 'Abd al-Rahmān and his army. When Muṭahhar b. 'Amr got to them, he ordered 'Abdollah b. Rumaythah to advance on them; the cavalry of 'Abdollah [b. Abān] was defeated and pushed back to [the river], and his companions were wounded.

According to Abū Mikhnaf—Abu al-Zubayr al-Hamdānī: I was among the companions of Ibn Muhammed when he summoned

29. Al-Kindi [see the index to al-Tabari's text).
and gathered the people. Then he said, "Cross to [the enemy] from this place." So the people impelled their horses into the Dujayl from that place which he had designated, and, by God, no sooner had most, though not all, of our horses crossed than we attacked Muṭahhar b. Ḥurr and al-Ṭāʾī and defeated them, that being on the Day of Sacrifice, 81 (January 25, 701). We killed on a large scale and took their camp.32

[News of] the defeat reached al-Ḥajjāj while he was delivering the sermon. Abū Kaʿb b.33 Ṣarjis ascended [the pulpit] to him and informed him of the people's defeat, at which he said, "O people, go to al-Baṣrah for a camp and a place for fighting, for grain and supplies: This place in which we are cannot support us." Then he set off, returning, and the cavalry of the Iraqis34 followed him; whenever they came upon a straggler, they killed him and [in this way] acquired [much] baggage, which they gathered together. Al-Ḥajjāj went on, without deviating, until he stopped at al-Zāwiyyah.35 He sent for the grain of the merchants at al-Kalla36 took it and [had it] transported to him, and left al-Baṣrah to the Iraqis [that is, the Iraqi army], his governor over it being al-Hakam b. Ayyūb b. Abī Ṭaqāfī,37 and the Iraqis came on until they entered al-Baṣrah. When he had suffered this setback and retreated, al-Ḥajjāj called for al-Muhallab's letter and [re]read it. Then he said, "What a man! What a general! He advised us correctly, and we did not accept [what he said]."

According to authorities other than Abū Mikhnaf, al-Ḥakam b. Ayyūb was the civilian governor of al-Baṣrah, while 'Abdallāh b. 'Āmir b. Misma38 was in command of the police.

32. The account of this engagement given by al-Baladhirī, AAC, pp. 339–40, is rather fuller and clearer: Inter alia, it includes the information that Muṭahhar’s force consisted of 7,000 Syrians; Ibn A’tham, on the other hand, opts for a force of 8,000 horsemen [Futūḥ, vol. VII, p. 130].
34. Ibn al-Athir reads ašṣāḥ ābd āl-Rahmān.
35. Yāqūt (Mu’jam, vol. II, p. 911) knew this as no more than a place near al-Baṣrah.
36. The river port of al-Baṣrah and one of its markets [see Pellat, Le milieu basrienn, pp. 20, 235].
37. A relative and son-in-law of al-Ḥajjāj [Crone, Slaves on Horses, p. 131].
38. A member of the important Baṣran Shaybānī family known as the Maṣāmi’ah [ibid, p. 117, and EI², s.v. Maṣāmi’ah].
Then al-Ḥajjāj went with his army until he stopped at Rustaqubād, which was part of Dastawā, one of the districts of al-Ahwāz, and pitched camp there. Ibn al-Ash’ath advanced and stopped at Tustar, [with the result that] there was a river between them. Al-Ḥajjāj sent Muṭahhar b. Ḥurr al-‘Akkī with two thousand men, and they rushed a strongpoint of Ibn al-Ash’ath’s. Ibn al-Ash’ath proceeded swiftly and attacked them, this being in the evening of ‘Arafah in the year 81 [January 24, 701]. It is said that they killed fifteen hundred of the Syrians, the rest of whom returned to [al-Ḥajjāj] in defeat. He had with him one hundred fifty million dirhams, which he distributed among his commanders, making them responsible for them, and went in defeat to al-Baṣra.[Meanwhile,] Ibn al-Ash’ath addressed his companions, saying, “As for al-Ḥajjāj, he is nothing. We want to carry the war to ‘Abd al-Malik.” [At the same time, news of] the defeat of al-Ḥajjāj reached the people of al-Baṣra, and ‘Abbālāh b. ‘Āmir b. Misma wanted to cut the bridge to prevent his passage; but al-Ḥakam b. Ayyūb bribed him with one hundred thousand dirhams, and he desisted from this [action]. [Then] al-Ḥajjāj entered al-Baṣra: He sent to Ibn ‘Āmir and wrested the one hundred thousand dirhams from him.

The account reverts to that of Abu Mikhnaf on the authority of Abū al-Zubayr al-Hamdānī: When ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad entered al-Baṣra, all of its qurrd41 and middle-aged men rendered the oath of allegiance to him to fight al-Ḥajjāj and disavow ‘Abd al-Malik; and a Jahḍāmi of al-Azd called ‘Uqbah b. ‘Abd al-Ghāfir, who was a Companion, jumped up and gave the oath of allegiance to ‘Abd al-Rahmān, being strong in his conviction of the rightness of fighting al-Ḥajjāj. Al-Ḥajjāj entrenched himself against [‘Abd al-Rahmān], and ‘Abd al-Rahmān entrenched himself against al-Baṣra. ‘Abd al-Rahmān’s entry into al-Baṣra took place at the end of Dhū al-Ḥijjah 81 [mid-February 701].

39. On the Dujayl river between al-Ahwāz and Tustar [see Le Strange, Lands of the Eastern Caliphate, p. 237, and E12, s.v. ‘Askar Mukrām].
40. Cf. n. 32 above.
41. Generally held to have been Qur’ān reciters [see E12, s.v. Qurrah]. For a detailed discussion of these particular Baṣra qurrah, see Sayed, Revolte, chap. v.
42. Sayed, Revolte, p. 350.
43. Where al-Ṭabarī has ‘alayhi, Ibn al-Athīr has ‘alā nafsihi.
Sulaymān b. 'Abd al-Malik led the pilgrimage in this year: This is what Ahmad b. Thābit related to me on the authority of he who mentioned it on the authority of Ishaq b. 'Isā on the authority of Abū Ma’shar, and so too said al-Wāqīḍī. He (sc. al-Wāqīḍī) also said: Ibn Abī Dhi‘b was born in this year; the governor of Medina in this year was Abān b. ‘Uthmān, over Iraq and the East was al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf; over the military affairs (ḥarb) of Khurasan was al-Muhallab, and over its taxation (kharāj) was al-Mughīrah b. al-Muhallab, both of these being appointees acting on behalf of al-Ḥajjāj; in charge of the judiciary of al-Kūfah was Abī Burdah b. Abī Mūsā, and in charge of the judiciary of al-Ḍa‘rah was ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. Udhaynah.

44. A traditionist who died in 158 (774) or 159 (775) (Ibn Hajar, Tahdhib, vol. IX, p. 306).
45. A son of the Caliph ‘Uthmān b. ‘Affān (see EI², s.v.).
46. EI², s.v. [Banū] ‘l-Muhallab [forthcoming].
47. EI², s.v. al-Ash‘ari.
The Events of the Year

82

(FEBRUARY 15, 701—FEBRUARY 3, 702)

[Operations at al-Baṣrah and al-Kūfah]

Among the events of this year were the battles that took place between al-Ḥajjāj and 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad at al-Zāwiyyah.

According to Hishām b. Muḥammad—Abū Mikhnaf—Abū al-Zubayr al-Hamdānī: 'Abd al-Rahmān’s entry into al-Baṣrah took place at the end of Dhū al-Hijjah, and they fought in Muḥarram of the year 82 (February–March 702). They came together one day, and their fighting intensified. Then the Iraqis defeated [the Syrians], forcing them back to al-Ḥajjāj and fighting them in their trenches. The defeat of the whole of Quraysh and Thaqīf was such that 'Ubayd b. Mawḥab, the mawla and secretary of al-Ḥajjāj, said (tawīl):

Al-Barā’ and his cousin Muṣ‘ab fled,
and Quraysh fled, but for Āl Sa‘īd.⁴⁹

⁴⁹. Cf. al-Baladhuri, AAC, p. 347, where it is clear that al-Ḥajjāj’s relatives al-Barā’ b. Qabiṣah b. Abī Aqīl and Muṣ‘āb b. Abīللāh b. Abī ‘Aqīl are meant; the Banū Sa‘īd in question were probably the descendants of Sa‘īd b. al-‘Āṣ al-Umawi (see the reference to ‘Anbasah b. Sa‘īd on p. 348).
Then they came together at the end of al-Muḥarram, on the day when the Iraqis defeated the Syrians: The [Syrian] right and left wings turned back, their spears were in disarray, and their [front] line was routed, to the extent that [the Iraqis] drew near to us. When al-Ḥajjāj saw that, he fell to his knees, drew his sword a span, and said, “How admirable Muṣʿab was! How noble he was when there overtook him what overtook him, and I know, by God, that he did not wish to flee.”

He (sc. Abū al-Zubayr) said: I signaled to my father with my eye to give me permission to smite [al-Ḥajjāj] with my sword, and he signaled back firmly [that I should not], and I kept still. Then I happened to turn, and, lo and behold, Sufyān b. al-Abraḍ al-Kalbī50 had attacked them and defeated them on the right wing. So I said, “Rejoice, O amir, for God has defeated the enemy.” He said to me, “Stand up and look,” so I stood up and looked and said, “God has defeated them.” He said, “Stand up, Ziyād, and look”; so Ziyād stood up and looked and said, “It’s true, God has certainly caused you to prosper; they have been defeated.” And al-Ḥajjāj cast himself down in prostration. When I returned, my father reviled me and said, “Did you want to kill me and my family?”

The following were killed in the battle: 'Abd al- Раḥmān b. 'Awsajah Abū Sufyān al-Nihmī51 and 'Uqbah b. 'Abd al-Ghāfir al-Azdī al-Jahdāmi,52 among those qurrā’ who were all killed in the same place, 'Abdallāh b. Rizām al-Hārithī,53 al-Mundhir b. al-Jārūd,54 and 'Abdallāh b. Šamīr b. Misma'.55 The head of this last-named was brought to al-Ḥajjāj, who said, “I do not think that this [fellow] left me in order to have his head brought to me.”

Saʿīd b. Yaḥyā b. Saʿīd b. al-ʿĀṣ56 fought a duel on that day with a

50. Caskel, Ḍamharat an-nasab, register.
51. Sayed, Revolte, p. 357 [wrongly an-Nuhmī].
52. See above, n. 42.
53. This cannot be right, for we find him alive and well below (p. 25). It can be noted that Ms. O and B [as well as al-Balādhrī, AAC, p. 346] omit the words b. Rizām . . . al-Mundhir b. al-Jārūd . . . 'Abb Allāh b.
54. This cannot be al-Mundhir b. al-Jārūd, who had already been dead for twenty years [Caskel, Ḍamharat an-nasab, register, and cf. preceding note]; possibly one of his sons is meant (cf. below, p. 69, where his son Bishr is killed at Maskin).
55. Cf. above, p. 11 and n. 38.
56. Al-Umawī [Caskel, Ḍamharat an-nasab, register].
man who killed him; they claimed that he was a mawla of al-
Faḍl57 b. 'Abd b. Rabī‘ah b. al-Hārith b. Abd al-Muṭṭalib,58 a
brave man called Nuṣayr. [Al-Ḥajjāj] had earlier criticized his gait,
and, when he saw him going about between the [battle] lines, he
said, "Never again shall I criticize him for this gait."

Al-Ṭufayl b. 'Amir b. Wāṭhilah was killed.59 It was he who had
said in Fārs, while advancing on al-Ḥājjaj with 'Abd al-Raḥmān
from Kirmān (tawil).60

[The phantom of] Janūb61 paid us a night visit at
al-Ghariyyān,62 after we,
the distance being long, had become fatigued.
They (that is, our troops) have come to you leading the fates;
our vanguard63 has been guided to you by [your] sins.

[1066] There is no good on earth for anyone who does not have
a share from God in the world to come.
Inform al-Ḥajjāj that there has drawn near to him
chastisement that will strike [him] through
the hands of the believers.
When we come to the two mīṣr (that is, al-Baṣrah and
al-Kūfah),Muḥammad64 will flee,
but flight will not save the son of the accursed one.

[Al-Ḥajjāj] said [when he learned of al-Ṭufayl's death], "The fate
[which you wanted for us] is a matter which God knew you to be
more deserving of. He hastened it for you in this world and will
chastise you in the next."

[The Iraqis] were defeated, and 'Abd al-Raḥmān set off toward al-
Kūfah, followed by those Kūfans who were with him and the

57. Following the Addenda et Emendanda.
58. A Hāshimi who had been killed in 63 (683) (Caskel, Šamharat an-nasab,
register).
59. For his father, see above, n. 4.
60. The fourth of the following verses is given also by al-Baladhuri (AAC, p.
346).
61. I am grateful to Professor Iḥsān 'Abbās for pointing out to me that this is to
be read as a woman's name; her identity, however, remains unclear.
62. "Two well-known buildings in El-Koofeh, at El-Thaweeyeh, where is the
tomb of 'Alec, the Prince of the Faithful, asserted to have been built by one of the
Kings of El-Ḥeereh" (Lane, Lexicon, p. 2254b). See the discussion by Fahd, Le
panthéon de l'Arabie centrale, p. 91–94.
63. Preferring ūlānā to awlānā.
64. The son of al-Ḥajjāj (cf. below, p. 48).
strongest of the Başrān horsemen. When he had gone, the Başrāns flocked to 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Abbās b. Rabī'ah b. al-Ḥārith b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalīb65 and swore allegiance to him. For five nights he fought al-Ḥaḍījah with them; it was the fiercest fighting the people had seen. Then he went off and joined Ibn al-Ash'ath, and was followed and joined by a group of Başrāns. There also went out [of al- Başrāh] al-Ḥarīsh b. Hilāl al-Sa'dī,66 from the Banū Anf al-Nāqah,67 who was wounded, he went to Safawān68 and died of his wound. [Also] killed was Ziyād b. Muqāṭīl b. Misma',69 from the Banū Qays b. Tha'labah, who was in command of the khums70 of Bakr b. Wā'il with Ibn al-Ash'ath and was over the infantry. His daughter71 Ḥamīdah stood up and lamented him, saying (mutaqārib):

Ziyād defended his two banners,
and the protector of the Banū al-'Anbar fled.72

Al-Balṭa'73 al-Sa'dī came and heard her lamenting her father and stigmatizing the Tamīmī. He had been selling clarified butter at al-Mirbad;74 he left his clarified butter with his friends, came until he stood beneath her, and said (mutaqārib):

Why do you blame one who did not commit blameworthy actions?
May the night be long for a marriageable young lady such as you!

---

65. Al-Ḥāshimi [Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, register].
66. Who had earlier been a Tamīmī leader of importance in Khurasan [Caskel, loc. cit.].
68. A place one day’s journey from al-Basrah on the road to the Hijāz [Yāqūt, Muˈjam, vol. III, pp. 98–99].
69. Crone, Slaves on Horses, p. 117.
70. One of the “fifths” into which the Başrān fighting men were divided [Pellat, Le milieu baˈṣriˈen, p. 23].
71. According to al-Baladhi, AAC, p. 351, she was Ḥamīdah (or Ḥumaydah) br. Muqāṭīl, i.e., the sister of Ziyād.
73. The pointing is lacking or impressionistic; the name could also be al-Balīgh or al-Nabīgh or al-Tabīˈ.
74. The Başrān halting place for caravans [EP, s.v. [forthcoming]].
If the spear point destroyed your father,
the horses may reach he who was in flight
(that is, the father)
And they may butt under the dust
one who was not innocent75 and had no excuse.
We defended the standard of al-Ḥarish,
while the standard of the Banū Jaḥdar76 went astray.

[1068] 'Āmir b. Wāthilah said, elegizing his son Tufayl [basīṭ]:

Tufayl left care weighing upon me and departed this life,
and that has crushed my strength signally.
I shall never forget the two sons of Sumayyah,77
whatever else I may forget, [the loss of] each of whom was for me a source of fatigue.
The fates [earlier] missed me, not trying to come
forward to me
until my old age, when they left me with nothing.
After Tufayl I have become as one from whom the waters
have dried up and the water has disappeared into
the earth,78
One who has no camel to ride in the land and who,
if he strives in the track of him who has escaped
him, becomes weary.

There arose from the land of Khāqān,79 which the sons
of Fārs had subjugated like lions80 in their squadrons,81
And from Sijistān a web of circumstances rendered attractive
to you by fate, perdition brought for you
Until you reached the basins of death and the squadrons
went away from you, leaving no one behind [alive].

75. Al-barī: Al-shahīd, “martyred,” is given as a variant.
76. The Masāml‘ah were descendants of Jaḥdar b. Ḍubay‘ah [Crone, Slaves on Horses, p. 116].
77. Presumably, the poet’s wife.
78. The text has al-miyāh, “waters,” while Ibn al-Athir gives al-suyl, “the floods.” Reading aw nāḍābā, “disappeared into the earth,” as given by manuscripts O and B.
79. A title used by the Turks to signify “[supreme] ruler” [EL, s.v. Khākān].
80. Reading ghulubā in place of the ghalabā given by the editor.
They left you felled, a hostage to the battlefield, where you see the vultures in groups over the dead. They made a compact and then did not fulfill what they had undertaken, [instead] handing the captives and the plunder over to the enemy.

What a disgrace it is for a people when their women are taken captive, when they are numerous and they experience disgrace and destitution!


Abū Mikhnaf said: As Yūnus b. Abī Isḥāq related it to me, he was in command of four thousand Syrians.

Abū Mikhnaf said: Sahm b. 'Abd al-Raḥmān al-Juḥānī related to me that there were two thousand of them. Hanẓalah b. al-Warrād al-Tamīmī,84 from the Banū Rīyāḥ b. Yarbū', and Ibn 'Attāb b. Warqa'85 were over al-Madā'in, while Maṭṭār b. Nājiyah,86 from the Banū Yarbū', was in charge of the maʿūnah.87 When [news of] the Ibn al-Asb'ath affair reached [Maṭṭār b. Nājiyah], he advanced until he came near to al-Kūfah. Ibn al-Ḥaḍramī fortified himself in the citadel, and the Kūfāns rose up with Maṭṭār b. Nājiyah

82. Here, and below (pp. 46, 130), “Ayyūb b. al-Ḥakam” should be taken to signify “al-Ḥakam b. Ayyūb” (see above, n. 37, and cf. Khalīfah, Taʿrīkh, pp. 295, 314).

83. The text gives 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Amīr, but the second “Abd al-Raḥmān” appears to have arisen by ditography (cf. Ms O; al-Balādūrī, AAC, p. 353; Crone, Slaves on Horses, p. 132).

84. About whom al-Ṭabarī has nothing else to say.

85. Presumably Khalīd b. 'Attāb (see the index to the Ṭabarī text and Caskel, Čamharat an-nasab, register).

86. Caskel, loc. cit.

87. The exact responsibilities of such an appointment at this time remain unclear, they may have included fiscal duties, in addition to general administration and/or the maintenance of law and order (see EP, s.v. [forthcoming]).
against Ibn al-Ḥadrami and the Syrians who were with him. [Maṭar] besieged him, and they offered peace with him in return for getting out and leaving him the citadel; so he made peace with them.

Abū Mikhnaf said: Yūnus b. Abī Ishāq related to me that he saw them coming down from the citadel in haste. The door of the citadel was opened for Maṭar b. Nājiyah, the people crowded up to it, and Maṭar was crushed against it. He drew his sword and with it smote the lip of one of the mules of the Syrians; then he cast its lip aside and entered the citadel. The people gathered to him, and he gave them two hundred dirhams [each].

Yūnus said: I saw [the dirhams] being divided among them; Abū al-Saqr was among those who were given them. [Then] Ibn al-Ashʿath came in defeat to al-Kūfah, followed thither by the people.

Abū Jaʿfar said: In this year, according to one [of the authorities], there took place between al-Ḥajjāj and Ibn al-Ashʿath the battle of Dayr al-Jamājim. Al-Wāqidi said: The battle of Dayr al-Jamājim was in Shaʿbān of this year [September–October 701]. Others have said that it took place in the year 83.

The Reason for Ibn al-Ashʿath’s Progress to Dayr al-Jamājim and [the Battle] between Him and al-Ḥajjāj

According to Hishām—Abū Mikhnaf—Abū al-Zubayr al-Hamdānī al-Arḥabi: I had sustained a wound. The Kūfāns went out to receive Ibn al-Ashʿath when he came, and received him after he had crossed the Zabārā bridge. As he was drawing near to it, he said to me, “I’d be grateful if you would turn off the road, so that the people will not see your wound. I don’t want the wounded to receive them.” I did so, and the people entered al-Kūfah.

88. According to al-Baladhuri, AAC, p. 353, he was crushed against the door by a mule.
89. If this is how the name is to be read.
90. Yāqūt [Muʿjam, vol. II, p. 912] knew this as a place (“I think it was one of the nawāḥi of al-Kūfah”) mentioned in connection with the Qarāmīṭah in the time of al-Muqtadir (see de Goeje, Mémoire sur les Carmathes,2 p. 97).
91. Reading faʿaltu, as proposed in the Addenda et Emendanda.
When he entered al-Kūfah, all the Kūfans inclined to him—Hamdān got to him first—and surrounded him at the residence of 'Amr b. Ḥurayth, except for a group from Tamīm which was not great in number; these last had gone to Maṭar b. Nājiyyah and had wanted to fight for him, but were unable to take on the people. 'Abd al-Raḥmān called for ladders of various kinds, and these were placed in position so that the people might climb up the citadel; they did this and took [Maṭar], who was brought to 'Abd al-Raḥmān and said to him, "Spare me, for I am the worthi-est of your horsemen and the most able of them to replace you."

['Abd al-Raḥmān] ordered that he be imprisoned. Then he called for him subsequently and pardoned him, and Maṭar rendered the oath of allegiance to him. The people entered into ['Abd al-Raḥmān's] presence and rendered the oath of allegiance to him. The Baṣrans came to him, and the strongpoints and frontier ways of access fell to him; among those Baṣrans who came to him was 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. al-'Abbās b. Rabī'ah b. al-Ḥarīth b. 'Abd al-Muṭṭalib—so he was known—who had fought al-Ḥajjāj for three [nights] at al-ṣBaṣrah after the exodus of Ibn al-Ash'ath. [News of] that reached 'Abd al-Malik, who said, "May God fight 'Udayy al-Raḥmān! He has fled, and some of the young men of Quraysh have fought for three [nights] after him."

Al-Ḥajjāj set off from al-ṣBaṣrah and went through the land until he passed between al-Qādisiyah and al-'Udhayb. [The Iraqis] prevented him from stopping at al-Qādisiyah: 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Ash'ath sent against him 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. al-'Abbās with a large force made up of cavalry from the two miṣrs (that is, al-ṣBaṣrah and al-Kūfah), and they prevented him from stopping at al-Qādisiyah. Then they kept pace with him until they came out at the top of Wādī al-Sībah; they kept pace with

---

92. Al-Baladhuri, AAC, p. 356, notes that they were his maternal uncles (see also above, p. 7, and below, note 237).
93. So rendering al-salālim wa-al-'ajal.
94. Cf. above [p. 17], where we are told that he had fought him for five nights.
95. Literally, "the small enemy of the Merciful," this being a play on the name 'Abd al-Raḥmān, "the servant of the Merciful."
96. To the south-southwest of al-Kūfah. For discussion of their exact location, see EP, s.v. al-Qādisiyah (p. 384b).
each other until al-Hajjāj stopped at Dayr Qurrah and 'Abd al-Rahmān b. al-'Abbās stopped at Dayr al-Jamājim. Then Ibn al-Ash'ath came and stopped at Dayr al-Jamājim, while al-Hajjāj was [still] at Dayr Qurrah. Al-Hajjāj used to say subsequently, "Couldn't 'Abd al-Rahmān augur from the birds when he saw that I had stopped at Dayr Qurrah and he had stopped at Dayr al-Jamājim?"

There gathered together at Dayr al-Jamājim the Kūfans, the Baṣrans, the people of the frontier ways of access and the strongpoints, and the qurrā' of the two miṣrs. They were unanimous in making war on al-Hajjāj, being united in that by their hatred and loathing of him. They were at that time one hundred thousand stipendiary fighting men, accompanied by a like number of their mawlās.

Al-Hajjāj's reinforcements from 'Abd al-Malik had come to him before he stopped at Dayr Qurrah; before stopping there, he had wanted to go up to Hit and the area of the Jazīrah, out of a desire to be nearer to Syria and the Jazīrah and so that he could be close to the ṭafaghah of the price [of the foodstuffs] of the Jazīrah. But when he passed by Dayr Qurrah, he said, "This place isn't far from the Commander of the Faithful, and al-Falālij and 'Ayn al-Tamr are nearby"; and he stopped there and entrenched himself in his camp, [just as] Ibn Muhammad had in his.

The people would make sorties every day and fight, while at the same time advancing their trenches toward each other; and the fighting intensified. When [news of] that reached the heads of Quraysh and the Syrians with 'Abd al-Malik and his mawlās, they said, "If the only thing that will please the people of Iraq is the départure..."
removal of al-Ḥajjāj from them, that is easier than fighting them; so remove him from them, and that will secure obedience and spare our blood and theirs." [At this, 'Abd al-Malik] sent his son 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Malik to his brother, Muḥammad b. Marwān, [who was] in the territory of al-Mawṣil, ordering him to come to him. Both joined him, with their armies, and he ordered them to put it to the people of Iraq that al-Ḥajjāj would be removed from them, that they would be assigned the same stipends as those assigned to the Syrians, and that Ibn Muḥammad could stop in any part of Iraq he wished and could be governor of it for as long as he wished and as long as 'Abd al-Malik was ruler.105 If they accepted this, al-Ḥajjāj would be dismissed and Muḥammad b. Marwān would be amīr of Iraq; and if they refused to accept it, al-Ḥajjāj would [remain] amīr of the Syrian army and war commander, with Muḥammad b. Marwān and 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Malik responsible to him.106

No order ever came to al-Ḥajjāj that was harder or more vexatious and hurtful to him than this, on account of [his] fear that they would accept and he would be dismissed. He wrote to 'Abd al-Malik, "O Commander of the Faithful, if you present the Iraqis with my removal, it will not be long before they disobey you and go against you. That will simply make them bolder against you. Did you not see and hear of the uprising of the Iraqis with al-Ashtar against Ibn 'Affān? When he asked them what they wanted, they said, 'The removal of Saʿīd b. al-ʿĀṣ'; and, when he had removed him, the year was not out before they went to him and killed him.107 It takes iron to cleave iron.108 May God be propitious to you in your deliberations. Peace be upon you." 'Abd al-Malik[, however,] insisted on proposing these conditions to the Iraqis, desiring freedom from war.

When [Muḥammad b. Marwān and 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Malik] had joined up with al-Ḥajjāj, 'Abdallāh went forth and said, "O people of Iraq, I am 'Abdallāh, son of the Commander of the Faithful. He will give you such-and-such," and he mentioned the

106. Ibn A'tham, Fudūḥ, vol. VII, p. 137, gives a different version: According to him, 'Abd al-Malik’s offer to the Iraqis consisted of (i) the dismissal of al-Ḥajjāj, (ii) the evacuation of the Syrians, and (iii) the appointment over them of whomever they might want.
conditions which we have mentioned. [Then] Muḥammad b. Marwān said, “I am the messenger of the Commander of the Faithful to you, and he proposes to you such-and-such,” and he mentioned these conditions.

They said, “We shall come back this evening,” and went back and joined Ibn al-Ash'ath. Every single commander, chief, and horseman came to him. Ibn al-Ash'ath praised God and then said, “To continue: You have been presented with something which, if you take it today, [appears to be] an opportunity, and I am not sure that it will tomorrow [prove to] be a [matter for] regret for one possessed of insight. You are today all square [with them]. If they take al-Zāviyah into account [against you], you may take the battle day of Tustar into account against them. Accept what they have offered you while you are mighty and strong, while the [Syrians] are fearful of you and you are still able to look down on them, and, by God, you will remain bold against them and mighty in their eyes if you accept, forever, as long as you live.”

The people rose up on every side and said, “God has destroyed them. They are in a state of anguish, distress, famine, dearth, and abasement, while we have large numbers, [foodstuffs at] a cheap price, and supplies nearby. No, by God, we shall not accept.” And they repeated their disavowal of ['Abd al-Malik]. The first to do so at al-Jamājim were 'Abdallah b. Dhu’āb and 'Umayr b. Tayhān. Their disavowal of him at al-Jamājim was more united than it had been in Fārs. [At this], Muḥammad b. Marwān and 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Malik returned to al-Ḥajjāj and said, “Your camp and your army are your affair, so do as you think best. We have been ordered to heed and obey you.” He said, “I told you that none other than the two of you are wanted for this command.” Then he said, “I shall fight for you, and my authority is yours,” and, whenever they met him, they greeted him as the amīr; [however,] it has been claimed by Abū Yazīd al-Saksākī that he also greeted them as amīrs when he met them. They let him get on with the war, which he took charge of.

According to Abū Mikhnaf—al-Kalbī, Muḥammad b. al-Sā‘īb: When the people gathered at al-Jamājim, I heard ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. Muḥammad say, “The Banū Marwān are reviled on account of

[their] blue-eyed (that is, non-Arab) [mother]. By God, they have a lineage no better than that; and the Banū Abī al-ʿĀs [are worse still, being] aʿlāj from the people of Saffūriyyah. If this matter (that is, the caliphate) is among Quraysh, then I can adduce an origin from Quraysh, and, if it is among the Arabs, I am the son of al-Ashʿath b. Qays! He said this at the top of his voice, to make the people hear.


110. Al-zaraqā': see Glossarium, p. cclxxvii.
111. On this Qurashi group, see EIP, suppl., s.v. Aʿyās.
112. Singular 'ilī, a term signifying a man who is strong, sturdy, non-Arab, and an unbeliever.
113. A district in al-Urdunn, near al-Tabariyyah (Yaʿqūt, Muʿjam, vol. III, p. 402). For some of the background to this piece of abuse, see Crone, Meccan Trade, p. 102, n. 70.
114. Faʿanni fuqīʿat (or taqawwabat) baydat Quraysh. His grandmother, the wife of al-Ashʿath, was a sister of Abū Bakr's [EIP, s.v. al-Ashʿath].
117. Ibid., p. 140.
118. See above, n. 50.
119. “ʿAbdallāḥ” according to Mss. O and B, as well as Ibn al-Athir.
120. “Khubayb” according to Ibn al-Athir.
121. Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, register.
123. See above, n. 65.
124. Who, oddly, does not figure in Ibn al-Kalbi’s Jamharah, see the index to al-Tabari’s text.
125. For all that we have been told above (p. 15 and n. 53) that he had been killed at the battle of al-Zāwiyah, he also reappears below (pp. 39, 43).
126. See the list of qurraʿ provided by Sayed (Revolts, pp. 35ff., nos. 44, 15, 14, 23, and 17, respectively).
Then they began to engage each other every day and to fight. The supplies of the Iraqis came to them from al-Kūfah and its Sawād, and they were abundantly provided for as they wanted, [both the Kūfans] and their brethren the Başrans. The Syrians[, on the other hand,] were in dire straits: Prices went up to their disadvantage, food supplies became scarce for them, and they lacked meat, it was as if they were under siege. But, for all that, they took on the Iraqis throughout the day, fighting very fiercely. First al-Ḥajjāj would advance his trench, and then [the Iraqis] would [advance theirs, and so it went on] until the day on which Jabalah b. Zaḥr was struck down; then ['Abd al-Rahmān] sent [word] to Kumayl b. Ziyād al-Nakha'i,127 who was a grave man, steadfast in war, possessed of courage, and a voice among the people. His [that is, Jabalah's] squadron was called "The Squadron of the Qurra'." When attacked, they would scarcely move, and, when attacking, they would not retreat; they were known for that. One day, they made a sortie as usual, and the people made a sortie with them. Al-Ḥajjāj deployed his companions and then marched among his battle ranks. Ibn Muhammad made a sortie with seven battle ranks, one after another. Al-Ḥajjāj deployed against Jabalah b. Zaḥr's squadron of Qurra' three squadrons, over which he placed al-Jarrāḥ b. 'Abdallah al-Hakami;128 they advanced against them.

Abū Mikhnaf said: Abū Yazīd al-Saksaki related to me: I, by God, was among the cavalry deployed against Jabalah b. Zahr. We attacked him and his companions three times, one attack per squadron, and, by God, we found them in no way wanting.

[The Death of al-Mughīrah b. al-Muhallab]

In this year al-Mughīrah b. al-Muhallab129 died in Khurasan.

According to 'Alī b. Muḥammad—al-Mufaddal b. Muḥammad: Al-Mughīrah b. al-Muhallab was his father's deputy at Marw over the whole of his province; then he died in Rajab 82 [August–September 701]. The news reached Yazīd [b. al-Muhallab], and the army learned of it, but they did not inform al-Muhallab. Yazīd

127. See Sayed's list, p. 357, no. 27.
129. See above, n. 46.
wanted to let [al-Muhallab] know, so he instructed the women to cry out. Al-Muhallab said, “What is this?” and he was told, “al-Mughirah has died.” At this, he exclaimed, “Verily to God we belong, and verily unto Him we return!” and he grieved until his grief became apparent upon him and one of his intimates took him to task. He summoned Yazid and sent him to Marw, having advised him as to what he should do, while his tears poured down onto his beard. Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to al-Muhallab, offering his condolences in respect of al-Mughirah, who had been a sayyid. On the day when al-Mughirah died, al-Muhallab was stationed at Kish in Transoxania, for the purpose of making war on its people.

[‘Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Yazid went off with sixty—also put at seventy—horsemen, including Mūjja‘ah b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān al-‘Atṣākī, ‘Abdallāh b. Mu‘ammār b. Shumayr al-Yashkūrī, Dinār al-Sijistiānī, al-Haytham b. al-Munakkhkhāl al-Jurmüzī, Ghaẓwān al-Iskāf the lord of Zamm—who had converted to Islam at al-Muhallab’s hand—Abū Muḥammad al-Zammi, and ʿAtīyyah, [who was] a mawlā of ‘Atīk. They were encountered in the desert of Nasāf by 150 Turks, who said to them, “Who are you?” and they replied, “Merchants.” “Where are [your] loads?” asked [the Turks], and they replied, “We have sent them on ahead.” “Well, give us something,” said [the Turks]. Yazid refused, but Mūjja‘ah gave them a garment, some pieces of cloth, and a bow, and they departed. Then they acted treacherously and returned to them, and Yazid said, “[There,] I knew best about them—fight them.” The fighting between them intensified. Yazid was on a horse near to the ground, and with him was a Khārijī man whom he had taken [prisoner]. [This man] said [to him], “Allow me to live,” and [Yazid] acceded to that. Then he said to [the man], “What are you capable of?” and [the man] charged upon [the Turks] until he mingled with them; then he was behind them, having killed a man, then he rushed again and mingled with them until he came out in front of them, having killed [another] man; then he returned to Yazid, who had [in the meantime] killed one of their lords and

130. EP2, s.v.
131. Following the Addenda et Emendanda.
132. See below, n. 346.
133. Presumably, he was on a small horse or pony; Ibn al-Athīr omits the phrase.
been shot in the leg. [The Turks now] put on more pressure, and Abū Muḥammad al-Zammi fled, but Yazīd doggedly faced up to them, until they ultimately abstained from fighting [Yazīd and his companions]. They said, "We acted treacherously, but we shall not depart until either we all die, or you die, or you give us something."

Yazīd swore that he would not give them anything, but Mujjā'ah said, "For heaven's sake! Al-Mughīrah has perished, and you saw what an effect his death had on al-Muhallab. I beseech you by God not to be struck down today." [Yazīd] said [to him], "Al-Mughīrah did not exceed his allotted span, and I shall not exceed mine." Then Mujjā'ah threw them a yellow turban, and they took it and departed, [after which] Abū Muḥammad al-Zammi came with horsemen and food. Yazīd said to him, "You deserted us, O Abū Muḥammad," to which he replied, "I simply went off to bring reinforcements and food." The rajaz poet said:

Yazīd, you sword of Abū Sa'īd,134
peoples and armies, together with
The throng on the gathering day which is witnessed, know
that you, on the battle day with the Turks,
are made of stern stuff.

And al-Ashqarī135 said (basīt):

The Turks know, when [Yazīd] encounters their throngs,
that they have met one who is [like] a meteor that dispels darkness,
[One accompanied] by young men like lions of the thicket,
who know no refuge save patience and endurance.
We see streaks of blood covering the people,
but I do not see any sign of them shrinking back
or fearing to advance.
Beneath them are full-grown horses that endure the adversity
that they [the riders] endure, until they [the horses]
are shoed136 with blood.

In the turmoil of death, until nighttime envelops them,
neither side either flees or suffers defeat.

134. I.e., al-Muhallab.
136. Following the Addenda et Emendanda.
In this year al-Muhallab made peace with the people of Kish in return for tribute\(^{137}\) and left it, heading for Marw.

**The Reason for al-Muhallab’s Departure from Kish**

According to ‘Ali b. Muḥammad—al-Mufaqḍal b. Muḥammad: Al-Muhallab was suspicious of some people from Mudar. He accordingly imprisoned them and departed from Kish, leaving them [there], he also left Ḥurayth b. Qutbah, the mawla of Khuzā’ah, saying to him, “When you have exacted the whole of the tribute, return the[ir] hostages to them.” He crossed the river [Oxus] and, when he got to Balkh, he stopped there. He wrote to Ḥurayth, “I cannot be sure that, if you return the hostages to them, they will not attack you; accordingly, when you take possession of the tribute, do not set the hostages free until you reach Balkh territory.” Ḥurayth said to the king of Kish, “Al-Muhallab has written to me [telling me] to detain the hostages until I reach Balkh territory.” If you hasten [to let me have] what you owe, I shall hand your hostages over to you and go and tell him that his letter arrived after I had exacted the whole of what was owing and had handed the hostages over to you.” [At this, the king] hastened [to pay] to [Ḥurayth and those with him the sum stipulated in] their peace agreement, and [Ḥurayth] returned to them those of them whom he held. [Ḥurayth] then set off and [was en route when he] was confronted by the Turks, who said, “Ransom yourself and those who are with you, we encountered Yazīd b. al-Muhallab, and he ransomed himself.” Ḥurayth said, “Do you imagine that Yazīd’s mother gave birth to me?” and he fought them and killed [some of] them and took prisoners, whom [the Turks] then ransomed; he treated them with favor, released them, and returned the ransom to them. His words, “Do you imagine that Yazīd’s mother gave birth to me?” reached al-Muhallab, who said, “That slave is disdainful of [the idea] that he might have been born of his kinsmen,”\(^{138}\) and he became angry.

---

\(^{137}\) So rendering *fidyah* [see Wellhausen, *Kingdom*, p. 434].

\(^{138}\) So rendering *an talidahu rahimuhu* [Ibn al-Athir says *an talidahu ummu Yazid*]; it is difficult to understand what al-Ṭabarī’s version is driving at here, since Ḥurayth was a mawla of Khuzā’ah and not of al-Azd.
When [Hurayth] came to [al-Muhallab] at Balkh, the latter said to him "Where are the hostages?" [Hurayth] replied, "I took possession of what was owing and let them go." [Al-Muhallab] said, "Didn't I write to you [telling you] not to let them go?" "Your letter reached me after I had let them go," [Hurayth] replied, "and after I had been spared what you feared." "You are lying," said [al-Muhallab], "you approached them and their king, and you apprised him of my letter to you," and he ordered that [Hurayth) be stripped. The latter exhibited much distress at being stripped, to such an extent that al-Muhallab thought that he must have leprosy; then he stripped him and gave him thirty lashes. Hurayth said, "I should have preferred you to have given me three hundred lashes without having stripped me," out of modesty and shame at being stripped; and he swore that he would kill al-Muhallab.

Al-Muhallab rode forth one day, and Hurayth also rode. While he was going along behind al-Muhallab, he ordered two ghulams(^39) of his to smite him; one of them refused and left him and departed, while the other did not dare to advance on [al-Muhallab] on his own. When he returned, [Hurayth] said to his ghulam, "What prevented you from [attacking] him?" (The ghulam) replied, "Fear for you, by God. I did not fear for myself, by God. I knew that, if we killed him, both you and we would be killed. My consideration was for you: Had I known that you would be safe from being killed, I should have killed him."

[Ali b. Muhammad] continued: Hurayth left off coming to al-Muhallab and made a show of being in pain. It reached al-Muhallab that he was feigning illness and that he wished to murder him, and he said to Thabit b. Qutbah, "Bring me your brother, for he is to me as one of my sons. I did what I did to him only out of consideration for him and as a matter of discipline, just as I might give one of my sons a hiding in order to discipline him." Thabit accordingly came to his brother and besought him and asked him to ride to al-Muhallab. But he refused, being fearful of [al-Muhallab], and said, "I shall not go to him after he has done to me what he has done. I do not trust him, and he does not trust me." When his brother Thabit saw that, he said to him, "If that is

---

[^39]: This term has been translated as "young man" or "youth" when it clearly means no more than that, but has sometimes been left untranslated when some sort of servile or subservient status is implied (see EP, s.v.).
your view, set forth with us to Mūsā b. 'Abdallāh b. Khāzim," for Thābit feared that Hurayth would murder al-Muhallab and that they would then all be killed. They accordingly set forth with three hundred of their shākiriyah and Arab adherents.

Abū Ja'far said: In this year al-Muhallab b. Abī Ṣufrah died.

**The Cause and Place of the Death [of al-Muhallab]**

'Ali b. Muḥammad said: Al-Mufadḍal related to me: When he departed from Kish, al-Muhallab went off heading for Marw, and, when he was at Zāghūl [in the territory of] Marw al-_RADH, he was struck by pleurisy—some people say by plague. He summoned Habib and those of his [other] sons who were present, called for some arrows that were tied in a bundle, and said, "Do you think that you could break these while they are gathered together?" They said, "No." He said, "Do you think that you could break them when they are separated?" They said, "Yes." He said, "Thus is the collective body (jama'ah). My testamentary command to you is pious fear of God and [respect for] the bond of kinship. The bond of kinship prolongs the allotted span, multiplies wealth, and increases numbers. I forbid you the forsaking of relations, for that occasions [hell]fire and brings about abasement and destitution. Love one another, relate to one another in a friendly fashion, be united and not at variance, and do good for one another; in this way your affairs will be as one. When the sons of a single mother fall out with one another, what hope is there for the sons of co-wives?! Incumbent upon you are obedience and [respect for] the collective body. Let your good-doing be nobler than your words. I like it in a man that his action be superior to [what] his tongue [says]. When answering, be on your guard against slips of the tongue: A man's foot may slip, and he

---

140. "Personal guard" (Barthold, Turkestan, p. 180), from Persian chākar, "servant."

141. Yāqūt (Mu'jam, vol. II, p. 907) knows it simply as one of the villages of Marw al-RAĐH, its only claim to fame being the presence there of al-Muhallab's tomb.

142. Following Lane in the rendering of shawkah; Dozy, however, defines it as "a painful ulcer, usually in the thumb" (Supplément, s.v.), which fits well with al-Ya'qubī's akīlah waqa'at fi riṣlihi, "an ulcer which manifested itself in his foot" (Buldān, p. 299).
can recover himself; but his tongue may slip, and he can be destroyed. Acknowledge the entitlement of everyone who comes to you. A man's coming to you, whether in the morning or the evening, suffices to commend him to you. Prefer generosity to miserliness. Love the Arabs and do good [to them]. An Arab is a man to whom you can make [no more than] a promise and he will die in defense of you; how then [do you think] he will behave [if you have done him good]? In war, exercise patience together with trickery, which is more beneficial in war than courage. When the battle encounter takes place, [God's] decree domes down: If a man is resolute and then triumphs over his enemy, people say, 'He went about things head-on and then triumphed,' and he is praised; but if, after exercising patience, he does not triumph, people say, 'He was not remiss, nor did he throw away his chances, but [God's] decree prevailed.' Recite the Qur'an and learn the established practices and the discipline of the virtuous. Beware of levity and of too much talking in your gatherings. I have deputed Yazid over you and have put Ḥabib in command of the army until he takes it to Yazid. Do not oppose Yazid.'

Al-Muṣafadāl said to him, "[Even] if you had not preferred him, we should have." Al-Muhallab died, having made his testament to Ḥabib. Ḥabib prayed over him and then went to Marw. Yazid wrote to 'Abd al-Malik with [news of] the death of al-Muhallab and his deputing of him; and al-Ḥaḡjāj confirmed him [in his position]. It is said that [al-Muhallab] said on the occasion of his death and testament, "If it were up to me, I should appoint Ḥabib as the chief of my sons." ['Ali b. Muḥammad said: He died in Dhū al-Ḥijjah 82 (January 702); and Nahār b. Tawṣīʿah al-Taymī144 said (tawīl):

The campaigning that brought riches nigh has ended, and generosity and munificence have died after al-Muhallab.

143. For another version of this wasiyyah, see Ibn Aʿtham, Futūḥ, vol. VII, pp. 119ff.
The Events of the Year 82

They have stayed at Marw al-Rūdh as two pledges at his sepulcher and have been rendered totally absent from east and west.

If anyone says, "Who of all people most deserves a blessing?"

we name him, without fear [of contradiction].

He made both flat and rugged territory available to us, with cavalry like flocks of swift sandgrouse, exposing them to the thrusting of spears until it was as if he were honoring them with dyed purple.

He is surrounded by Qaḥṭān, who have bound themselves to him, and by their allies from the tribe[s] of Bakr and Taghlib.

The two tribes of Ma‘add take refuge with his standard, offering themselves and their mothers and fathers as ransoms for him.

In this year al-Hajjāj b. Yusuf appointed Yazīd b. al-Muhallab over Khurasan after the death of al-Muhallab.

In it, too, ‘Abd al-Malik dismissed Abān b. ‘Uthmān145 from Medina. Al-Wāqidi said: He dismissed him from it on 13 Jumādā II (25 July 701).

He (sc. al-Wāqidi) said: In it, too, ‘Abd al-Malik appointed Hishām b. Ismā‘īl al-Makhzūmi146 over Medina. When he was appointed there, Hishām b. Ismā‘īl dismissed from the judiciary of Medina Nawfal b. Musāḥiq al-‘Āmīrī,147 who had been appointed to that position by Yaḥyā b. al-Ḥakam; when Abān b. ‘Uthmān took over there after the dismissal of Yaḥyā, he confirmed [Nawfal in his position] in charge of the judiciary. Abān’s tenure of office lasted seven years, three months, and thirteen nights. When Hishām b. Ismā‘īl dismissed Nawfal b. Musāḥiq from the

145. See above, n. 45.
146. Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, register; EP, s.v. Makhzūm.
147. From ‘Āmir b. Lu‘ayy of Quraysh (Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, register).
judiciary, he appointed in his place 'Amr b. Khālid al-Zuraqī.\textsuperscript{148}

The leader of the pilgrimage in this year was Abān b. 'Uthmān: Thus it has been related to me by Aḥmad b. Thābit on the authority of him who mentioned it on the authority of Išāq b. 'Isā on the authority of Abū Ma'shar. Over al-Kūfah and al-Baṣrah and the East was al-Ḥajjāj, while over Khurasan was Yazid b. al-Muhallab, acting on behalf of al-Ḥajjāj.

\textsuperscript{148} 'Amr b. Khaldah al-Zuraqī according to Khalifah (Ta'rikh, p. 299 [and 'Umar b. Khuldah al-Z., according to the 1968 Damascus edition by Zakkār, p. 390]); the clan in question is presumably Zurayq b. 'Āmir of Khazraj of the Ānṣār (see Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, chart 192, where a certain Khaldah b. 'Āmir is to be found, albeit without a son named 'Amr/'Umar).
The Events of the Year

83

(FEBRUARY 4, 702—JANUARY 23, 703)

In it there took place the defeat of 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Aš'ath at Dayr al-Jamājīm.

The Cause of [Ibn al-Aš'ath's] Defeat

According to Hishām b. Muḥammad—Abū Mikhnaf—Abū al-Zubayr al-Hamdānī: I was among the cavalry of Jabalah b. Zaḥr. When the Syrians attacked him time after time, 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī Laylā, the specialist in religious law (faqīh), called to us, saying 149 “O body of qurrah, for no one is flight more unseemly than for you. I heard 'Ali—may God raise his station among the virtuous and grant him the best reward of martyrs and those who are veracious—say on the day when we encountered the Syrians [at Ṣiffin]: 'O Believers, he who sees aggression being committed and something disliked being enjoined and denies it in his heart, he is safe and secure; he who denies [it] with his tongue is rewarded, he being worthier than his companion [who simply de-

149. According to Ibn al-Athīr (and al-Maqrizī—see the Addenda et Emendanda), it was Jabalah who said this, to 'Abd al-Rahmān and the qurrah.
nied it in his heart]; and he who denies it with the sword, so that
the Word of God may be uppermost and the word of the oppres-
sors the lowest, he is the one who achieves the path of
right guidance, the one whose heart is illuminated with cern-
ty.' So fight these innovators, who deem licit that which is illicit,
who neither know nor acknowledge that which is right, and who
have committed an aggression which they do not deny.'
Abū al-Bakhtārī said, "Fight for your religion and for [this]
world of yours. By God, if they triumph over you, they will cor-
rupt your religion for you and take over your worldly interests."
Al-Sha'bī said, "O people of Islam, fight them. No harm will
overtake you in fighting them. By God, I know of no people on the
face of the earth more oppressive or tyrannical in rule than they.

So hasten against them."
Sa'īd b. Jubayr said, "Fight them. You will not sin by fighting
against them and their sins with [firm] intention and certitude.
Fight against their tyranny in rule, their insolent behavior in
[matters pertaining to] religion, their abasing of the weak, and
their 'causing the death of' ritual prayer."151

According to Abū Mikhnafl—Abū al-Zubayr: We prepared to
charge them, and Jabalah said to us, "When you charge them,
make the charge a true one: Do not turn your faces away from
them before you fall upon their line." [Abū al-Zubayr] continued:
We charged them single-mindedly and strongly. We smote the
three squadrons until they split up; then we went on until we fell
on their line and smote them until we removed them from [their
position]; then we withdrew and passed by Jabalah, fallen, and we
did not know how he had been killed.

[Abū al-Zubayr] said: That shook us. We became faint-hearted
and stopped where we were. Our qurrā' were numerous, and

151. Imātāthim al-ṣalāt. Cf. Hawting, First Dynasty of Islam, p. 70, to which it
may be added that it was known in Başrān and Omani İbādī circles of the late
second/early third century A.H. that al-Ḥajjāj had sometimes delayed the Friday
prayer until sunset; when the noon, afternoon, and sunset prayers were performed
together (al-Siyar wa-al-jawābāt li-'ulamā' wa-'a'immat ahl' Umnān, vol. I, pp. 291,
309–10 [the source being Abū Sufyān Maḥbūb b. al-Raḥlī]), and the seventeenth-
century chronicler Ibn al-Imād (Shahārat al-dhahab, vol. I, p. 93) was aware that
al-Ḥajjāj kāna yumītāl-ṣalāt ḥattā yakhruja waqtuha, literally, "he used to
cause the death of ritual prayer until the [proper] time for its performance passed."

152. According to Ibn A'tham (Futūb, vol. VII, p. 139), there were over 8,000 min
al-qurrā' wa-al-zuhhād wa-al-'ubbād mimman yāra qatla al-Ḥajjāj jiḥāden.
we passed the news of the death of Jabalah b. Zahr from one to another. For each of us, it was as if he had lost his father or his brother; indeed, on that battlefield it was an even more grievous loss. Then Abū al-Bakhtārī al-Ṣā‘ī said to us, “Do not let the killing of Jabalah b. Zahr show its effect upon you. He was simply a man among you whose fate came to him on its [appointed] day; there was no way his [death] day could have been put either forward or back. Each of you will taste what he has tasted: [Each will be] called and will answer.” [Abū al-Zubayr] continued: I looked at the faces of the qurrā', and despondency was clearly written on them. Their tongues were tied. [A sense of] failure was manifest among them. The Syrians, glad and joyful, called out, “O enemies of God, you are destroyed. God has killed your wayward leader.”

According to Abū Mikhnaf—Abū Yazid al-Saksaki: When Jabalah and his companions charged, we were put to flight, and they followed us. A group split off from us and was to one side, and we looked, and, lo and behold, his companions were following our companions, and he had stopped on top of an elevated piece of ground, [waiting] for his companions to return to him. One of us said, “That, by God, is Jabalah b. Zahr. Charge him while his companions are distracted from him by the fighting; perhaps you will strike him down.” [Abū Yazid] continued: So we charged him. I testify that he did not flee: Rather, he charged us with his sword. When he came down from the elevation, we transfixed him with spears and dislodged him from his horse; he fell down dead. His companions returned, and, when we saw them coming, we turned aside from them. When they saw him dead, we saw from their exclamations and grief what gladdened our eyes. He continued: We distinguished that plainly [too] in their [manner of] fighting us and their coming out against us.

According to Abū Mikhnaf—Sahm b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān al-Juhānī: When Jabalah was struck down, his death shook the people. Then Bīsṭām b. Maṣqalāh b. Hubayrah al-Shaybānī came, and his arrival encouraged the people. They said, “This man can take the place of Jabalah.” Abū al-Bakhtārī heard such talk from one of

153. So rendering ṭāghūt (which seems preferable to the variant ṭāḥiyyah).
154. Iṣtirā‘ī‘him, i.e., their exclamation of the words inna li-Allāh wa-innā ilayhi rāji‘ūn, “To God we belong and to Him we return!”
them and said, "How foul that you have been made [by God]! If one man among you is killed, you think that you are surrounded; if Ibn Maṣqalāh is now killed, will you surrender yourselves to destruction, and will you say that there is no one left to fight alongside? How fit you are for our hope of you to be altered!" Bīstām had come from al-Rayy, and on the way he and Qutaybah [b. Muslim] had encountered each other. Qutaybah had invited him to [side with] al-Ḥājjāj and the Syrians, while Bīstām had invited [Qutaybah] to [side with] ʿAbd al-Rāḥmān and the Iraqis. Each had declined the other's proposal, and Bīstām had said, "I would rather die with the Iraqis than live with the Syrians"; he had stopped at Māsabadhān. 155 When Bīstām arrived, he said to Ibn Muḥammad, "Give me the command of the cavalry of Rabiʿah"; and he did so. Then Bīstām said to them, "O band of Rabiʿah, I have a bad disposition in war; please tolerate it for me." He was a brave man. One day, the people went out to fight and he attacked with the cavalry of Rabiʿah until he entered the [Syrian] camp. They took, among others, thirty women—slave girls and concubines—and he brought them back with him until he drew near to his [own] camp, when he let them go, and they went off and entered al-Ḥājjāj's camp. "Woe to them!" said al-Ḥājjāj, "Let [the Iraqis] protect their women! Had they not returned [our women], I would be taking their women captive156 tomorrow when I triumph." Then they fought on a subsequent day, and ʿAbdallāh b. Mulayl al-Hamdānī made an attack with his cavalry, entered [the Syrian] camp, and took eighteen women captive. With him was Tāriq b. ʿAbdallāh al-Asadī, who was an archer. An old Syrian man came out of his tent, and the Asadī began to say to one of his companions, "Conceal this old man from me, lest I shoot him or attack him and transfix him." The old man said, raising his voice, "O God, gather us and them together with well-being"; the Asadī said, "I do not want to kill someone like this," and he left him. [At this] Ibn Mulayl brought the women [to a place] not far [from the Syrian camp] and let them go too. Al-Ḥājjāj said [by way of

---

156. Preferring Ibn al-Athir's la-sabaytu nisāʿahum to al-Ṭabarī's la-subiyyat nisāʿuhum.
reaction] something similar to what he had said on the first occasion [when women were taken].

According to Hishām [b. Muḥammad al-Kalbi]—his father: Al-Walid b. Naḥīt al-Kalbi, from the Banū ʿĀmir, advanced in a squadron upon Jabalah b. Zaḥr. Al-Walid, who was a huge man, got down from his riding animal, and he and Jabalah, who was a man of middling size, engaged each other. [Al-Walid] smote [Jabalah] on the head, and he fell. His companions were defeated, and his head was brought.

According to Hishām—Abū Mikhnaf and ʿAwānah al-Kalbi: When the head of Jabalah b. Zaḥr was brought to al-Hajjāj, he carried it on two spears and then said, “O people of Syria, rejoice. This is the beginning of victory. No sedition has ever been put down without a leading Yemeni being killed in it, and this is one of their leading men.”

Then they made a sortie one day, and a Syrian came forth calling for a duel. Al-Ḥajjāj b. Jāriyah went out to him, attacked him, transfixed him, and brought him off his mount. His companions charged and saved him, he being a man from Khathʿam called Abū al-Dārdā. Al-Ḥajjāj b. Jāriyah said, “I didn’t recognize him until he fell. Had I done so, I should not have fought him; I do not want someone like him from my people to be struck down.”

ʿAbd al-Raḥmān b. ʿAwf al-Ruʿāsī, Abū Ḥumayd, went forth and called for a duel. A cousin (ibn ʿamm) of his among the Syrians went out to him, and they exchanged blows with their swords. Each of them said, “I am the champion [lit. ‘young man’] of Kilāb,” and then each said to the other, “Who are you?” When they had questioned each other, they abstained from fighting.

ʿAbdallah b. Rizām al-Hārithī went out to the squadron of al-Ḥajjāj and said, “Come out to me one by one.” A man was sent out to him, and he killed him. He did this for three days, killing a man each day. Then he arrived on the fourth day and they said, “He has come, would that God had not brought him!” He called for a duel. Al-Ḥajjāj said to al-Jarrāḥ [sc. b. ʿAbdallāh al-Ḥakami], “Go out to him,” so he went out to him. ʿAbdallāh b. Rizām, who

157. The text gives “Nukhayt,” and it can be seen from the variants that the form of this name is uncertain.
158. Preferring the variant ḏabbatihī to rāyatihī.
was a friend of his, said to him, "Woe to you, O Jarrah, whatever made you come out to me?" He said, "I have been put to the test with you." [Abdallāh] said to him, "Are you in favor of something good?" [Al-Jarrah] said, "What is that?" [Abdallāh] said, "I shall lose for you, and you [will be able to] go back to al-Ḥajjāj having done well in his eyes, and he will praise you. As for me, I shall [be able to] put up with people's talk about you concerning my defeat, out of love for your safety. I do not want someone like you from my people to be killed." [Al-Jarrah] said, "Do [that]," and attacked him; [Abdallāh] began to simulate flight, running in front of him. The Ḥārithi's uvula had been cut, and he was very thirsty; with him was a lad who had a skin of water and gave him to drink whenever he was thirsty. Al-Ḥārithi ran in front of him and al-Jarrah caught up and attacked him in earnest, wanting nothing more than to kill him. The lad shouted to him, "The man is serious about killing you." But the Ḥārithi felt compassion for him, smote him on the head with an iron bar, felled him, and said to the lad, "Sprinkle some of the water in the skin on his face and give him to drink"; the lad did so. Then [the Ḥārithi] said, "O Jarrah, you rewarded me badly. I wanted well-being for you, and you wanted to make me visit destiny." [Al-Jarrah] said, "I did not want that." He said, "Go; I have left you on account of our kinship and [for the sake of] the clan."

According to Muḥammad b. ʿUmar al-Wāqidi—Ibn Abī Sabrah—Ṣāliḥ b. Kaysān—Saʿīd al-Ḥarashi: I was in the battle line on that day when an Iraqi called Qudāmah b. al-Ḥarīsh al-Tamīmi came out and stood between the two lines and said, "O band of the Jarāmīqah of the Syrians, we call you to the Book of God and the Sunnah of His Messenger; if you refuse [to accept this], let a man come out to me." A Syrian man went out to him, and he killed him, [and more went out] until he had killed four. When al-Ḥajjāj saw that, he ordered a crier to call out, "Let no one

---

159. Not in the fighting, of course, but previously, presumably, because it had become swollen. Professor Iḥsān ʿAbbās informs me that this practice still persists in Middle Eastern village life.

160. Caskel, Ḥamharat an-nasab, register.


162. See above, n. 21.
go out to this dog”; and the people held back.

Saʿīd al-Harashi continued: I drew near to al-Ḥajjāj and said, “May God cause the amīr to prosper! You have decided that no one should go out to this dog, at a time when these people have perished according to their allotted spans. This man too has his allotted span, and I hope that it has now run its course. Give permission to my companions who have come with me that one of them may go against him.” Al-Ḥajjāj said, “This dog has turned the thing into a habit and has frightened [our] people. [But] I [nonetheless] give permission to your companions; he who wishes to stand up may do so.” Al-Ḥarashi accordingly returned to his companions and informed them [of this], and, when Qudāmah called out for a duel, one of al-Ḥarashi’s companions went out against him, only to be killed by him. That distressed Saʿīd and weighed heavily upon him, on account of what he had said to al-Ḥajjāj. Then Qudāmah called out [yet again] for a duel, and Saʿīd drew near to al-Ḥajjāj and said, “May God cause the amīr to prosper! Give me permission to go against this dog.” He said, “Are you up to it?” Saʿīd said, “Yes, I am just as you want.” Al-Ḥajjāj said, “Show me your sword,” and he gave it to him. Al-Ḥajjāj said, “I have with me a sword that is heavier than this one,” and he ordered that the sword be his and gave it to him. Then he looked at Saʿīd and said, “You have fine armor and a strong horse, [but even so] I do not know how the matter will turn out with this dog.” Saʿīd said, “I hope that God will give me victory over him.” Al-Ḥajjāj said, “Go forth with God’s blessing.”

Saʿīd said: So I went out to him and, when I drew near to him, he said, “Stop, 0 enemy of God!” and I stopped, pleased. He said, “Choose: Either you let me strike you three times [first], or I let you strike me three times and then you let me.” I said, “Let me [go first],” and he placed his chest on his saddle bow and said, “Strike.” I grasped my sword with both hands and struck [him] on the helmet as hard as I could; he did nothing, and I was displeased with both my sword and my blow. Then I decided to strike him at the base of his neck, hoping thereby either to cut right through or [at the very least] to disable his hand. I struck it and did noth-

\[1093\]

---

163. So rendering ʿasl al-ʿātiq.
ing, so displeasing both myself and those who were remote from me in the area of the camp, when what I had done reached them. The third [attempt was] similarly [unsuccessful]. Then he unsheathed a sword and said, "[Now] let me [have a go]." I let him and he struck me a blow with which he felled me. Then he dismounted from his horse, sat on my chest, pulled a dagger or knife out of his boot and placed it on my throat, intending to slay me. I said to him, "I beseech you by God, you will not acquire the nobility and renown by killing me that you will acquire by sparing me." He said, "Who are you?" I said, "Sa'id al-Ḥarashi." He said, "Woe, enemy of God! Depart, and inform your master of what you have encountered." Sa'id said: I accordingly departed, hastening, until I got to al-Ḥajjāj. He said, "What do you think?" I said, "The amir knew better."

The account returns to that of Abū Mikhnaf on the authority of Abū Yazid [al-Saksakī]: Abū al-Bakhtārī al-Ṭā'ī and Sa'id b. Jubayr used to say, "It is not given to any soul to die, save by the leave of God, at an appointed time," to the end of the verse, 164 and then they charged until they fell upon the battle line.

Abū al-Mukhāriq said: We fought them for a full hundred days, which I counted. He went on: We stopped at Dayr al-Jamājim with Ibn Mūḥammad on the morning of Tuesday, 1 Rabi' I, 83 (April 4, 702), and we were defeated on Wednesday, 14 Jumādā II (July 15, 702), 165 when the sun was at the highest point of the day. We were never bolder against them, nor they weaker against us, than on that day.

He continued: We went out to them, and they to us, on Wednesday, 14 Jumādā II, and we fought them for most of the day the best we had ever fought them. We felt safe from defeat, gaining the upper hand, when Sufyān b. al-Abraḍ al-Kalbī sallied forth with the cavalry from the [Syrian] right wing until he drew near to al-Abraḍ b. Qurrah al-Tamimi, who was in command of 'Abd al-

164. Qur'ān 3:145 = 139.
165. Ibn al-Athīr gives the same dates and correctly arrives at a total of 103 days. Ibn Aṭham [Futūḥ, vol. VII, p. 138] knows the hundred-day report and another report to the effect that the fighting lasted for four months; cf. Khalīfah [Ta'rikh, pp. 284–85], who states that the defeat took place on 14 Jumādā [sic] 82 [sic]. For further discussion, see Périer, Vie d'al-Hadjīadj ibn Yousof, p. 186n., Sayed, Revolte, pp. 220–21.
Rahmān b. Muḥammad’s left wing. Then, by God, after not much fighting, [al-Abraḍ b. Qurrah] was defeated. This was something on his part that the people disapproved of, since he was a brave man and flight was not a habit of his; they suspected that he had been granted an assurance of safety and that an agreement had been reached with him [by the Syrians] that he would be defeated with the people. When he did that, the battle lines near him were routed, and the people rode off in all directions. ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad ascended the pulpit and began to call to the people, “To me, O servants of God! I am Ibn Muḥammad!”’ Abdallāh b. Rizām al-Ḥārithi came to him and stopped under his pulpit, and ‘Abdallāh b. Dhu’āb al-Sulāmī came with his cavalry. [‘Abd al-Rahmān] stood near him and stayed put until the Syrians were close to him and their arrows began to get the better of him. At this, [‘Abd al-Rahmān] said, “O Ibn Rizām, attack these men and cavalry,” and he did so until they ran off. Then more Syrian cavalry came, together with infantry, and he said, “Attack them, O Ibn Dhu’āb,” and he did so until they ran off. [‘Abd al-Rahmān himself] stayed where he was, not leaving his pulpit, and the Syrians entered [his] camp and cried out, “God is great!”’ Abdallāh b. Yazīd b. al-Mughaffal al-Azdī—whose brother’s daughter Mulaykah was the wife of ‘Abd al-Rahmān166—climbed up to him and said, “Come down. I am afraid you will be taken captive if you do not come down. Maybe, if you leave [now], you will be able to gather together a force with which God will destroy them on another day.” ‘Abd al-Rahmān then came down, and the Iraqis left the camp in defeat and disorder. ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad went off with Ibn Ja’dah b. Hubayrah,167 accompanied by members of his family, and, when they were opposite the village of the sons of Ja’dah at al-Fallūjah,168 they summoned a ferryboat and crossed in it. Bīṣṭām b. Maṣqalāh joined them and said, “Is ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad in the boat?” but they did not


168. A locality on the Euphrates downstream from al-Anbār [EI², s.v.].
The Last Years of 'Abd al-Malik

speak to him. [Bistām] suspected that ['Abd al-Raḥmān] was among them and said (tawīl):

May a soul for which you are cautious not find refuge.

[and (mutaqārib)]: 169

Qays set the country on fire against me, until, when it blazed, he desisted.

Then he went off until he reached his house, wearing arms and riding his horse, from which he had not dismounted. His daughter came out to him, and he clasped her, and his family came out to him, weeping. He made his testament to them and said, "Do not weep. Don’t you know, if I do not leave you, how long I am likely to remain with you before I die? If I do die, then He who grants you sustenance now is alive and will not die. He will sustain you after my death, just as He sustains you in my lifetime.” Then he bade his family farewell and left al-Kūfah.

According to Abu Mikhnaf—al-Kalbi, Muḥammad b. al-Sāʾīb: When they were defeated, the sun was at its highest point in the day. He went on: I set off, straining, with my spear, sword, and shield, until I reached my family on the same day without having discarded any of my arms. Al-Ḥajjāj had said, "Leave them. Let them scatter and do not follow them,” and a crier called out, “Whoever returns will be given safe-conduct.”

After the battle, Muḥammad b. Marwān returned to al-Mawṣil and 'Abdallah b. 'Abd al-Malik to Syria, leaving Iraq to al-Ḥajjāj. He went on until he entered al-Kūfah, seated beside him Maṣqalāh b. Karib b. Raqabah al-‘Abdi, who was a khaṭīb, 170 and said, “Revile in all possible ways every man to whom we have done good; revile [each one] for ingratitude and disloyalty. Stigmatize in all possible ways everyone you know to have a defect and make him slight in his own eyes.” No one rendered [al-Ḥajjāj] the oath of allegiance but that he [first] said to him, “Do you testify that you have been in a state of unbelief?” If he acknowledged this, [al-Ḥajjāj] accepted the oath of allegiance; if not, he killed him. There

169. This verse is ascribed to al-Rabī’ b. Ziyād (see, for example, Ibn Manẓūr, *Lisān al-‘arab*, vol. XIV, p. 356).
170. See above, n. 5.
came to him a man from Khaṭḥʿam, who had kept himself apart from all [the Iraqis], on the other side of the Euphrates, and [al-Ḥajjāj] asked him what he had been up to. [The man] said, "I stayed apart, on the other side of this river, waiting to see what would happen to [the Iraqi army], until you were victorious. Then I came to you in order to render you the oath of allegiance along with the people." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Were you waiting [to see the result]? Do you testify that you are an unbeliever?" [The man] said, "What a bad man I would be—I, who have worshiped God for eighty years—if I were now to testify against myself to unbelief." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "In that case, I shall kill you." He said, "If you kill me, well, by God, there is very little life left in me anyway. I wait for death morning, noon, and night." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Behead him!" and he was beheaded. [People] have claimed that no Qurashi or Syrian or anyone of the two sides remained around [that man] but that he felt compassion for him and deplored the killing of him.171

[Al-Ḥajjāj] summoned Kumayl b. Ziyād al-Nakha’ī172 and said to him, "You are the one who retaliated by killing 'Uthmān, the Commander of the Faithful. I have [long] wanted to find a way of getting at you." [Kumayl] said, "I do not know which of us you are getting angry with: With him, when he laid himself open to retaliation, or with me, when I turned away from punishing him." Then he said, "0 you man of Thaqif, do not gnash your fangs at me, do not come down on me like a sand dune, do not bare your wolfish teeth at me! By God, there is very little life left in me anyway.173 Carry out what you have decided; the appointment [will be with] God; the killing will be followed by [divine] judgment." Al-Ḥajjāj said, "The decisive proof [will be] against you." He said, "That [will be the case only] if you are sitting in judgment." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "0 yes, you were among those who killed 'Uthmān and disavowed the Commander of the Faithful. Kill him!" and he was killed, his killer being Abū al-Jahm b.


172. See above, n. 127.

173. Literally, "all that has remained of my life is the period between the two drinkings of the ass: He drinks in the morning and dies in the evening, and he drinks in the evening and dies in the morning."
Kinānah al-Kalbī, of the Banū ʿĀmir b. ʿAwf, the cousin (ibn 'amm) of Mansūr b. Jumhūr.174 After him, somebody else was brought, and al-Ḥajjāj said, "I see a man who will not, I think, testify against himself to unbelief." [The man] said, "Do you [think you can] trick me as if I did not know myself? I am the most unbelieving person on earth. I am even more of an unbeliever than Pharaoh, the master of the stakes!"175 Al-Ḥajjāj laughed and let him go. He stayed in al-Kūfah for a month and kept the Syrians away from the houses of the Kūfans.176

In this year there took place the battle at Maskin between al-Ḥajjāj and Ibn al-Ash'ath, after [the latter] had been put to flight from Dayr al-Jamājim.

The Cause of the Battle [of Maskin], with a Description of It

According to Hishām [b. Muḥammad al-Kalbī]—Abū Mikhnaf—Abū Yazīd al-Saksakī: Muḥammad b. Sa'd b. Abī Waqqāṣ went off after the battle of [Dayr] al-Jamājim until he stopped at al-Madā'in; there he was joined by a great many people. [At about the same time] 'Ubaydallāh b. Abd al-Rahmān b. Samūrah b. Ḥabīb b. 'Abd Shams al-Qurashi went off to al-Baṣra, in which was Ayyūb b. al-Ḥakam b. Abī 'Aqīl,177 the cousin of al-Ḥajjāj, and took it. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad [thereupon] went to al-Baṣra, while ['Ubaydallāh] was there; the people rallied to him, and he stopped there. At this, 'Ubaydallāh went to Ibn Muḥammad b. al-Ash'ath and said to him, "It was not my intention to be separate from you; I took [the city] for you." Al-Ḥajjāj [now] set forth and started with al-Madā'in. He stopped opposite it for five [nights], during which time he readied [his] men in ferryboats. When it reached Muḥammad b. Sa'd that they had crossed to them, [he

174. Who rose to prominence as a general at the very end of the Umayyad period (Crone, Slaves on Horses, p. 158).
175. This being a form of reference to Pharaoh occurring in the Qur'ān [89:10 = 9 and 38:12 = 11]; for some discussion of it, see EP, s.v. Fir'awn.
176. 'Azala ahl al-Sha'ām 'an buyūt ahl al-Kūfa. Ibn al-Athir, on the other hand, tells us just the opposite: anzala ahl al-Sha'ām buyūt ahl al-Kūfa, and he goes on to say: anzalahum al-Ḥajjājī fīhā ma'a ahlīhā, wa-huwa awwal man anzala al-jund flī buyūt ghayrīhim... .
177. For 'Ubaydallāh see Caskel, Ġamharat an-nasab, register. On Ayyūb see above, n. 82.
The Events of the Year 83

and all [who were with him] set off and joined Ibn al-Ash'ath. Al-Hājjāj advanced toward him, and the people [at al-Baṣrah] went out with [‘Abd al-Rahmān] to Maskin178 on [the] Dujayl [river]. [There] the Kūfans and the fugitive elements from the peripheral areas came to him. The people reproved each other for having taken to flight, and most of them rendered an oath of allegiance to Bístām b. Maṣqalāh to fight to the death. ‘Abd al-Rahmān dug in around his companions and protected one flank by flooding, so making fighting [possible] in [only] one direction; he was also joined by Khālid b. Jarīr b. ‘Abdallāh al-Qasri,179 who came from Khurasan with people from the Kūfan contingent [there]. They fought most furiously for fifteen nights in Sha‘bān (September), until Ziyād b. Ghunaym al-Qayni, who was in charge of al-Hājjāj’s strong-points, was killed; that shook [al-Hājjāj] and his companions very considerably.

According to Abū Mikhnaf—Abū Jahḍam al-Azdi: Al-Hājjāj stayed awake all night, going about among us and saying to us, “You are people of obedience, and they are people of disobedience; you are striving after God’s pleasure, while they are striving after His displeasure. God’s wont with you concerning them is good. You will never fight them gallantly on any battlefield or show endurance against them but that God will requite you with victory against them and triumph over them. So go against them in the morning aggressively, earnestly. I do not doubt victory, God willing.”

[Abū Jahḍam] continued: we went against them in the morning, having made our dispositions shortly before daybreak. We were afoot earlier than they were, and we fought them the hardest we had ever fought them. ‘Abd al-Malik b. al-Muhallab came to us on an armored horse180 at a time when the cavalry of Sufyān b. al-

178. This is not the better-known Maskin [watered by the Dujayl canal] to the north of what would later be the city of Baghdad [Le Strange, Lands of the Eastern Caliphate, map II and p. 51], but a more obscure Maskin somewhere on or near the Dujayl (Kārūn) river [see Sayed, Revolte, p. 225, for further details; Yaqūt, Muṣjam, vol. IV, p. 531, seems himself to be mistaken when he says, “al-Ḥāzimi mentioned that Maskin is also [a place] at the Dujayl of al-Ahwāz where al-Hajjaj’s battle with Ibn al-Ash’ath took place, and that is a mistake on his part”].

179. This appears to be the one and only reference to a person of this name [cf. Crone, Slaves on Horses, p. 114]; Wellhausen’s reference to this name [Kingdom, p. 251] should be changed to Khālid b. ‘Abd Allāh al-Qasri.

180. Reading mujaffīn where the text has muḥaffīf. 
Abrad was without armor. Al-Ḥajjāj said to him, “Join these oddments to your men, O ‘Abd al-Malik; I may be making an attack.” He did so, and the Iraqis were attacked from every side and put to flight. Abū al-Bakhtārī al-Ṭā‘ī and ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. Abī Laylā were killed. Before being killed, they said, “Flight is always odious to us”; then they were struck down.

[Abū Jahdām] continued: Bīṣṭām b. Maṣqalah al-Shaybānī went with four thousand of the most steadfast [people] from the two miṣrs [that is, al-Baṣrāh and al-Kūfah]; they broke the sheaths of their swords. Ibn Maṣqalah said to them, “If, in fleeing from death, we might escape it, we would flee; but we know that it will come upon us soon, and where can one take oneself away from what is inevitable? O you people, you are manifesting what is right, so fight for what is right. By God, even if you were not in the right, death with honor would [still] be better than life in a state of abasement.” He and his companions then fought fiercely and put the Syrians to flight several times. Eventually al-Ḥajjāj said, “Bring in the archers: No one else can fight them.” When the archers came and the [Syrians] surrounded them on every side, all but a few of them were killed. Bukayr b. Rabi‘ah b. Tharwān al-Ḍabbī was taken captive and was brought to al-Ḥajjāj, who killed him.

According to Abū Mikhnaf—Abū al-Jahdām: I brought a captive known to al-Ḥajjāj for his bravery. Al-Ḥajjāj said, “O Syrians, it is part of God’s favor to you that this young man has brought the horseman of the Iraqis as a captive. Behead him!” And he killed him.

[Abū al-Jahdām] continued: Ibn al-Ashʿath and those who had been put to flight with him went in the direction of Sijistān. Al-Ḥajjāj sent after him ‘Umarah b. Tamīm al-Lakhmī, together with his son Muḥammad b. al-Ḥajjāj, with ‘Umarah as the amīr over the people. ‘Umarah b. Tamīm went to ‘Abd al-Raḥmān and caught up with him at al-Sūs.182 ['Umarah] fought him for one hour in the daytime; then he and his companions were defeated and went off until they reached Sābūr.183 ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b.

---

181. Omitting “Abī,” as proposed in the Addenda et Emendanda.
183. I.e., Shāpūr in Fārs (ibid., p. 262).
Muhammad was [in the meantime] joined by the Kurds, together with the routed troops who were with him. 'Umarah b. Tamīm next fought them fiercely in the narrow pass, until he and many of his companions were wounded; then they were defeated and left the mountain road to 'Abd al-Rahmān, who went on until he passed through Kirmān.

Al-Wāqidi said: The battle of al-Zāwiyyah at al-Baṣrah was in Muḥarram 83 (February 702).

[The Breakup of Ibn al-Ash'ath's Defeated Army]

According to Abū Mikhnaf—Sayf b. Bishr al-'Ijli—al-Munakhkhal b. Ḥābis al-'Abdi: When 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad entered Kirmān, he was met by 'Amr b. Laqīt al-'Abdi, who was his governor over it, [this 'Amr] prepared hospitality for him, and he stopped. A shaykh of 'Abd al-Qays called Ma'qil then said to him, "By God, it has reached us concerning you, O Ibn al-Ash'ath, that you were a coward." 'Abd al-Rahmān said, "By God, I was not a coward. By God, I have advanced with infantry upon infantry, and I have wrapped up cavalry with cavalry; I have fought both horseman and infantryman, and I have not been defeated. I have not left the battlefield to the enemy at any time until I found no place in which to fight and saw no one to fight along with me; rather, [far from being a coward,] I sought a premature sovereignty." Then he went with those who were with him until he entered the desert of Kirmān.

According to Abū Mikhnaf—Hishām b. Ayyūb b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī 'Aqīl: When Ibn Muḥammad went into the desert of Kirmān, followed by the Syrians, one of the Syrians entered a residence in the desert, and there he found, inscribed by one of the Kūfans, some of the poetry of Abū Jīlād al-Yashkūrī, [from] a long ode [of his] (wāfir).185

O woe and all [-embracing] sorrow,
what anguish [there is] at what we have encountered!

---

184. So rendering zāwaltu mulkan mu‘ajjalun.
We have left both the religion and this world,
and we have abandoned [our] wives and children.
We were not religious people,
that we might endure tribulation when tested,
Nor were we people of this world,
able to protect it, even though we did not
aspire to religion.
We have left our homes to the rabble of 'Akk
and [to] the indigenous villagers and the Ash'aris.186

Then Ibn Muḥammad went on until he reached Zaranj, the
[chief] city of Sijistān, in which was a man from the Banū Tamim
whom he had put in charge of it, namely, 'Abdallāh b. 'Āmir al-
Na'ār187 from the Banū Mujashi' b. Dārim. When 'Abd al-
Raḥmān b. Muḥammad came to him in defeat, he shut the gate of
the city in his face and prevented him from entering it. 'Abd al-
Raḥmān stayed put for some days in the hope of gaining access to
it, but, when he saw that he would not achieve this, he went off to
Bust, in charge of which he had appointed a man from Bakr b.
Wā'il called 'Iyāḍ b. Himyān Abū Hishām b. 'Iyāḍ al-Sadūsī.188
[This 'Iyāḍ] received him and invited him to stop [at Bust], which
he accordingly did; ['Iyāḍ] thereupon waited until 'Abd al-
Raḥmān's companions were off guard and had strayed away from
him, and then pounced upon him and put him in bonds, desiring
thereby to be secure vis-à-vis al-Ḥajjāj and to achieve [good] stand-
ing in his eyes.

News of 'Abd al-Raḥmān's arrival had in the meantime reached
the Zunbil, who went to meet him. When 'Iyāḍ took ['Abd al-
Raḥmān], the Zunbil moved on Bust189 and invested it, sending
[word] to the Bakri [as follows]: “By God, if you harm as much as a
hair of his head,190 I shall not leave the battlefield until I bring you

186. As Wellhausen points out [Kingdom, p. 249]. “‘Akk and Ash’ar as pars pro
toto... seems to be an insulting phrase to dub [the Syrian troops] barbarians.”
187. Reading “al-Na’ār” here and below, with the Naqā‘id [p. 751, line 2] and
Sayyed [Revolte, pp. 328, 341: an-Na’ār [sic]]; na’ār means “clamorous,” while the
form ba’ār appears to be unattested.
188. Ibn al-Athir names him as 'Iyāḍ b. Himyān b. Hishām, while al-Ya‘qūbī
(Ta’rīkh, vol. II, p. 333) knows him as 'Iyāḍ b. 'Amr [cf. above, n. 12].
189. Al-Ṭabarī's text is confused at this point; I have drawn inspiration from Ibn
al-Athir.
190. Literally, “If you hurt him with what casts a mote in his eye, or harm him
in any way, or deprive him of a single hair.”
down and kill you and all who are with you; I shall take your offspring captive and divide all you own among the troops." The Bakri sent [word] to him [as follows]: "Give us a safe-conduct for ourselves and for what we own, and we shall hand him over to you safe and sound, together with what he owns in its entirety." [The Zunbil] made peace with them on [that basis] and gave them a safe-conduct, and they in turn opened the gate for Ibn al-Ash'ath and set him free. He came to the Zunbil and said to him, "This [man] was my governor over this city, and I trusted him and was satisfied with him when I appointed him, he, however, acted treacherously toward me and perpetrated against me what you have seen, so let me kill him." [The Zunbil] said, "I have given him a safe-conduct and dislike [the idea of] acting treacherously toward him." ['Abd al-Rahmân] said, "In that case, let me push him and punch him in the chest and neck and demean him." [The Zunbil] agreed to this, and 'Abd al-Rahmân b. Muḥammad did so.191

['Abd al-Rahmân] then went off with the Zunbil until they entered the latter's territory, [where] the Zunbil lodged him and did him honor. With ['Abd al-Rahmân] were numerous routed troops. There were [in addition] large numbers of [other] routed troops, together with companions of 'Abd al-Rahmân and those chiefs and leaders who had stood with Ibn al-Ash’ath against al-Hajjâj in every battlefield, did not hope for a safe-conduct, did not accept al-Hajjâj’s safe-conduct192 when it was first offered,193 and strove wholeheartedly against him. [These people] set off after Ibn al-Ash’ath, in search of him, until they fetched up in194 Sijistân; they, together with those of the [Arabs] of Sijistân and of the indigenous inhabitants195 who followed them, numbered about sixty thousand. They went against 'Abdallâh b. 'Āmir al-Na‘âr and besieged him; they also wrote to 'Abd al-Rahmân, who was [still] with the Zunbil, informing him of their advance, their

---

193. The text reads fī awwali marrah, which seems otiose; it is omitted by Ibn al-Athîr.
194. Ḥattâ saqṭû bi- in al-Ṭabari, Ibn al-Athîr has ja-balaghû.
195. So rendering ahl Sîstân wa-ahl al-balad, following Bosworth (Sîstân, p. 61), wa-ahl al-balad is omitted by Ibn al-Athîr.
number, and their being together. The person who led them in ritual prayer was 'Abd al-Rahmān b. al-'Abbās b. Rabī‘ah b. al-Hārith b. ‘Abd al-Muṭṭalib. They [then] wrote [again] to [Ibn al-Ash’ath]: “Come to us. Perhaps we shall go to Khurāsan. Many [Iraqi] troops are there, and they may swear allegiance to us in fighting the Syrians. It is a broad and spacious land, containing men and fortresses.” At this, ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad and those who were with him went forth to them, and they besieged ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Amir al-Na‘ār until they dislodged him; on ‘Abd al-Rahmān’s orders, he was beaten, tortured, and imprisoned.

[Next,] ‘Umārah b. Tamīm advanced toward them with [an army of] Syrians, and the companions of ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad said to ‘Abd al-Rahmān, “Take us out of Sijistān, let us leave it to [‘Umārah] and betake ourselves to Khurāsan.” ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad said, “Over Khurāsan is Yazid b. al-Muhallab, who is a resolute and bold young man who is not going to let his authority pass to you. If you were to enter [Khurāsan], you would find him hastening toward you. Nor will the Syrians leave off pursuing you. I dislike [the idea of] the Khurāsānis and the Syrians combining against you, and I fear that you will not achieve what you seek.” They said, “The people of Khurāsan are from us, and we hope that, if we were to enter it, those of them who would follow us would outnumber those who would fight us. It is a very extensive land, in which we may direct ourselves wherever we wish and remain until God destroys al-Hajjāj and ‘Abd al-Malik, or [until] we decide otherwise.” ‘Abd al-Rahmān said to them, “Go [relying on] [the mention of] the name of God,” and they went off until they reached Herat. [Next, those who remained with ‘Abd al-Rahmān were taken unawares when] ‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Samurah al-Qurashi departed from [‘Abd al-Rahmān’s] camp with two thousand [men] and left him, taking a road different from the road [taken by those who had left for Herat]. On the following morning, Ibn Muḥammad

196. So understanding minnā; cf. Ibn al-Athīr’s reference to man bihā min ‘ashā‘irihim.
197. I.e., Iraqis; see the preceding note.
198. Reading the variant wa-, rather than aw.
199. So understanding nara min ra‘yinā [or mā ra‘yunā].
stood up among [those who remained with him], praised God, and said, “To continue: I have witnessed you in these battlefields, and among them there has been no place of witnessing but that in it I have steeled myself for you[r sakes] until no one of you has remained in it. When I saw that you would neither fight nor show fortitude in adversity, I came to a refuge and place of safety. Once I was there, there came to me your letters to the effect that I should come to you and that we were as one and would perhaps fight our enemy. So I came to you. Then you were of the opinion that I should go to Khurasan, and you claimed that you were united with me and that you would not separate from me. Now this [man] 'Ubaydallâh b. 'Abd al-Rahmân has done what you have seen, and today I have had enough of you. Do as you see fit. As for me, I am going off to the friend from whom I came to you. Those of you who want to follow me may do so, and those who do not wish to do that may go wherever they want, seeking protection from God.”

One group detached itself from them, and another group went off with ['Abd al-Rahmân b. Muḥammad], but the bulk of the army stayed put. When 'Abd al-Rahmân [b. Muḥammad] had departed, they rallied to 'Abd al-Rahmân b. al-'Abbâs and gave the oath of allegiance to him. Ibn Muḥammad went to the Zunbil, and they went to Khurasan, ending up in Herat, where they encountered al-Ruqād al-Azîdî—from [the clan of] al-‘Atîk—and killed him; [at this,] Yazid b. al-Muhallab moved against them.

As for 'Ali b. Muḥammad al-Madâ’ini, he mentioned on the authority of al-Muf‘âdî b. Muḥammad that Ibn al-Ash’âth, when he had been defeated at Maskin, went to Kâbul and that 'Ubaydallâh b. 'Abd al-Rahmân b. Samurah came to Herat and blamed and stigmatized Ibn al-Ash’âth for his flight. 'Abd al-Rahmân b. 'Abbâs [then] came to Sîjistân, was joined by Ibn al-Ash’âth’s routed forces, proceeded to Khurasan with a body [of men] put at twenty thousand, and stopped at Herat; [there] they encountered al-Ruqâd b. 'Ubayd201 al-‘Atâkî and killed him. With 'Abd al-Rahmân [b. 'Abbâs] from [the tribe of] 'Abd al-Qays was 'Abd al-Rahmân b. al-Mundhir b. al-Jârûd,202 to whom Yazid b. al-

---

202. On his father, see above, n. 54.
Muhallab sent [the following message]: "You could have a lot of leeway in the territory, and [could be dealing with] someone a lot less sharp and strong than I. Move to a territory in which I have no authority, for I do not like [the idea of] fighting you. If you want me to support you with the wherewithal for your journeying, I shall help you." [‘Abd al-Rahmân b. al-Mundhir] responded to him: "We have not stopped in this territory in order to wage war, nor in order to settle; all we want to do is rest up and then move on, God willing. We have no need of what you have proposed." Yazid’s messenger went off [bearing this message] to [Yazid].

Then ['Abd al-Rahmân b. ‘Abbâs] al-Hâshimi started levying taxes. [This] reached Yazid, who said, "He who wants to rest and then pass on does not collect tax (kharâj)." He sent out al-Mufad-dal [b. al-Muhallab] over an advance party of four thousand — also put at six thousand — and then sent four thousand [men] after him. Yazid weighed himself in his armor, which came to four hundred rîls,203 and said, "I think that I am too heavy to fight. What horse could carry me?" Then he called for his horse al-Kâmîl,204 deputed over Marw his maternal uncle, Juday’ b. Yazid,205 and set forth for Marw al-Rûdh, where he visited the tomb of his father, stayed there for three days, and gave one hundred dirhams to each of those who were with him. Then he went to Herat and sent [word] to the Hâshimi [as follows]: "You have rested, fattened yourself, and collected taxes. You may keep the taxes you have collected. If you want more, we shall give you more. But leave, by God. I do not want to fight you."

[Al-Madânî] said: ('Abd al-Rahmân b. ‘Abbâs al-Hâshimi, now) accompanied by ‘Ubayd Allâh b. ‘Abd al-Rahmân b. Samurah, insisted on fighting. Al-Hâshimi clandestinely subverted the army of Yazid, making them promises and calling them to himself. One of them informed Yazid, who said, "This is no longer a matter of mere reproof: I’ll have him for lunch before he has me for dinner," and he went against him. In due course, the two armies drew near to each other and prepared for battle. A chair

203. Assuming an Umayyad rîl [or ratîl] of 400 g. [see EP, s.v. Makâyil and Mawâżin], it weighed approximately 80 lbs.
204. ‘The Perfect.’
205. Possibly Juday’ b. Sa’îd is meant [see al-Ṭabarî’s text, ser. ii, p. 856, and Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, register].
was set up for Yazid, and he sat upon it; he put his brother al-Mufaḍḍal in command of the fighting. There advanced one of the companions of al-Hāshimi, called Khulayd ‘Aynayn\(^{206}\) from [the tribe of] ‘Abd al-Qays, mounted on his horse, and he raised his voice and said (\(\text{tawīl}\)):

She\(^{207}\) made a call, O Yazid b. al-Muhallab, a grief-stricken call; then her eyes filled with tears. If the caller were to make the call heard, [Yazid] would respond to it with compact spears and with swords, the scabbards of which would be cast aside. The \(\text{ashrāf}\) of Iraq have fled and have left hornless cattle there to meet their fate.

He wanted [thereby] to incite Yazid. Yazid remained silent for a long time, until the people thought that the poetry had moved him. Then he said to a man, “Call out and let them hear….\(^{208}\) They imposed that upon them, despite its difficulty, and Khulayd said (\(\text{tawīl}\)):

Bad is the one whose name is called and extolled; the virgins and non-virgins of Iraq call to him. When Yazid is called to a grievous battle day involving the defense of those whom he is honor-bound to defend, sexual organs are protected only by their real protectors. I think that he will soon be committed, just as he used to commit others. No free-born women will weep for him, only hired wailing women, the spotted and the black (that is, the slaves) among them will be weeping over him.

Yazid said to al-Mufaḍḍal, “Take your cavalry forward,” and he did so and they rushed upon one another. After not much fighting

\(^{206}\) \(\text{YYaqūt}, \text{Mu’jam}, \text{vol. III, p. 755,}\) explains that the ‘Aynayn in question was a well or watering place in al-Bahrayn, cf. al-Mubarrad, \(\text{Kāmil, p. 498 and n. i.}\).

\(^{207}\) Judging by the verses that follow these, “she” would appear to be the Arab women of Iraq.

\(^{208}\) It looks as if some of the text has been lost here.
between them, the people separated from 'Abd al-Rahmān, and he held out, together with a group of those who were most steadfast and the 'Abdis. Sa'd b. Najd al-Qurduṣi209 charged Ḥulays al-Shaybānī, who was [positioned] in front of 'Abd al-Rahmān, and Ḥulays speared him and unseated him from his horse; his companions protected him, and then [Yazīd's] people outnumbered ['Abd al-Rahmān's, who] were put to flight. Yazīd ordered [his men] to desist from following them; they took what was in their camp, and they took [some] of them captive. Yazīd put 'Aṭā' b. Abī al-Sā'īb in charge of the camp and instructed him to collect together what was in it. They came across thirteen women, whom they brought to Yazīd; he made them over to Murrah b. 'Aṭā' b. Abī al-Sā'īb, who transported them [first] to al-Ṭabasayn210 and then[ce] to Iraq. Yazīd said to Sa'd b. Najd, "Who speared you?" and [Sa'd] replied, "Ḥulays al-Shaybānī, and I, by God, as a foot soldier am stronger than he is as a cavalryman." [This] reached Ḥulays, who said, "He lies, by God! I am stronger than he is, both as a cavalryman and as a foot soldier."


---

209. Caskel, Ġamharat an-nasab, register.
210. Two towns, each called Ṭabas, in Quhistan (see Le Strange, Lands of the Eastern Caliphate, pp. 359ff.).
211. Possibly 'Abd al-Rahmān b. al-Mundhir b. al-Jārud [Bishr] is meant.
212. This identification is striking, since the Āl Abī 'Aqīl was the family of al-Hajjāj; it is omitted by Ibn al-Athīr.
213. On these prisoners, see Sayed, Revolte, pp. 239-41.
214. I.e., a first cousin of Yazīd b. al-Muhallab's.
The Events of the Year 83

Rahmān b. Samurah, and Yazid took him and imprisoned him.

According to Hishām [b. Muḥammad al-Kalbī]—al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad al-Ḥaḍramī—Ḥafṣ b. Ḫumār b. 'Umar b. Qabışah—a man from the Banū Ḥanīfah called Jābir b. Ḫumār: Yazid b. al-Muhallab detained 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ṭaḥāwī with him and kept him safe; [this] Talḥī had sworn an oath that he would never see Yazid b. al-Muhallab on any occasion without going to him to kiss his hand by way of thanks for what he had done.

[Hishām also] said: Muḥammad b. Sa'd b. Abī Waqqāṣ said to Yazīd, "I ask you [to free me] in return for my father's invocation for your father," and he let him go;215 there is rather a long story behind Muḥammad b. Sa'd's words to Yazīd.216

According to Hishām—Abū Mikhnaf—Hishām b. Ayyūb b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Abī Ḵaqīl b. al-Thaqafī: Yazid b. al-Muhallab sent the rest of the prisoners to al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf. [First,] 'Umar b. Muṣā b. 'Ubaydallāh b. Ma'mar (was brought forward)217 and [al-Ḥajjāj] said, "You are the police chief of 'Udayy al-Rahmān."218 He said, "May God cause the amīr to prosper! It was a sedition that engulfed both the righteous and the unrighteous, and we entered into it. God has [now] given you power over us. If you forgive, then that will be by virtue of your moderation219 and graciousness; if you punish, you will punish sinning wrong-doers." Al-Ḥajjāj said, "As for your words 'that engulfed both the righteous and the unrighteous,' you have lied; it engulfed the unrighteous, while the righteous were preserved from it. As for your acknowledgment of your sin, perhaps it will benefit you," and he was removed; people entertained hopes for his well-being until al-Hilqām b. Nu'aym was brought forward and [al-Ḥajjāj] said to him, "Tell me what you hoped for in following 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad. Did you hope that he would become caliph?" He said, "Yes, I did hope that, and it was my aspiration that he would cause me to occupy a position the like of yours vis-à-vis 'Abd al-Malik."

216. Sa'd made the invocation after al-Muhallab had distinguished himself on al-Ḫakam b. 'Amr al-Ghifārī's expedition to Khurasan in the late 40s (660s) (see Hinds, Early Islamic Family, pars. 24–25).
217. Inserting something like fa-quddima before bi-'Umar, the Addenda et Emendanda suggest fa-lammā qadīmū 'alayhi da'a.
218. See above, n. 95.
219. So rendering bilm here and in what follows; see EI², s.v.
[Hishām] continued: Al-Ḥajjāj became angry and said, “Behead him!” and he was killed.

[Al-Ḥajjāj] continued: He looked at ‘Umar b. Mūsā220 b. ‘Ubaydallāh b. Mā’mar, who had been set away from him to one side, and said, “Behead him!”; and the rest of them were [all] killed. He had [earlier] given a safe-conduct to ‘Amr b. Abi Qurrah al-Kindī of the clan of Ḥujr,221 who was a sharīf from an old family. He said to him, “O ‘Amr, you used to tell me of and relate to me your dislike of Ibn al-Ash’atḥ and of al-Ash’atḥ before him. Then you followed ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Ash’atḥ. By God, there [was] not in you [any] dislike of following them; I don’t believe a word you say.”222

[Al-Ḥajjāj] continued: When al-Ḥajjāj had defeated the people at [Dayr al-Jamājim], his crier had called out, “Whoever reaches Qutaybah b. Muslim at al-Rayy will be given a safe-conduct.”223 Many people reached Qutaybah, among them ‘Amr al-Sha’bi. Al-Ḥajjāj remembered al-Sha’bī one day and said, “Where is he, and what has he been doing?” Yazid b. Abī Muslim224 said to him, “It has come to my attention, O amīr, that he has reached Qutaybah b. Muslim at al-Rayy.” [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, “I shall send [word] to [Qutaybah], let [al-Sha’bī] be brought to us,” and he wrote to Qutaybah: “To continue: Send al-Sha’bī to me when you read this letter of mine. Peace be upon you.” [Al-Sha’bī] was sent to him.

According to Abū Mikhnaf—al-Sari b. Ismā’īl—al-Sha’bī: I was a friend of Ibn Abī Muslim’s. When I was brought to al-Ḥajjāj, I met Ibn Abī Muslim and said to him, “Advise me.” He said, “I don’t know how to advise you except [to say] that you should excuse yourself as much as you can”; and I was similarly advised by [other] counselors and brethren. When I entered into his presence, [however,] I adopted a view different from theirs. I saluted him as amīr and then said, “O amīr, people have told me to excuse myself to you, aducing other than what God knows to be the truth. By God, in this situation I shall not say other than what

---

220. The text wrongly gives “Mūsā b. ‘Umar.”
221. See Caskel, Ḟamharat an-nasab, register, s.v. ‘Amr b. Salama.
222. Ibn al-Athīr makes it clear that al-Ḥajjāj killed him.
223. So rendering fa-huwa amānubu [lit. “he [sc. Qutaybah] will be his safe-conduct”].
The Events of the Year 83

is true. By God, we have set up a chief against you,225 have urged [people to oppose you], and have struggled against you as hard as we could, without falling short. We were neither strong and sinful, nor pious and innocent. God gave you victory over us. If you act violently, then that is by reason of our sins and the measures we took; if you forgive us, that will be by reason of your moderation and after clear proof you possess against us.’ Al-Ḥajjāj said to him, ‘By God, you are dearer to me in respect of what you say than one who enters into our presence with his sword dripping with our blood and then says, ‘I did nothing and witnessed nothing.’ You are safe with us, O Sha’bi. Depart.’

[Al-Sha’bi] said: So I departed. When I had walked a little way, he said, ‘Come here, O Sha’bi.’

[Al-Sha’bi] said: At that my heart sank. Then I remembered his words ‘You are safe, O Sha’bi,’ and I felt tranquil. He said, ‘How did you find the people, O Sha’bi, after me?’

[Al-Sha’bi] said: He had [earlier] treated me with honor,226 and I said, ‘May God cause the amir to prosper. After you, by God, I had no kohl but sleeplessness;227 I found my place of habitation difficult, and I was in a state of unending fear; I lost upright brethren, and I found no [adequate] substitute for the amir.’ He said, ‘Depart, O Sha’bi,’’ and I departed.

According to Abu Mikhaṣaf—Khālid b. Qatan al-Ḥārithi: Al-Ḥajjāj was brought al-‘Aṣha—[that is,] A’ṣha Hamdān228—and said to him, ‘Well now, O enemy of God, recite to me your words ‘bayna al-asḥajj (wa-)bayna Qays’:229 Deliver your verse.’ He said, ‘I would rather recite what I said regarding you.’ [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, ‘Very well, recite that to me,’’ and he recited to him {tawīl}:230

God insisted on bringing His light to fulfillment and on extinguishing the light of evildoers, Making the people of truth victorious in every

225. So rendering qad sawwadnā ‘alayka.
227. So rendering qad iktalaaltu ba’daka’l-sahar.
228. See above, n. 13.
229. See below, p. 62 and n. 237.
The Last Years of 'Abd al-Malik

battlefield;
the sword blow will straighten the inclining
neck of the one who was a proud king,

[II14] And bring down abasement on Iraq and its people,
because of their breaking of the certain and
firm compact,

[Because of] their innovation and their big words,
which do not ascend to God,
And [because of] their breaking of an oath of allegiance:
They make [such an oath] today and break it tomorrow.
Their Lord has filled their hearts with cowardice,
and they only approach people as if threatened.
They are bereft of veracity and of fortitude in adversity;
they are full of boasting and bravado.
How do you think God disunited them
and scattered them far and wide?
Their dead are the dead of waywardness and sedition,
while their living have become abased and pursued.
When we advanced on Ibn Yusuf in the early morning
and the two armies flashed and thundered,

[II15] We crossed toward him, over the two trenches;
we just crossed and reached the death that was waiting.
Al-Ḥajjāj confronted our lines,
without having given warning,
With a line which was as if it had lightning in its ranks,
when its helmets shone and gleamed.
We moved toward it in lines which were like
the mountains of Sharawrā,231 if they could
be brought to move.
Al-Ḥajjāj forthwith drew his sword
against us, and our army fled and broke up.
Al-Ḥajjāj never fights but that you see him
well supported [i.e., by God] and provided for,
accustomed to victories.
Ibn 'Abbās232 is in a state of indecision,
which we liken to a black portion of the night:
They neither pointed a spear at him nor unsheathed;

231. To the east of Tabūk (Yāqūt, Mu'jam, vol. III, p. 282).
232. I.e., 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. al-'Abbās al-Ḥāshimi, as Ibn al-Athir points out.
The Events of the Year 83

surely the coward often encountered [a foe] and unsheathed?
The cavalry of Sufyān233 wheeled round against us with its horsemen, their lances broken (i.e., from much use).
Sufyān led them, and it was as if his standard, from [much] piercing, was a red cloth stiff with dye.
Around him were mature men and beardless youths from Quḍā‘ah, furious heroes in situations where the coward would turn aside.
When he said, “Attack!” they charged as one, and the spear points were brought to their drinking places
By the troops and cavalry of the Commander of the Faithful, and his authority became mighty and supported.
May the Commander of the Faithful be given joy by his victory over a community [of people] who were oppressors and enviers!
They leapt up complaining of oppression from their amirs, while it was they who were the most oppressive and obdurate of the oppressors.
We have found the Banū Marwān to be the best imāms, and the worthiest of these people in moderation and the exercise of authority,
And the best of Quraysh by way of origin, and the noblest of them, except for the Prophet Muḥammad.
When we reflect on the consequences of his rule, we find the Commander of the Faithful to have been directed aright.
People who have openly contended with God will be overcome,234

234. Al-Ṭabarī has sa-yughlabu qawmum, while Ibn al-Athir gives sa-yaghlibu qawmus.
The Last Years of 'Abd al-Malik

if they try to deceive Him, He [proves to be] stronger and more crafty.
Theys does God mislead him whose heart is sick and him who espouses hypocrisy and blasphemes.
They have left families and property behind them, and fair virgins clad in gowns,
Who call to them, shedding tears on their account, and allowing those tears, together with antimony, to fall on their cheeks.
If you do not offer them compassion, they will become captives and the[ir] menfolk slaves.
Will you perpetrate the braking of compacts, disobedience, perfidy, and abasement?
May God despise and make distant those who are despicable!

Muḥammad's chick\(^{235}\) has brought ill luck upon the two \(mīṣr\)s [of al-Baṣrah and al-Kūfah]—justly so—and he did not encounter anything more propitious from the bird of omen,

\[1118\] Just as God brought ill luck upon al-Nujayr\(^{236}\) and its people, by reason of a grandfather of his who was [even] more wretched and troublesome.

The Syrians said, "He has done well, may God cause the amīr to prosper!" Al-Ḥajjāj said, "He has not done well. You do not know what he meant by it." Then he said, "O enemy of God, we do not praise you for these words. You only said [what you did] out of sorrow that he was not victorious and by way of incitement of your companions against us. It is not about this that we have asked you. Deliver to us your words \(kāmil\):

'Between the man with the scarred face and Qays is a proud and lofty [glory].''\(^{237}\)

---

236. The castle in Ḥadramawt where 'Abd al-Raḥmān's grandfather al-Asḥ'ath finally surrendered after staging a revolt following the death of the Prophet [see \(E1\), s.v. al-Asḥ'ath].
He did so, and, when he said (that is, reached the words) “Say, ‘bravo’ for his father and for the son,” al-Hajjāj said, “No, by God, you won’t say ‘bravo’ after this for anyone ever again”; and he sent him forward, and he was beheaded.

Regarding the matter of the prisoners taken by Yazid b. al-Muhallab and sent by him to al-Hajjāj, and regarding, too, the matter of Ibn al-Ash’ath’s troops routed on the battle day of Maskin, there is information other than that mentioned by Abū Mikhnaf on the authority of his sources. It is mentioned on their authority in that connection that, when Ibn al-Ash’ath was defeated, these [troops] went with the rest of the routed troops to al-Rayy, which had been taken by ‘Umar b. Abī al-Ṣalt b. Kanārā, a mawlā of the Banū Naṣr b. Mu‘āwiyah, who was one of the finest of horsemen, and they joined him. Then Qutaybah b. Muslim arrived in al-Rayy on behalf of al-Hajjāj, who had appointed him over it. The people whom I have mentioned as being sent by Yazid b. al-Muhallab to al-Hajjāj in bonds, and the rest of the routed troops of Ibn al-Ash’ath who had gone to al-Rayy, said to ‘Umar b. Abī al-Ṣalt, “We put you in command of us; with us you will wage war on Qutaybah.” ‘Umar consulted his father, Abū al-Ṣalt, and his father said to him, “By God, my son, if these people will go under your standard, I do not care if you are killed tomorrow,” and he tied his standard. Then [‘Umar] went forth and was defeated together with his companions. They fled to Sijistān, where the routed troops gathered, and wrote to ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad, who was with the Zunbil. Then there happened to them with Yazid b. al-Muhallab what I have mentioned.

Abū ‘Ubaydah [Ma’mar b. al-Muthannā]239 mentioned: When Yazid wanted to send the captives to al-Hajjāj, his brother Habib said to him, “How do you regard the Yamanīyyah, given that you
have sent Ibn Ṭalḥah?" Yazid said, "He is al-Ḥajjāj and he should not be thwarted." [Ḥabīb] said, "Habituate yourself to [the idea of] being dismissed, and do not send him; we do owe him a favor." [Yazid] said, "How so?" [Ḥabīb] said, "Al-Muhallab was dunned for two hundred thousand [dirhams] in the congregational mosque, and Ṭalḥāh paid them for him." So [Yazid] set Ibn Ṭalḥah free and sent the remaining [prisoners to al-Ḥajjāj]; al-Farazdaq said [kāmil]:

Ibn Ṭalḥah found the best grouping on the day when
his people encountered Qaḥṭān on the battle day of Herat.  

It has been said that al-Ḥajjāj, when he was brought the prisoners from Yazid b. al-Muhallab, said to his chamberlain, "If I call upon you to bring their leader, bring me Fayruz." Then he put his throne in a prominent position—he was at that time at Wāṣīṭ al-Qaṣab, [this being] before the city of Wāṣīṭ had been built—and said to his chamberlain, "Bring me their leader." [The chamberlain] said to Fayruz, "Stand up," and al-Ḥajjāj said to him, "Abū 'Uthmān, what made you rebel with these people? By God, you are not from the same flesh and blood." He said, "[It was] a sedition in which everyone was caught up, including us." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Write down for me [a list of] your assets." He said, "Then what?" [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "[Just] write them down first." He said, "Will my life then be safe?" [Al-Ḥajjāj said], "Write them down, then I'll see." He said, "O ḡulām, write down one million [dirhams] and two million [dirhams]," and he mentioned much money. Al-Ḥajjāj said to him, "Where are these assets?" He said, "With me." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "So hand them over." He said, "Will my life then be safe?" [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "By God, you will hand them over, and I shall then kill you." He said, "By God, you're not going to have both my money and my life." Al-Ḥajjāj then said to the chamberlain, "Put him to one side,"

---

240. 100,000 dirhams, according to Ibn al-Athīr.
241. He being the distinguished Khuzāʿī general Ṭalḥah b. 'Abdallāh (Ṭalḥat al-Ṭalḥāt), "der freiebigste Araber seiner Zeit" (see Caskel, Ğamharat an-nasab, register).
242. This verse does not appear in al-Farazdaq's Diwān.
243. See above, n. 139.
244. This "and" is given by Ms B and Ibn al-Athīr.
and he did so.

Then [al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Bring me Muḥammad b. Sa'd b. Abī Waqqāṣ." [The chamberlain] called him and al-Ḥajjāj said to him, "You shadow of Satan,245 you most wayward and arrogant of people, you decline to take the oath of allegiance to Yazīd b. Muʿāwiyyah, you liken yourself246 to Ḥusayn and Ibn ʿUmar, and then you become muezzin for Ibn Kanārā,247 the slave of the Banū Naṣr"—meaning 'Umar b. Abī al-Šalt—and he struck him on the head with a stick [which he held] in his hand until he caused it to bleed. Muhammad said to him, "[Easy,] man! You have [already] won; so be forgiving,"248 and [al-Ḥajjāj] stayed his hand. Then [Muḥammad] said, "If you see fit, you can write to the Commander of the Faithful; if a pardon [for me] comes to you, you will have been party to that and [will be duly] praised; and if there comes to you other than that, you will [at least] have gone to great lengths." [Al-Ḥajjāj] remained silent for a long time with downcast eyes; then he said, "Behead him!" and he was beheaded.

Then he called for 'Umar b. Mūsā and said to him: "You philanderer,249 will you stand with an iron bar protecting the head of the son of the weaver,250 drink [intoxicating] drink with him in the bathhouse of Fārs, and say what you said?251 Where is al-Farazdaq? Stand and recite to him what you said about him?" And [al-Farazdaq] recited to him (kamil):252

You dyed your penis for fornication and you were not about
to dye the heroes [i.e., with blood] on the
day of battle.

245. Ẓill al-shayṭān, a sobriquet explained by al-Tha'ālibī with reference to Ibn Sa’d's height, swarthiness, and stout build (Laṭīf al-ma‘ārif, p. 40 [English trans., p. 59]).
247. See above, n. 238.
249. If this is how 'abd al-mar'ah is to be understood.
250. I.e., Ibn al-Ash'ath, this being an insult because weaving was a despised occupation (see Brunschvig, "Métiers vils en Islam," pp. 50ff.) and one which Yemenis were stereotypically mocked for engaging in [al-Tha'ālibī, Laṭīf al-ma‘ārif, p. 40 [English trans., p. 59]].
251. This allusion remains in need of clarification.
252. This verse does not appear in al-Farazdaq's Diwān.
[‘Umar] said, “By God, I have kept it away from your secluded women.” Then [al-Ḥajjāj] ordered that he be beheaded. Then he called for Ibn ‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. Samurah, [who proved to be just] a young man. He said, “May God cause the amir to prosper! I am guiltless. I was a young lad with my father and mother, with no say whatever, being with them wherever they happened to be.” [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, “Was your mother with your father in all of these seditions?” He said, “Yes.” [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, “May God’s curse be upon your father!”

Then he called for al-Hilqām b. Nu‘aym and said [to him], “Supposing that Ibn al-Ash‘ath sought what he sought, what did you hope for with him?” He said, “I hoped that he would gain mastery and appoint me over Iraq, just as ‘Abd al-Malik has appointed you.” [Al-Ḥajjāj] said [addressing one of his staff], “Stand up, O Ḥawshab, and behead him.” [Ḥawshab] moved toward him, and al-Hilqām said to him, “You son of a bitch”; 254 [Ḥawshab] beheaded him.

Then ‘Abdallah b. ‘Amir255 was brought. When he stood before [al-Ḥajjāj], he said, “May your eyes never see Paradise, O Ḥajjāj, if you forgive256 Ibn al-Muhallab for what he has done.” [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, “What has he done?” and ‘Abdallah replied (bāṣīt):

Because he cleverly set his family free
and drove Muḍar to you in fetters.
With your people he protected his family from death’s onset,
and your people were of less consequence to him.

Al-Ḥajjāj remained silent for a long time with downcast eyes, and [these words] rested in his heart. [Then] he said, “What does that have to do with you? Behead him!” and he was beheaded. [But the

253. Ibn al-Athir reads aḥhabta anna where the Ṣabārī text gives ʾiʿāl.
254. Reading yā ibna laṭīfatu ḵskatay al-farj, “you son of a woman with [?]tight labia majora,” and translating freely, I cannot take the credit for this inspired reconstruction of the text (which rests on what survives in Ms B).
255. Presumably, the ‘Abdallah b. ‘Amir al-Naʿār who had earlier been at Zaranj (see above, p. 00).
256. Aqalta, while Ibn al-Athir has aflatta; cf. Khalifah [Taʿrīkh, p. 284] and the Omani version of this story (see Hinds, Early Islamic Family, par. 61 and n. 135).
257. In Khalifah’s version and in the Omani version of this, al-Ḥajjāj’s interlocutor is al-Ḥilqām; the following verses are given in both of these versions.
The Events of the Year 83

words] remained in al-Ḥajjāj’s soul until he dismissed Yazīd from Khurāsān and imprisoned him.

Then he gave the order and Fayruz was tortured. As part of his torture, split Persian cane was tied to him, and he was dragged on it until it pierced his body in many places; then [a mixture of] vinegar and salt was sprinkled onto him. When he felt [the onset of] death, he said to [his] torturer, “The people will not doubt that I have been killed; owing to me are deposits of wealth with the people that will never be handed over to you. Show me to the people, that they may know that I am alive and hand over the money.” Al-Ḥajjāj was informed [of this] and said, “Put him on view.” So he was taken out to the city gate, and he called to the people, “Those who know me know me; [as for] those who do not know me, I am Fayruz Ḫuṣayn. [Some] people have money owing to me. Anyone who has anything owing to me may keep it, perfectly legally. Let not anyone hand over a [single] dirham of it. Let those who have witnessed this inform those who are not present.” Al-Ḥajjāj gave the order and [Fayruz] was killed. This is part of what al-Walīd b. Hīšām b. Qaḥdham related on the authority of Abū Bakr al-Hudhali.

Ḍamrah b. Rabi’ah related on the authority of Ibn Shawdhab that al-Ḥajjāj’s governors258 wrote to him, “The land tax has become depleted. The ahl al-dhimma have become Muslims and have gone off to the garrison cities.” [Al-Ḥajjāj] wrote to al-Baṣrah and elsewhere, “Whoever originates from a village must go out [and return] to it.” The people went out and camped and began to weep and call out, “O Muḥammad! O Muḥammad!” and they had no idea of where to go. Then the qurrrā’ of the Baṣrans began to go out to them, masked,259 and to weep at what they heard from them and what they saw. [Ḍamrah] continued: Then Ibn al-Ash’ath came in the wake of that, and the qurrrā’ of the Baṣrans committed themselves to fighting al-Ḥajjāj with Ḥabd al-Raḥmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Ash’ath.

According to Ḍamrah b. Rabi’ah—al-Shaybānī: On the battle day of al-Zāwiya, al-Ḥajjāj killed eleven thousand [people] and spared only one, whose son was one of al-Ḥajjāj’s secretaries. [Al-

258. ṬUmmāl: This may be an early example of the term in the sense of “fiscal intimands” (cf. Eṣf, s.v. ‘Āmil).
259. So rendering mutaqānīn ‘in.
Hajjaj said to [the secretary], "Do you want us to forgive your father for you?" He said, "Yes," and [al-Hajjaj] left [the father] to his son. [Al-Hajjaj] deceived them by means of the safe-conduct: He gave orders to a crier, who called out at the defeat, "There is no safe-conduct for so-and-so, nor for so-and-so," and he named men from those ashraf, without saying, "The people will be safe." The rank and file then said, "He has given safe-conduct to all the people except those individuals," and they advanced to his compound. When they had gathered together, he ordered them to lay down their arms. Then he said, "Today I shall order to deal with you a man to whom you are not related." He ordered 'Umarah b. Tamim al-Lakhmi to deal with them; ['Umarah] brought them near and then killed them.

It has been related on the authority of al-Nadr b. Shumayl that Hisham b. Hassan said: The number of people killed in bonds by al-Hajjaj reached 120,000 or 130,000.

[A Second Account of the Battle of Maskin]

Concerning the defeat of Ibn al-As'ath at Maskin, an account other than that of Abu Mikhnaf has been mentioned: Ibn al-Ash'ath and al-Hajjaj met at Maskin, in the territory of Abazqubad. The camp of Ibn al-Ash'ath was next to a river called Khodash at the back part of al-Nahr—that is, Nahr Tira. Al-Hajjaj stopped at the river Afraydh, and the two camps were in their entirety between the Tigris, al-Sib, and al-Karkh. They fought for a month—also said to be less than that—and al-Hajjaj did not know of any way to them other than the way on which they were engaging each other. Then he was brought an old man who was a herdsman called Zawraq, and he showed him a
way round behind al-Karkh, six parasangs long, through a thicket and some shallow water. [Al-Ḥajjāj] selected four thousand of the most eminent of the Syrians and said to their leader, "Let this unbeliever ('ilj) be in front of you. Here are four thousand dirhams for you to take with you. If he gets you to their camp, pay the money to him; if he [proves to have] lied to us, behead him. If you see them, attack them with those who are with you. Let your battle cry be 'O Ḥajjāj! O Ḥajjāj!'" The leader set off at the time of the afternoon prayer, and al-Ḥajjāj's army and that of Ibn al-Ash'ath met when the leader moved off with those who were with him at the time of the afternoon prayer. They fought until nighttime, and al-Ḥajjāj withdrew until he crossed [the] al-Sib [river], which he had bridged, Ibn al-Ash'ath entered his camp and plundered what was in it. He was asked, "Why not follow him?" He said, "We are worn out," and he returned to his camp; his companions cast down their weapons and passed the night sure that they had won. The people [making up the force of four thousand] attacked them halfway through the night, shouting their battle cry, and the companions of Ibn al-Ash'ath did not know where to direct themselves: Dujayl to the left [or] the Tigris, with its awful eroded bank, straight ahead? Those who drowned were more numerous than those who were killed. Al-Ḥajjāj heard the noise and crossed [the] al-Sib to his camp. Then he sent his cavalry to the [other force], and the two armies met at the camp of Ibn al-Ash'ath. [The latter] fled with three hundred [men] and went along the bank of the Tigris until he reached [the] Dujayl [river], which he crossed in boats. They hocked their riding animals and went downstream in the boats to al-Baṣrah. Al-Ḥajjāj entered [Ibn al-Ash'ath's] camp and plundered what was in it. He killed anyone he found, until he had killed four thousand [people]. It is said that among those he killed was 'Abdallāh b. Shaddād b. al-Hādī, also killed were Bīṣṭām b. Maṣqalah b. Hubayrah, 'Umar b. Dubay'ah al-Raqašī, Bishr b. al-Mundhir b. al-Jārūd and al-Ḥakam b. Makhramah, who were

266. About 36 kilometers.
267. Reading kadhaband, as proposed in the Addenda et Emendanda.
268. So rendering 'aqada.
269. Sayed, Revolte, p. 355, no. 16.
270. 'Amr, according to Ibn al-Athir.
271. See above, n. 54.
both 'Abdis; and Bukayr b. Rabi'ah b. Tharwān al-Ḍabbi. Al-Hajjāj was brought their heads on a shield. He began to look at the head of Bistiām and recited (basiṭ):272

If you pass along the valley of a male serpent, go and leave me to deal with273 the serpent of the valley.

Then he looked at the head of Bukayr and said, “How did this wretch get to be with these? Take hold of his ear, boy, and cast it away from them.” Then he said, “Place this shield in front of Misma' b. Mālik b. Misma’.”274 It was placed before him, and he wept. Al-Hajjāj said, “What has made you weep? Is it out of sorrow for them?” He said, “No, rather out of fear of hell fire for them.”

[The Reason Why al-Hajjāj Built Wāsīṭ]

In this year al-Hajjāj built Wāsīṭ. The reason for his building it, in among what has been mentioned, was that al-Hajjāj raised Kūfān levies [to go] to Khurasan, and they camped at Hammām 'Umar.275 A young Kūfān man from the Banū Asad, who had recently married his paternal uncle’s daughter, departed from the camp to his cousin at night. Somebody knocked hard on the door, and, lo and behold, it was a drunken Syrian. The cousin said to the [Asadi] man, “We’ve had a lot of trouble from this Syrian. He does this sort of thing every night, wanting something not very nice. I have complained about him to the shaykhs among his companions, and they know about it.” [The Asadi] said, “Let him in,” and they did so. Then he locked the door, the woman having [first] seen to the house and made it pleasant. The Syrian said, “Your time has come,” and the Asadi killed him and struck off his head. When the dawn call to prayer was made, the [Asadi]
went out to the camp, saying to his wife, "When the dawn prayer has been prayed, send [word] to the Syrians that they should remove their man. They will take you to al-Ḥajjāj; tell him the truth, just as it was." She did so, and the dead man was borne off to al-Ḥajjāj. The woman was brought into his presence; with him on his throne was 'Anbasah b. Sa'id.276 [Al-Ḥajjāj] said to her, "What happened?" She told him, and he said, "You have told the truth." Then he said to the blood claimants277 of the Syrian, "Bury your relative. He has been killed by God [and is headed] for hell fire; there will be no retaliation and no blood money." Then his crier called out, "No one [of the Syrians] may stop off with any one [of the Iraqis]. Move out and make camp." [Al-Ḥajjāj] sent out scouts to reconnoiter [and find] for him a place to settle. He worked assiduously until he stopped at the fringes of Kaskar, and, while he was at the site of Wāṣiṭ, lo and behold, a monk advanced on a donkey of his and crossed the Tigris. When he was at the site of Wāṣiṭ, the she-ass parted her legs and urinated; the monk dismounted and dug up the urine and then carried it and threw it into the Tigris, during all of which time al-Ḥajjāj was watching. Al-Ḥajjāj said, "Bring him to me," and he was brought. [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "What possessed you to do what you did?" [The monk] said, "We find [it written] in our books that there will be built in this place a mosque in which God will be worshiped as long as there remains on earth anyone who proclaims His oneness." Al-Ḥajjāj marked out the city of Wāṣiṭ and built the mosque at that place.

In this year, according to what al-Wāqīḍi said, 'Abd al-Malik dismissed Abān b. 'Uṭmān from Medina and appointed over it Hishām b. Ismā'īl al-Makhzūmī.

Hishām b. Ismā'īl led the pilgrimage in this year: Thus it was related to me by 'Abd al-Malik b. Thābit on the authority of he who related it to him on the authority of Ishāq b. ʿĪsā on the authority of Abū Ma'shar.

The governors of the amṣār in this year, apart from Medina were [the same as] the governors of the preceding year. As for Medina, we have mentioned those who were over it in [this year].

276. I.e., 'Anbasah b. Sa'id b. al-ʿAṣ al-Umawi [cf. above, n. 49].
277. So rendering wulāt in this context.
The Events of the Year

84

(JANUARY 24, 703—JANUARY 13, 704)

In [this year] there took place the campaign of 'Abdallah b. 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān against the Byzantines, in [the course of] which he conquered al-Maṣṣiṣah. Thus it was mentioned by al-Wāqidi.

In [this year, too,] al-Ḥajjāj killed Ayyūb b. al-Qirriyyah who was one of those who had been with Ibn al-Ash'ath. The reason why he killed him—in among what has been mentioned—was that, after his departure from Dayr al-Jamājim, he used to enter into the presence of Hawshab b. Yaẓīd, who was al-Ḥajjāj's governor of al-Kūfah, and Hawshab would say, “Look at this fellow standing with me. Tomorrow or the day after there will arrive from the amīr a letter [containing orders] that I shall have to implement.” [Then] one day, while he was standing, there came to him a letter from al-Ḥajjāj [which said]: “To continue: You have become a haven and a refuge for the hypocrites of Iraq. When you read this letter of mine, send Ibn al-Qirriyyah to me with his hand tied to his neck in the company of one of your confidants.” When Hawshab

278. Ibn al-Athir here gives additional information on these Arab operations at al-Maṣṣiṣah.
279. See EI², s.v. Ibn al-Ḳirriyya.
The Events of the Year 84

had read the letter, he threw it to [Ibn al-Qirriyyah], who read it and said, "To hear is to obey"; [Hawshab] sent him in bonds to al-Ḥajjāj. When [Ibn al-Qirriyyah] entered into al-Ḥajjāj’s presence, [the latter] said to him, "O Ibn al-Qirriyyah, what have you prepared for this situation?" He said, "May God cause the amir to prosper, three words, like riders at a standstill:280 this world, the next world, and doing good." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Explain yourself; otherwise you will be in trouble."281 He said, "I shall do so. As for this world, it [consists of] available wealth, to be consumed by both the righteous and the unrighteous; as for the next world, it is a just scale and a place of assembly in which there is nothing false; as for doing good, if I am asked to do it I shall accept, and, if others are asked to do it to me, I shall take it with both hands." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "In that case, accept the sword when it falls upon you." He said, "May God cause the amir to prosper, forgive me my slip and grant me some delay.282 Every fleet steed takes a fall, and every brave man [at some time] underachieves."283 Al-Ḥajjāj said, "Certainly not. By God, I shall make you visit284 hell." He said, "Then let me be at rest, for I [almost] feel its heat." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Take him forward, guard, and behead him!" When al-Ḥajjāj looked at him floundering in his own blood, he said, "If only we had left off Ibn al-Qirriyyah, so that we might hear [more] of his words." Then he gave the order and [the cadaver of Ibn al-Qirriyyah] was removed and discarded.

According to Hishām—'Awānah: When al-Ḥajjāj prohibited Ibn al-Qirriyyah from speaking, Ibn al-Qirriyyah said to him, "By God, if you and I had been on an equal footing, we should both have fallen285 or you would have found me unassailable."

---

280. Cf. the account given by al-Mas'ūdī, Murūj, vol. V, pp. 323–24 = par. 2081. If, here and in what follows, Ibn al-Qirriyyah’s remarks seem stilted, it is because they are in rhyming prose in the original.

281. So rendering ukhruj mimmad qulta.

282. So rendering wa-asighni (which is rightly preferred in the Addenda et Emendanda to wa-asqinī) riqi.


284. Reading la-uzirannaka, with the Addenda et Emendanda (and Ibn al-Athir), in preference to la-uriyannaka.

285. Following the Addenda et Emendanda (la-shiknā).
In this year Yazid b. al-Muhallab conquered the fortress of Nizak at Bādghīs.

The Reason Why [Yazid b. al-Muhallab] Conquered [the Fortress of Nizak]

According to 'Ali b. Muḥammad—al-Mufaḍḍal b. al-Muhallab: Nizak was staying in a fortress at Bādghīs, and Yazid watched for a good time to campaign against him and set spies on him. [News] reached him that [Nizak] had sallied forth, and Yazid went to [the fortress] in his absence. [News of this] reached Nizak, who returned, and [Yazid] made peace with him on condition that he would hand over to him the treasures that were in the fortress and would leave it with his dependents. [In this connection,] Ka'b b. Ma’dān al-Ashqari said (basīt):

Bādghīs—which [is such that] he who occupies its upper part
overcomes kings and, if he wishes, may act tyrannically and oppressively—

Is well fortified: No king before [Yazid] has taken it by guile;
[it can be taken] only when it is faced by a vast army of his.

Its fires, viewed from a distance, could be imagined to be stars, in the first third of the night.

When [Yazid] circled round it, their hearts sank until they left it to him to judge, and he decided.

He humbled its inhabitant (that is, Nizak) after his [previous] greatness
[by making him] pay poll tax,[288] [he thereby] acknowledging abasement and oppression.

[1130] A few days thereafter,
before which you had revealed grief and

---


288. So rendering al-jīzā.
oppression,
The Provider gave you that, dividing it among [God’s] creatures; and the deprived one is he who is deprived.

With one of your hands you give the enemy poison to drink, while the generosity of the other is ceaseless.

Can the gift and grace of Yazid be compared with anything other than the Euphrates and the Nile in spate?

When they are at their high points, they are no more generous than he, [even] when they rise above elevated ground and hillocks.

And he said (tawil):

My praise for the clan of al-`Atik is that they are generous in hospitality and noble of origin.

When they make an agreement with one they protect, he occupies an elevated place of safety, securely high and well defended.

He expelled Nizak from Bâdghis, and Nizak was in a position which was too difficult for kings to snatch from him,

[A position] soaring beneath the sky, like a white summer cloud from which the rain clouds have passed away.

Not even the mountain goats reach its uppermost parts, nor birds, save its eagle and osprey.

The children of its people have not been frightened by the wolf, nor have its dogs barked at anything save the stars.

I have desired to encounter al-`Atik, the possessors of wisdom, made to have mastery, with their riding camels protected,

Just as the son of the soil whose lands are parched desires rain from abundant clouds,
Then, after despair, he is given to drink, to the point where [his land's] conduits cannot cope and the billows [of water] gurgle. God has gathered together those who were remote from one another, and there have come together groups from many and varied distant places.

[ʻAlī b. Muḥammad] said: Nizak used to glorify the fortress, when he saw it, he prostrated himself to it. Yazīd b. al-Muhallab wrote to al-Ḥajjāj concerning the conquest; Yazīd’s letters to al-Ḥajjāj were written by Yahyā b. Ya’mar al-ʻAdwānī,289 who was a confederate (ḥalīf) of Hudhayl. He wrote: “We encountered the enemy, and God gave us the upper hand.290 We killed some and took some captive, while others took themselves to the tops of the mountains, the bottoms291 of the valleys, the low-lying fields, and the bends of the rivers.” Al-Ḥajjāj asked who it was who acted as Yazīd’s secretary and was told that it was Yahyā b. Ya’mar. He wrote to Yazīd [telling him to send Yahyā to him], and [Yazīd] sent him via the messenger service. Then [this] most eloquent of people came to him, and [al-Ḥajjāj] said, “Where were you born?” He said, “In al-Ahwāz.” “And this eloquence?” “I memorized the speech of my father, who was an eloquent man.” “Now tell me, does ‘Anbasah b. Sa‘īd make grammatical mistakes?” “Yes, often.” “And so-and-so?” “Yes.” “Tell me about myself; do I make grammatical mistakes?” “Yes, you make a barely perceptible mistake. You add a letter and you drop a letter: You [also] say ‘inna’ instead of ‘anna’ and ‘anna’ instead of ‘inna.’” [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, “I’ll give you three days. If, after three days, I find you in Iraqi territory, I’ll kill you.” [Yaḥyā] returned to Khurasan.292

The pilgrimage in this year was led by Hishām b. Ismā’īl al-Makhzūmī: Thus it was related to me by Aḥmad b. Thābit on the authority of him who mentioned it to him on the authority of Iṣḥāq b. ʻĪsā on the authority of Abū Ma’ṣhar.

The governors of the anṣār in this year were the same as those I have named above under the year 83.

289. Caskel, Ġamharat an-nasab, register.
290. Lit. “God gave us their shoulders.”
291. ‘Ard’ir: See the Addenda et Emendanda and the learned note in the Glossarium.
292. A briefer version of this story is given by al-Mubarrad (Kāmil, p. 158).
The Events of the Year 85 (January 14, 704–January 1, 705)

In this year the death of 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Ash'ath took place.

What [Ibn al-Ash'ath] Died of and How It Came About

According to Hishām b. Muḥammad—Abū Mikhnaf: When Ibn al-Ash'ath departed from Herat, returning to the Zunbil, there was with him a man from [the tribe of] Awd called 'Alqamah b. 'Amr. [This man] said to him, "I do not want to enter [the territory of the Zunbil] with you." 'Abd al-Rahmān said to him, "Why?"

He said, "Because I fear for you and for those who are with you. By God, in my mind's eye it is as if the letter of al-Ḥajjāj has already arrived, coming to the Zunbil and filling him with fear, and he has either sent you [sing.] off in submission or he has killed you [pl.]. Here [we] are five hundred [men]; you could make an oath with us to the effect that we shall enter the city, entrench ourselves in it, and fight until we are either given a safe-conduct or die nobly." 'Abd al-Rahmān said to him, "If you were to enter with me, I should be munificent to you and honor you." But 'Alqamah refused, and 'Abd al-Rahmān entered into the presence
of the Zunbil. These five hundred [men] went off, placed over themselves293 Mawdūd al-Naḍrī294 and then stayed put until 'Umārah b. Tamīm al-Lakhmi advanced upon them; ['Umārah] besieged them and they fought him and resisted him until he gave them a safe-conduct and they went forth to him. He kept his word to them.

[Hishām] continued: One letter of al-Ḥajjāj's after another came to the Zunbil concerning 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad, saying, "Send him to me; otherwise, by the One other than Whom there is no god, I shall cause a million295 fighting men to trample your land." With the Zunbil there was a man from the Banū Tamīm, from [the clan of] the Banū Yarbū, called 'Ubayd b. Abī Subay',296 and he said to the Zunbil, "I shall obtain for you from al-Ḥajjāj a compact [to the effect that] he will refrain from taxing your land for seven years on condition that you hand 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad over to him." The Zunbil said to 'Ubayd, "If you do that, you will have of me what you ask." [Ubayd] then wrote to al-Ḥajjāj, [telling him] that the Zunbil would not disobey him and that he would keep on at the Zunbil until he sent 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad to him. At that, al-Ḥajjāj gave him money, and he took money from the Zunbil in that regard. The Zunbil sent 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad's head to al-Ḥajjāj, [who] for seven years let him keep [the taxation stipulated in] the peace agreement that he [normally] took from him. Al-Ḥajjāj used to say, "The Zunbil sent the enemy of God to me after he [had] cast himself off a roof and died."

According to Abū Mīkhnaf—Sulaymān b. Abī Rāshid—Mulaykah the daughter of Yazīd:297 When 'Abd al-Rahmān died—

293. Reading ja'alu 'alayhim, with Ibn al-Athīr; the Tabarī text gives ba'athū 'alayhim.
294. Ibn al-Athīr reads "al-Ɓasrī," which seems unlikely. We are told below [p. 79] that he was from the Banū al-‘Anbar, but that clan does not appear to have had any subclan by the name of Naḍr; it is just possible that "al-Naḍrī" is a scribal distortion of "al-‘Anbari."
295. 100,000, according to al-Ya‘qūbī [Ta’rikh, vol. II, p. 333].
296. The "Abi" is missing in Ibn al-Athīr; according to the Naqdīd [p. 413, ll. 1–2 [in an account that differs somewhat]], he was ‘Abd Allāh or 'Ubayd Allāh b. Abī Subay' of the Banū Rabā’ah b. Ḥanzalah b. Mālik b. Zayd[manāt] Tamīm.
297. Wife of 'Abd al-Rahmān; see above, p. 43, where she is identified as the daughter of the brother of 'Abd Allāh b. Yazīd b. al-Mughaffal al-Azdī; Ibn A’tham, on the other hand, identifies her as the daughter of a certain Yazīd al-‘Amīrī [Futūḥ, vol. VII, p. 157]. Cf. Sayed, Revolte, p. 236.
The Events of the Year 85

and his head was [at the time resting] on my thigh—he was suffering from tuberculosis. When he died and they wanted to bury him, the Zunbil sent for him, cut off his head, and sent it to al-

Hājjāj.298 He [also] took eighteen male descendants of al-Ash'ath and detained them with him, while leaving all [the rest of] his companions who had been with ['Abd al-Rahmān]. He wrote to al-

Hājjāj about his taking of the eighteen men from 'Abd al-Rahmān's family, and al-Hājjāj wrote to him instructing him to execute them and send their heads to him. He disliked [the idea of] their being brought to him alive, [lest] a petition be made to 'Abd al-Malik about them and [any] one of them be set free.

On the matter of Ibn Abi Subay' and Ibn al-Ash'ath, there has been said other than what I have mentioned on the authority of Abū Mikhnaf. This is what has been mentioned on the authority of Abū 'Ubaydah Ma'mar b. al-Muthannā, who used to say: It has been claimed that 'Umārah b. Tamim set forth from Kirmān and came to Sijistān, over which was a man from the Banū al-'Anbar called Mawdūd. He [first] besieged him and then gave him a safe-conduct. Then he gained mastery of Sijistān and sent [word] to the Zunbil, to whom al-Hājjāj wrote:299 "To continue: I have sent to you 'Umārah b. Tamim with [a force of] thirty thousand Syrians who have neither forsaken obedience, nor disavowed a Caliph, nor followed an imām of waywardness. He pays each of them one hundred dirhams a month. War is very much to their taste. They seek Ibn al-Ash'ath."

But the Zunbil refused to hand him over.

With Ibn al-Ash'ath was 'Ubayd b. Abī Subay' al-Tamīmī, whom he had singled out for his special favor. He was a messenger to the Zunbil, for whose special favor he was also singled out and to whom he gave cheer. Al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad b. al-

Ash'ath said to his brother 'Abd al-Rahmān, "I can't be sure that this Tamīmī will not betray you; do kill him," and ['Abd al-

Rahmān] intended to do so. [News of this] reached Ibn Abī Subay', who feared him and misrepresented him to the Zunbil; he put [the latter] in fear of al-Hājjāj and called upon him to betray Ibn al-

Ash'ath. [The Zunbil] responded positively to him, and [Ibn Abī


299. Ibn A’tham (Futūḥ, vol. VII, p. 156) gives a slightly fuller version of this letter.
[II36] How far away the place of the cadaver is from its head:

a head in Egypt and a cadaver at al-Rukhkhaaj. 306

Al-Ḥajjāj [had] sent [the head] to ʿAbd al-Malik, and he [had] sent it to [his brother] ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz, who was at that time over Egypt. 307

---

300. Who was at Bust at this time, according to al-Yaʿqūbī.
301. This being the definition given in the Glossarium.
303. Al-jawāmīʿ, i.e., neck collars fitted with hand manacles (see Lane, Lexicon, s.v. ǧāmīʿah).
304. So rendering qaṣr; he is also said to have cast himself from a mountain (al-Baladhuri, Futūḥ, p. 400).
305. Ibn Khurradāḥbih [al-Masālik waʾl-mamālik, p. 40] cites this verse and puts it into the mouth of ʿAbd al-Malik. Al-Masʿūdī [al-Tanbih waʾl-ishrāf, p. 316] gives this and a second verse, but not the name of the poet.
306. The area in Sījistān watered by the Qandāhār river (Le Strange, Lands of the Eastern Caliphate, p. 339).
307. Ibn Kathīr [Biḍāyāh, vol. IX, p. 54] says that ʿAbd al-Rahmān’s head was buried in Egypt; according to Ibn Aʿtham [Futūḥ, vol. VII, p. 158], the heads of ʿAbd al-Rahmān and others were taken from Egypt to Ḥadramawt and dropped into a well there.
According to 'Umar b. Shabbah—Ibn 'Ā'ishah—Sa'd b. 'Ubaydallāh: When 'Abd al-Malik was brought the head of Ibn al-Ash'ath, he sent it with a eunuch to a woman from [the family of al-Ash'ath] who was married to a man from Quraysh. When it was put in front of her, she said, "Welcome to a visitor who does not speak. He is one of the kings, who sought something of which he was worthy, but the fates decreed otherwise." The eunuch made to go off with the head, but she drew it out of his hand, saying, "No, by God, [not] until I have done what is necessary." Then she called for [some] althea308 [with which] she washed it and smeared it[s beard]; then she said, "Now you may have it," and he took it. He informed 'Abd al-Malik [of this], and, when her husband entered into his presence, he said, "If you are able to produce a daughter309 by her[, that will be a very good thing]."

It has been mentioned that Ibn al-Ash'ath looked at one of his companions while he was fleeing to the territory of the Zunbil and recited (mutaqārib):310

Fear pursues him, and he has lost his course:
Thus is one who dislikes the heat of battle.
His boots are full of holes, [and] he complains of chafing;
the edges of sharp pumice stones311 hurt his feet.
There would have been rest for him in death,
and death is inevitable for [God's] servants.

[The man] turned to him and said, "O you insignificant blamer [of others],312 why were you not steadfast in one of the battlefields, so that we might die in front of you? That would have been better for you than what you have come to."

According to Hishām—Abū Mikhnaf: Al-Ḥajjāj set forth in [1137]

308. Khīṭṭā: see Lane, Lexicon, p. 768a.
309. Sakkālah, literally "a kid."
310. Lines 2 and 3 of the following verses are given by Ibn A'tham [Putūḥ, vol. VII, p. 151], where another verse is also given. Cf. also al-Yaqūbi, Ta'rīkh, vol. II, p. 391, and al-Ṭabarānī, Ta'rīkh, ser. iii, p. 167 [in the contexts of Zayd b. 'Ali and Muhammad al-Nafs al-Zakiyyah respectively].
311. See Dozy [Supplément, s.v.] for this definition of the term marw.
312. Reading luḥayyah (rather than ilḥyāh), i.e., the diminutive of [the feminine] lāḥiyah.
those days of his, going about accompanied by Ḫumayd al-Arqat,\textsuperscript{313} who said (rajaz):

He still constructs a trench and destroys it,
in protection of an army that he leads and betrays,
Until his plunder is in your hands;
how far from his place of mustering is his
place of defeat!
He who is fitted for vehement striving for mastery
is he who does not turn away from it in disgust.\textsuperscript{314}

Al-Ḥajjāj said, "This is truer than what the wicked A'šā Hamdān said (kāmil):

I have been informed [that] al-Ḥajjāj b.\textsuperscript{315} Yū-
suf slipped, fell, and perished.

Now it is clear to him who it was who slipped and perished,\textsuperscript{316}
f feared and failed, and doubted and suspected." He raised his voice, and there was no one who did not fear his anger. Al-Urayqīt\textsuperscript{317} was silent, and al-Ḥajjāj said to him, "Go back to what you were saying. What is the matter with you, O Arqat?" He said, "May I be made your ransom, O amir; and the authority of God is mighty. You became angry, and my muscles became aquiver, my joints tight, my sight dim, and I felt giddy." Al-Ḥajjāj said to him, "Yes indeed, the authority of God is mighty. Go back to what you were doing." And he did so.

One day, when al-Ḥajjāj was going along accompanied by Ziyād b. Jarir b. 'Abdallāh al-Bajali,\textsuperscript{318} who was one-eyed, he said, "What was it you said to Ibn Samurah?" He said, "I said (rajaz):

O one-eyed man, may I be the ransom of the one-eyed;
you thought that the dug trench

\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{313} See EP, s.v. Ḫumayd al-Arqat; Sezgin, GAS, vol. II, p. 333.}
\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{314} Freytag, Arabum Proverbia, vol. I, p. 85; Lane, Lexicon, p. 2615a.}
\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{315} Reading Ḥajjāja 'bna in place of anna bunayya [see Geyer, The Diwan of al-A'shā], p. 312, line 6 [Arabic text], and p. 310 of his apparatus, Aghmān, vol. VI, p. 59]; Ibn A'tham (Futūh, vol. VII, p. 129) reads anna 'bna at this point.}
\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{316} The Arabic is wordier: zalaqa wa-tabba wa-dahaqa wa-ankabba.}
\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{317} Sic, being the diminutive form of al-Arqat.}
\footnotesize{\textsuperscript{318} Crone, Slaves on Horses, p. 114.}
The Events of the Year 85

Would repel from you what fate had in store and [stop] calamities befalling."

It has been said that the death of 'Abd al-Rahmân b. Muḥammad took place in the year 84.

In this year al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf dismissed Yazīd b. al-Muhallab from Khurasan and appointed over it al-Mufaḍḍal b. al-Muhallab, the brother of Yazīd.


'Ali b. Muḥammad mentioned on the authority of al-Mufaḍḍal b. Muḥammad that al-Ḥajjāj went on a delegation to 'Abd al-Malik and on his way back stopped at a monastery. He was told that in the monastery there was a learned old man of the People of the Books,319 so he summoned him and said, "O shaykh, do you find in your books [any reference to] our current situation?" He said, "Yes, we find [references to] your past, your present, and your future." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Are names given or [just] general descriptions?" He said, "Both: [You can find] a description without a name and a name without a description." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Don't you find a description of the Commander of the Faithful?" He said, "We find it in [respect of] the time in which we are living: A bald king—whoever gets in his way is felled." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Then who?" He said, "A man called al-Walīd." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Then what?" He said, "A man whose name is the name of a prophet, through whom the people will be possessed of good fortune." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Do you know me?" He said, "I have been told about you." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Do you know what I govern?" He said, "Yes." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Who will govern it after me?" He said, "A man called Yazīd." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "In my lifetime or after my death?" He said, "I don’t know." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "Do you know his description?" He said, "He will commit an act of perfidy. I don’t know anything other than that."

319. Min ahl al-kitāb, Ibn al-Athīr omits the phrase, while Ibn Kathīr (Bidāyāt, vol. IX, pp. 55) has ahl al-kitāb here and below.

320. I.e., Sulaymān b. 'Abd al-Malik.
['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Yazīd b. al-Muhallab came to his mind and he set off. He traveled for seven [nights], fearful of what the old man had said, and arrived [at Wāsīt]. Then he wrote to 'Abd al-Malik, asking to be relieved of Iraq. ['Abd al-Malik] wrote to him, "O son of the mother of al-Ḥajjāj, I know what you are getting at and that you want to know my opinion of you. By my life, I see the influence of Nāfi' b. ‘Alqamah. Divert yourself from this until God brings you what is coming."

Al-Farazdaq said, mentioning his journey (tawīl): If birds had been charged with making the like of his journey from Jerusalem to Wāsīt, they would have become weary!

He went by night on fleet camels from Palestine, after nighttime had drawn near to the sun of the day and [the sun] had set.

That day was not out before he made [the camels] kneel in Maysān, weary and weak from their night journey.

It was as if a hungry falcon were in the saddle, when the deep gloom revealed him.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: One day, when al-Ḥajjāj was unoccupied, he summoned 'Ubayd b. Mawhab, who entered striking the ground [with a stick]. [Al-Ḥajjāj] raised his head and said, "Woe, O 'Ubayd, the people of the Books mention that what I govern will be governed by a man called Yazīd. I have thought of Yazīd b. Abī Kabshah and Yazīd b. Ḥuṣayn b. Numayr and Yazīd b. Dīnār, and it can't be any of those, since they are not up to it. It must be Yazīd b. al-Muhallab." 'Ubayd said to him, "You have ennobled [the Muhallabids] and have made their dominion mighty. They are possessed of numbers, endurance, obedience,

---

321. Presumably, this was the name of the learned old man.
322. Cf. al-Farazdaq, Dīwān, vol. I, p. 116 (where an extra verse is given and we are told that the journey took seven days), and Yāqūt, Muʾjam, vol. I, p. 424 (where the verses are ascribed to baʿd al-ʿarāb).
325. For the first two of these, see Crone, Slaves on Horses, pp. 96 and 97, respectively, the third is mentioned only at this point by al-Ṭabari.
and good fortune. How worthy [Yazīd] is.” [But] al-Ḥajjāj decided to dismiss Yazid; he did not, however, find any way of proceeding against him until the arrival of al-Khiyār b. Sabrah b. Dhu’ayb b. ‘Arfajah b. Muḥammad b. Sufyān b. Mujāshi’,326 who had been one of al-Muhallab’s horsemen and was with Yazid. Al-Ḥajjāj said to him, “Tell me about Yazid.” He said, “He is good in obedience and easygoing in his way of proceeding.” [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, “You are lying! Tell me the truth.” He said, “God is most sublime and great, [Yazid] has saddled up without a bridle.” [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, “You speak truly,” and he thereafter appointed al-Khiyār over ‘Uman.327

[‘Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Then [al-Ḥajjāj] wrote to ‘Abd al-Malik, blaming Yazid and the family of al-Muhallab for [their] adherence to the Zubayrids, and ‘Abd al-Malik wrote to him: “I do not consider the obedience of the Muhallabids to the Zubayrids to be a shortcoming; rather, I see it as loyalty on their part to them, and that loyalty will induce them to be loyal to me.” Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to him making him fearful of their perfidy, on account of what the old man had told him, and ‘Abd al-Malik wrote to him: “You have said a lot about Yazid and the Muhallabids. Give me the name of a man who would be suitable for Khurasan,” and he gave him the name of Mujjā’ah b. ‘Affāḥ b. Si’r al-Sa’dī.328 ‘Abd al-Malik wrote to him: “The opinion that induced you to regard the Muhallabids as corrupt is the same as that which induced you [to name] Mujjā’ah. Look out for me a tough man who will carry out your orders,” and he named Qutaybah b. Muslim. [‘Abd al-Malik] wrote to him: “Appoint him.”

It reached Yazid that al-Ḥajjāj had dismissed him, and he said to his family, “Whom do you think al-Ḥajjāj will appoint over Khurasan?” They said, “A man from Ṭhāqif.” He said, “By no means. He will write to one of you with his appointment. [Then,] when I reach him, he will dismiss [that man], and he will appoint a man from Qays: How worthy Qutaybah would be.”

327. For a rather fuller (if somewhat confused) account of this episode, see Hinds (Early Islamic Family, pars. 62–67), where “[Yazid] has saddled up without a bridle” [i.e., acted without adequate preparation] comes out as “a people who have saddled up without bridles” (par. 66).
['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: When 'Abd al-Malik gave permission to al-Ḥajjāj to dismiss Yazīd, [al-Ḥajjāj] did not like to write to [Yazīd] about his dismissal; so he wrote to him [saying], "Appoint al-Mufadḍal as your deputy and come." Yazīd sought the advice of Ḥuḍayn b. al-Mundhir,329 who said, "Stay, and make an excuse, for the Commander of the Faithful has a good opinion of you. The order has only come from al-Ḥajjāj.330 If you stay [here] and do not hurry off, I hope that [the Commander of the Faithful] will write to [al-Ḥajjāj instructing him] to confirm [you in your position]." Yazīd said, "We are a family that has been blessed in [respect of) obedience; I do not like disobedience and conflict," and he began to get ready. But he did so too slowly for the liking of al-Ḥajjāj, who wrote to al-Mufadḍal, "I have put you over Khurāsān." [At this,] al-Mufadḍal began to nag Yazīd, and Yazīd said to him, "Al-Ḥajjāj will not confirm you in your position after I [have gone]. It was only fear that I might resist him that induced him to act as he has." [Al-Mufadḍal] said, "No, you are envious of me." [Yazīd] said, "O son of Bahlah!331 Would I envy you? You'll see." Yazīd went off in Rabi' II 85 (April–May 704), and al-Ḥajjāj then dismissed al-Mufadḍal. The poet said to al-Mufadḍal and to his full brother 'Abd al-Malik [kāmil]:

O two sons of Bahlah, my Lord disgraced you  
on the morning when the shining hero went off.  
You forsook your brother and fell  
to the bottom of a dark place, the denizen of  
which is exposed to harm.  
Repent much and sincerely; it is only  
the greatest loser who refuses and disdains to repent.  
Ḥuḍayn said to Yazīd [tawīl]:

I gave you a prudent instruction and you defied me,  
only to become stripped of office and regretful.

---

330. So understanding innama utita min al-Ḥajjāj.  
331. Bahlah (or Bahallah), as becomes apparent in the first of the following verses, was the mother of al-Mufadḍal. It is specified below, p. 157, that she was an Indian woman.
I am not going to weep over you out of longing,
and I am not going to pray for you to return safely.332

When Qutaybah arrived in Khurasan, he said to al-Ḥuḍayn,
"What was it you said to Yazid?" He said, "I said:

I gave you a prudent instruction and you defied me:
if you blame, you yourself are more deserving of blame.
If it reaches al-Ḥajjāj that you have defied him,
you will find yourself in deep trouble with him."333

[Qutaybah] said, "What was it you instructed him to do that he disobeyed?" [Al-Ḥuḍayn] said, "I instructed him to take to the amīr all the gold and silver he could find." A man said to 'Iyāḍ b. Ḥuḍayn, "As for your father, when Qutaybah tested him, he found him wise when he said, 'I instructed him to take to the amīr all the gold and silver he could find.'"

'Ali [b. Muḥammad] said, and Kulayb b. Khalaf [also] related to us: Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to Yazid, "Campaign in Khwārazm." [Yazid] wrote to him, "O amīr, it has little plunder and fierce dogs."334 Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to him, "Appoint a deputy and come [to me]." [Yazid] wrote to him, "I want to campaign in Khwārazm." [Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to him, "Do not campaign in it. It is as you have described it." [Yazid] then campaigned [there] and did not obey [al-Ḥajjāj]. The people of Khwārazm made a peace agreement with him, he took captives according to the peace terms and made his return journey in the winter. The cold became intense for [Yazid and his men], and they took the clothes of the prisoners and put them on. Those captives died of cold.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Yazid stopped at Talastānah,335 and a plague afflicted the people of Marw al-Rūdh that year. Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to him, "Come," and he set off: He did not pass through any place but that [its people] spread out aromatic plants for him.

---

332. Cf. Hinds, Early Islamic Family, par. 68.
333. Ibid., par. 71.
334. A piece of rhyming prose difficult to replicate in English.
Yazid was given his appointment in the year 82 and was dismissed in the year 85. He set out [to Iraq] from Khurasan in Rabi’ II 85 (April–May 704), and Qutaybah was appointed.

As for Hishām b. Muḥammad, he mentioned on the authority of Abū Mikhnaf, concerning al-Ḥajjāj’s dismissal of Yazid from Khurasan, a cause other than the one mentioned by ‘Ali b. Muḥammad. He mentioned in that connection on the authority of Abū Mikhnaf—Abū al-Mukhāriq al-Rāsibi and others: Al-Ḥajjāj, when he had finished with ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad, had no concern save Yazid b. al-Muhallab and his family. Al-Ḥajjāj had humbled all the Iraqis except for Yazid and his family and those of the people of the two miṣrs who were with them in Khurasan; after ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad, he feared in Iraq only Yazid b. al-Muhallab. Al-Ḥajjāj [accordingly] began to try to deceive Yazid, in an attempt to extract him from Khurasan. He would send to [Yazid] to come to him, and [Yazid] would adduce to him the excuse of the enemy and the war in Khurasan. He kept on in this wise until the last part of the rule of ‘Abd al-Malik. Then al-Ḥajjāj wrote to ‘Abd al-Malik, advising him to dismiss Yazid b. al-Muhallab and informing him of the obedience of the Muhallabids to Ibn al-Zubayr, [as a result of which] they would not be loyal to him. ‘Abd al-Malik wrote to him: “I do not consider the obedience and loyalty of the sons of al-Muhallab to the Zubayrids to be a shortcoming; their obedience and loyalty to them is what has induced them to be obedient and loyal to me.” Then [Hishām b. Muḥammad] mentioned the rest of the report along the lines mentioned by ‘Ali b. Muḥammad.

In this year al-Mufaddal campaigned against Bādghis and conquered it.

[Al-Mufaddal’s Conquest of Bādghis]

‘Ali b. Muḥammad mentioned on the authority of al-Mufaddal b. Muḥammad: Al-Ḥajjāj dismissed Yazid and wrote in the year 85 to al-Mufaddal concerning his appointment over Khurasan, which lasted for nine months. He campaigned against Bādghis and conquered it. He took plunder, which he divided among the people: Every man received eight hundred dirhams. Then he cam-
paigned against Akharūn and Shūmān,336 where he was victorious, took plunder, and divided what he had taken among the people. Al-Mufaḍḍal had no treasury; he [simply] gave out to the people when anything came [his way], and, if he took anything as plunder, he divided it among them. Ka'b al-Ashqarī said, in praise of al-Mufaḍḍal (tawīl).337

You see rich and poor from every [tribal] grouping, bands of all sorts heading for al-Mufaḍḍal.

One visitor [comes] hoping for the benefits of his generosity,

while another goes off having had his needs attended to.

If we head for a land other than yours, we shall not find in it a better place to head for nor [shall we find] a place of contentment.

If we enumerate the noblest ones, those who are sagacious,

those who have provided good for themselves [with God], you are the first!

By my life, al-Mufaḍḍal has made an overpowering assault, which has made available the watering places and herbage in Shūmān.

On the battle day of Ibn 'Abbas,338 you received the like of that, and it was for us [as] a sharp sword between the two sides.

All of al-Muhallab's moral qualities have become clear in you,339 you have been clad with the same means of attaining honor as that with which he clad himself—

[He,] your father, who strove as no one else did and passed on a glory that was not falsely claimed.

---

336. To the southeast of Samarqand [see Barthold, Turkestan3, p. 74, for details]; Shaban, [The 'Abbāsid Revolution, p. 62] judges these operations to have been "minor raids."

337. The following verses appear not to occur elsewhere.


339. Taking laka to signify fīka.
In this year Mūsā b. 'Abdallāh b. Khāzim al-Sulamī was killed at al-Tirmidh.340

[Mūsā b. 'Abdallāh's] Going to al-Tirmidh [and His Activities] until He was Killed There

It has been mentioned that the reason for his going to al-Tirmidh was that, when his father, 'Abdallāh b. Khāzim, killed those of the Banū Tamim whom he killed at Fartanā341—an account of his killing of them has been mentioned above342—the bulk of those who had remained with him separated from him. He went out to Nishapur and feared [what] the Banū Tamim [might do] to his baggage343 in Marw. He therefore said to his son Mūsā, "Move my baggage from Marw and cross the Balkh river [that is, the Oxus], so that you may take refuge with one of the kings or in a fortress where you may stay." Mūsā accordingly set off from Marw with two hundred and twenty horsemen. By the time he reached Āmul,344 some down-and-out robbers345 had taken refuge with him, and his party numbered four hundred; [at Āmul] he was joined by [some] men from the Banū Sulaym, including Zur'ah b. 'Alqamah. He then reached Zamm,346 [whose people] fought him, and he defeated them, acquired money, and crossed the river. He then reached Bukhārā and asked its lord for refuge. [The latter] refused, fearing him, and said, "[He is] a murderer, and his companions are like him, people given to war and evil; I do not feel secure from him," and he sent him a present of gold coins and riding animals, and a set of clothes. [Mūsā next] de-

343. The concern about thqāal or athgāl exhibited here and in subsequent instances makes it plain that the "baggage" in question contained items of value [cf. the observation made by Shaban, The 'Abbāsid Revolution, p. 127, n. 2].
344. A town three miles from the left bank of the Oxus, near the crossing on the way from Marw to Bukhārā [Barthold, Turkestan3, p. 80, E², s.v.].
345. So rendering qawm min al-sa'ālik.
346. A town on the left bank of the Oxus, 125 miles upstream of Āmul [Barthold, Turkestan3, p. 80, E², s.v. Āmul].
scended on one of the lords of the people of Bukhārā in Nūqān, and this man said to him, "No good will come to you from staying in this place; the people are afraid of you and do not feel secure from you." He stayed with the dihqān of Nūqān for a few months and then went off looking for [either] a king with whom he might take refuge or a fortress; but he did not come to any place but that [its people] did not want him to stay among them and asked him to move away from them.

`Ali b. Muḥammad said: Then he reached Samarqand and stayed there. Tarkhūn, its king, honored him and allowed him to stay, and he stayed for a long time. Now the people of Soghd have a table on which are put greasy meat, bread, and a ewer of something to drink. On a [particular] day every year that is set out for the Horseman of Soghd, and no one but he may go near it; it is his food on that day. If anyone else eats from it, he fights a duel with him, and the table goes to whichever one kills the other. One of Mūsā's companions said, "What is this table?" and he was told about it and fell silent. Then Mūsā’s companion said, "I shall eat what is on this table, and I shall fight a duel with the Horseman of Soghd; if I kill him, I shall be their Horseman," and he sat and ate what was on it. [The Horseman of Soghd] was told of this and came, much angered, and said, "O Arab, fight a duel with me." The Arab said, "Yes. I don’t want anything other than a duel!" [the Horseman] fought him, and Mūsā’s companion killed him. [At this,] the king of Soghd said [to Mūsā and his companions], "I accommodated you and honored you, and you have killed the Horseman of Soghd. Had I not given you and your companions a safe-conduct, I would kill you. Get out of my territory," and he gave [Mūsā] a gift.

[Mūsā next] reached Kish, and the lord of Kish wrote to Tarkhūn asking him for help. [Tarkhūn] came to him, and Mūsā went out to [Tarkhūn] with a force of seven hundred and fought

---

347. This is what the text says, but Nūqān [Mashhad], to the east of Nishapur, does not fit the context.
348. The Ikhshid of Soghd and the "leader of the native princes" (Barthold, Turkestans, p. 184).
349. Laḥm wadik; on the other hand, Ms. B and Ibn al-Athir read laḥm wadik, "meat and vinegar."
them until evening. Then they abstained from fighting, Mūsā's companions having sustained many wounds. In the morning, Mūsā gave them the order, and they shaved their heads, just as the Khārijīs do,\textsuperscript{351} and cut their tent poles,\textsuperscript{352} just as the [Iranian] foreigners do when they [decide to] fight to the death. Mūsā said to Zur'ah b. 'Alqamah, "Set off to Tarkhūn and try a ruse on him." He came to him, and Tarkhūn said to him, "Why have your companions done what they have done?" He said, "They have chosen to defy death, and what need do you have, O king, of killing Mūsā and [yourself] being killed? You will not get to him before there is killed among you[r] people the like of their number. If you were to kill him and all of them, you would not [thereby] gain good fortune, because he has high standing among the Arabs and no one will govern Khurasan without seeking to avenge his blood. If you get away safely from one [governor], you will not get away safely from another." [Tarkhūn] said, "There is no way that I am going to leave Kish in his hand[s]." [Zur'ah] said, "Well, desist from him, so that he may depart." He desisted, and Mūsā came to al-Tirmidh, in which was a fortress next to the river, looking out over it. Mūsā happened upon one of the dihqāns of al-Tirmidh coming from the fortress, [this] dihqān being someone who was avoiding the Tirmidh Shāh. He said to Mūsā, "The lord of al-Tirmidh is reticent and extremely shy. If you treat him kindly and give him presents, he will let you into his fortress; for he is weak." [Mūsā] said, "Certainly not. I shall ask him to let me into his fortress." He then asked him, and [the Tirmidh Shāh] refused. [At this,] Mūsā used guile on him,\textsuperscript{353} giving him presents and treating him kindly, until relations between them became good and [the Tirmidh Shāh] came out [of his fortress]. They went out hunting together, with Mūsā going to great lengths in treating him kindly. The lord of al-Tirmidh prepared some food and sent to Mūsā, "I want to honor you. So take lunch with me and bring one hundred of your companions." Mūsā chose one hundred of his companions, and they entered [the city] on their horses. When

\textsuperscript{351} For two examples, see Ibn Durayd, Ishtiqāq, p. 217, and Ibn al-Jawzi, Sirat 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz, p. 78.

\textsuperscript{352} So understanding s.f.n.ā.t. akhibiyatihim; see the comments in the Glossarium.

\textsuperscript{353} Reading mākarahu (not mā k.r.h.), with Ibrāhim.
The Events of the Year 85

[the horses] were in the city, they neighed to one another, and the people of al-Tirmidh augured evil and said to them, "Dismount! Dismount!" Then they were brought into a house fifty by fifty and given lunch. When they had finished the lunch, Mūsā reclined, and they said to him, "Get out!" He said, "I shall not [in the future be able to] take a house like this one; I shall not leave it until it is either my house or my grave," and they fought them in the city. A number of the people of al-Tirmidh were killed, the others fled, and [Mūsā and his companions] entered their dwellings. Mūsā took control of the city and said to the Tirmidh Shah, "Go forth! I shall confront neither you nor any of your companions." So the king and the people of the city set forth and went to the Turks, seeking their help. [The Turks] said to them, "A hundred men came in to you and expelled you from your land. We fought them at Kish. We shall not fight these [people again]." Mūsā stayed in al-Tirmidh, and his companions, who numbered seven hundred, came in to him. When his father was killed, he was joined by his father's companions, [they being] four hundred horsemen. He became strong and took to going out and making raids on those who were around him.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: The Turks sent some people to the companions of Mūsā to find out what he was up to. When they arrived, Mūsā said to his companions, "There has to be a stratagem for [dealing with] these [people]."

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: That was [at a time of] the most intense heat. Mūsā then gave an order for fire, and it was kindled; he gave an order to his companions, and they put on winter clothes, and saddlecloths on top of those, and stretched out their hands to the fire as if warming themselves at it. Mūsā [now] gave permission to the Turks [to come in], and they entered and were fearful at what they saw. They said, "Why have you done this?" They said, "We find it cold at this time [of the year], and we find it hot in winter." [The Turks] returned and said, "[They are] jinn; we shall not fight them."

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: The chief of the Turks wanted to campaign against Mūsā. He sent messengers to him, and he

354. In Ibn al-Athir's version, they are in the fortress, and it is the Tirmidh Shah who says what follows.
sent poison together with arrows in musk. He meant by the poison that fighting them was hard; the arrows [represented] war and the musk peace, [and his message was,] “Choose war or peace.” [Mūsā] burned the poison, broke the arrows, and scattered the musk. The [Turks] said, “They don’t want peace. [Mūsā is letting [us] know that fighting them is like fire and that he will break us,” and they did not campaign against them.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Bukayr b. Wishāh, as governor of Khurasan, neither confronted him nor sent anyone against him. Then Umayyah [b. 'Abdallāh b. Khālid b. Asid] came [as governor] and went in person seeking [Mūsā], but Bukayr rebelled against him and renounced allegiance and he returned to Marw. When Umayyah made peace with Bukayr, he stayed put for that year. In the following year, he sent to Mūsā a man from Khuzā’ah with a large force. The people of al-Tirmidh went back to the Turks and asked for their help, but [the Turks] refused. [The people of al-Tirmidh] then said to them, “Some of their own people have campaigned against them and have besieged them; if you help us against them, we shall overcome them.” [At this,] the Turks went with the people of al-Tirmidh in a large force, and Mūsā [found himself] surrounded by the Turks and the Khuzā’ī. He would fight the Khuzā’ī in the first part of the day and the Turks in the latter part; and [in this way] he fought them for two or three months. Mūsā then said to ‘Amr b. Khālid b. Ḥuṣayn, who was a horseman, “This has gone on long enough. I have decided to make a night attack on the camp of the Khuzā’ī, for they think that they are safe at night. What do you think?” ['Amr] said, “A night action would be good, but let it be against the foreigners, for the Arabs are more wary, faster at repelling, and braver at night than the foreigners. So attack them by night, and I hope that God will help us against them. Then we shall be free to fight the Khuzā’ī, we being in the fortress and they being in the open; they are no abler in fortitude or more knowledgeable in war than we are.”

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Mūsā decided to make a night attack on the Turks. When a third of the night had passed, he set out with four hundred [men] and said to ‘Amr b. Khālid, “Set out

355. For the background on Bukayr and Umayyah [a Tamimi and a Qurashi, respectively], see Shaban, The ‘Abbāsid Revolution, pp. 44–47.
after us and keep near us. When you hear our *takbīr* (that is, our call "God is great"), make one yourselves." He went along the riverbank until he was upstream of the camp. Then he went by way of the district of Guftān,\(^{356}\) and, when he came near to their camp, he made his companions into "fourths" (*arbāʾ*). Then he said, "Circle their camp, and, when you hear our *takbīr*, make one yourselves," and he went on, with ‘Amr in front of him and [the others] going behind him. When the lookouts saw them, they said, "Who are you?" They replied, "People passing through."

[‘Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: When they had passed the lookout post, they split up, circled the camp, and made a *takbīr*; the next thing the Turks knew was swords falling [upon] them, and they were stirred up, [began] killing one another, and fled. There were sixteen Muslim casualties. [The Muslims] then took possession of their camp and acquired arms and money. In the morning, the Khuzāʿī and his companions were shaken by that, feared a similar night attack, and were on their guard. ‘Amr b. Khālid said to Mūsā, "You'll only win with a stratagem. They have supplies, and they are numerous. Let me go to them. Maybe I shall gain the opportunity to be alone with their leader and kill him. [First] give me a beating." [Mūsā] said, "You [want to] rush into being beaten and to expose yourself to being killed?" [‘Amr] said, "As for exposing myself to being killed, I do that every day. As for being beaten, how easy that is in comparison with what I intend." So [Mūsā] gave him a beating, fifty lashes, and [‘Amr] left Mūsā's camp and went to the camp of the Khuzāʿī, seeking safety. He said, "I am one of the people of the Yemen, and I was with ‘Abdallāh b. Khāzīm. When he was killed, I went to his son and stayed with him. I was the first to go to him. When I reached him, he suspected me, acted in a partisan fashion against me,\(^{357}\) and disliked me, saying to me, 'Your partisanship is with the enemy, and you are a spy of his.' He beat me, and I was not sure that I would not be killed; so I fled." The Khuzāʿī gave him a safe-conduct, and he stayed with him.


---

356. If this is how k.Ōṭān is to be rendered; Barthold [Turkestan\(^3\), p. 74] says that it "was probably in the southern part of the Surkhān valley, or somewhere west of it, in the present district of Shirabad." Shaban [‘Abbāsid Revolution, p. 64] opts for "Kītān [Kīfāyīn]" (?).

357. So rendering *ta’assaba* ‘alayya.
the Khuzā‘ī’s presence] when he was unoccupied, and he saw no weapon with him. He said, as though offering him good advice, “May God cause you to prosper, someone like you, in a situation like yours, should at no time be without a weapon.” [The Khuzā‘ī] said, “I have a weapon with me,” and he lifted the top part of his bedding, and there was an unsheathed sword. Ṛmr took it, struck him, and killed him; [then] he set off, riding his horse. [The Khuzā‘ī’s companions only] realized what [.chomp] had been up to when he was far away. They sought him, but he gave them the slip and reached Mūsā. That army [of the Khuzā‘ī] then broke up: Some of them crossed the river, while others came to Mūsā seeking safe-conduct, which he granted.

Umayyah [b. ‘Abdallah] did not send anyone against [Ibn Khāzim]. ['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Umayyah was dismissed, and al-Muhallab came as amīr. He did not confront Ibn Khāzim and said to his sons, “Beware of Mūsā. You will remain governors of this march as long as this heavy-bellied358 [fellow] stays in his place. If he is killed, the first person to come against you as amīr of Khurasan will be a man from Qays.” Al-Muhallab died without having sent anyone against [Mūsā]. Then Yazid b. al-Muhallab took over, and he did not confront him. Al-Muhallab had beaten Ḩurayth b. Quṭbah al-Khuzā‘ī, and [Ḥurayth] and his brother Thābit had gone off to Mūsā. When Yazid b. al-Muhallab became governor, he took their property and their womenfolk and killed their uterine brother al-Ḥārith b. Munqidh, together with an affine of theirs who was the husband of Umm Ḥafs, the daughter of Thābit. What Yazid had done reached [Ḥurayth and Thābit].

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Thābit went to Ṭarkhūn and complained to him of what [Yazid] had done to him. [Now] Thābit was much loved among the non-Arabs, enjoying wide renown; they honored him and guarded themselves [from anything untoward] by [invoking his name]. If one them made a compact which he wished to fulfill, he would swear by the life of Thābit and would not break his word. Ṭarkhūn became angry on his account and gathered Nīzak, al-Sabal,359 and the people of Bukhāra and al-

358. So rendering thatt, which can also mean “thin-bearded”; Ibn al-Athīr gives thabit, “stupid.”
359. The title of the ruler of al-Khuttal (Marquart, Ėrānšahr, pp. 69–70, 302).
The Events of the Year 85

Ṣaghāniyān, they went, together with Thābit, to Mūsā b. 'Abdallāh. [In the meantime,] there had fetched up with Mūsā the routed troops of 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. al-ʿAbbās from Herat, the routed troops of Ibn al-Ashʿath from Iraq and the vicinity of Kābul, and Khurasani Tamīmīs who had been among those fighting Ibn Khāzīm in the civil war. Gathered with Mūsā were eight thousand [men] from Tamīm, Qays, Rabīʿah, and Yemen. Thābit and Ḥurayth said to him, "Go until you cross the river and expel Yazīd b. al-Muhallab from Khurasan; then we shall make you governor. Ṭarkhūn, Nīzak, al-Sabal, and the people of Bukhārā are with you." He intended to do so, but his companions said to him, "Thābit and his brother acted unfaithfully to Yazīd. If you expel Yazīd from Khurasan and they become safe, they will take charge and overcome you. So stay where you are." He accepted their opinion and stayed at al-Tirmidh. He said to Thābit, "If we expel Yazīd, another governor of 'Abd al-Malik's will come; we shall [instead] expel Yazīd's governors in Transoxania, in the areas adjacent to us, and the region will be ours to devour." Thābit was satisfied with that and expelled those of Yazīd's governors who were in Transoxania. The revenues were transported to them, and they and Mūsā became strong. Ṭarkhūn, Nīzak, the people of Bukhārā, and al-Sabal departed to their territories; Ḥurayth and Thābit ran affairs, while Mūsā was no more than nominal amir. Mūsā's companions said to him, "We don't see that you are any more than nominal amir, while Ḥurayth and Thābit are running affairs. Kill them and take charge." But he refused, saying, "I am not going to betray them after they have strengthened my rule." They, however, envied [Ḥurayth and Thābit] and pressed Mūsā in respect of them until they turned his heart [against them], making him fearful of their treachery. He [then] intended to help them in rising against Thābit and Ḥurayth, and matters became confused. While this was going on, there came against them the Hephthalites, the Tibetans, and the Turks, advancing in [an army numbering] seventy thousand, not counting those without

---

360. See EI², s.v. Ḍaghāniyān.
361. Preferring the variant khāʾīnānī lī- to the reading khāʾīfānī lī-.
362. So rendering al-amwāl.
363. Al-Hayāṭilah [see EI², s.v.].
helmets and coats of mail and those with plain helmets, but counting only those with tapering helmets.365

['Ali b. Muhammad] continued: Ibn Khazim went out to the suburb of the city with three hundred cataphracts. A chair was set up for him, and he sat upon it.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Tarkhun ordered that the wall of the suburb be breached. Mūsā said, "Let them be," and they demolished [part of] it, and the first of them entered. Mūsā said, "Let them become [more] numerous," and he started to rotate an ax in his hand. When they had become numerous, he said, "Now resist them," and he rode and attacked them and fought them until he expelled them through the breach. Then he returned and sat on the chair. The king urged his companions to return, but they refused. He said, "This is Satan! He who wishes to look at Rustam should look at the man on the chair . . . ;366 and he who refuses should advance upon him." Then the non-Arabs moved to the district of Guftān.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: [The Turks and their allies) made a raid on Mūsā’s cattle; he grieved, did not eat, and began to play with his beard. Then he went by night with seven hundred [men] by way of a river[bed] which led to their trench; [this riverbed] had plants on both sides367 and contained no water. In the morning, they were at the camp [of the enemy]. [Mūsā’s] cattle came out, and [Mūsā himself] pounced on them and led them off, some of the [enemy] followed him and Sawwār, a mawla of Mūsā’s, turned on them and speared one of them and felled him. [The others] turned back from them, and Mūsā was safe with the cattle.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: The non-Arabs renewed the fighting in the morning. Their king stood on a hill with ten thousand perfectly equipped [men]. Mūsā said [to his followers], "If you remove these [enemies], the rest will be [as] nothing." Ḥurayth b. Quṭbah headed for them, fought them in the first part of the day, and pressed them hard until he removed them from the hill; [he] was on that day shot in the forehead by an arrow. They abstained from fighting [for a time], and Mūsā then staged a

365. So rendering baydah dhāt qūnus [see Lane, Lexicon, p. 1440a, s.v. sunbuk]; the exaggeration is obvious.
366. The text seems to be corrupt here.
367. Reading hāfatahayhi (rather than hāf.y.t.h), as proposed in the Addenda et Emendanda.
night attack. His brother, Khāzīm b. ‘Abdallāh b. Khāzīm, charged until he reached their king’s candle bearers and stabbed one of them with the pommel of his sword; his horse was speared, ran off with him, and threw him into the Balkh river, where he drowned, wearing two coats of mail. The non-Arabs were killed quickly, and those who escaped were in a bad way. Hurayth b. Quṭbāh died after two days and was buried in his yurt.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Mūsā set off, and they carried the heads to al-Tirmidh, where they made them face each other in two pyramids. News of the battle reached al-Ḥajjāj, who said, “Praise be to God, who has helped the hypocrites against the unbelievers.” Mūsā’s companions said, “We had had enough of Hurayth being in charge; [now] relieve us of Thābit.” [Mūsā] refused. [Meanwhile,] some of what they were getting up to reached Thābit, who infiltrated into Mūsā’s service Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. Marthad al-Khuẓā’i, the paternal uncle of Naṣr b. ‘Abd al-Hamīd, [who was later] Abū Muslim’s governor of al-Rayy. [Thabit] said to him, “Beware of speaking Arabic. If they ask you where you are from, say, ‘From the captives of al-Bāmiyān.’” [This Muḥammad, then,] used to serve Mūsā and carry news about them to Thābit. [Thābit] said to him, “Remember what they say.” Thābit was on his guard and used not to sleep until the young man returned. He ordered some of his shākiriyyah to guard him and spend the night with him in his house, they being accompanied by some Arabs.

The people put pressure on Mūsā and vexed him. One night he said to them, “You are going on at me too much. In what you desire [lies] your [own] destruction. You have wearied me. On what pretext will you murder him? I shall not act treacherously toward him.” Nuḥ b. ‘Abdallāh, the brother of Mūsā, said, “Leave him to us. When he comes to you in the morning, we shall take

368. Taking shama’ah to be the plural of shāmi’, as proposed in the Glossarium and the Addenda et Emandanda.
369. Ibn al-Athir reads al-turk where Ṭabarî has al-‘ajam.
370. So rendering qubbah here and in what follows in the contexts of Khurasan and Transoxania (i.e., the round tent-like structure used by Turkomans and others).
371. Literally, “two pavilions” (jawsaqayn).
372. This would have been in the early 130s (747ff.), al-Ṭabarî makes no other reference to him.
373. EI², s.v.
him off to one of the houses and behead him in it before he can reach you.” [Mūsā] said, “By God, it will be the end of you, and you know best.” The young man heard [all this], and he went to Thābit and told him. [Thābit] set off on that same night with twenty horsemen and went on his way. In the morning, [Mūsā’s men] found that he had gone and did not know how they had been outmaneuvered. [Then] they missed the young man and knew that he had spied on them for [Thābit].

Thābit reached H.shwrā374 and stopped at the city. There came out to him many people, both Arab and non-Arab. [When] Mūsā [learned of this, he] said to his companions, “You have opened a door against yourselves; close it,” and [he] went against [Thābit]. Thābit came out to him in a large group and fought them. Mūsā ordered that the stockade be set on fire, and he fought them until [his men] forced Thābit and his companions to take refuge in the city and to fight [to repel] them from the city. Raqabah b. al-Hurr al-‘Anbari375 advanced, plunged through the fire, and reached the door of the city. One of Thābit’s companions was standing there guarding his companions, and [Raqabah] killed him. Then he returned, passing through the blazing fire, which caught the edges of a piece of dyed clothing he was wearing; he cast it from him and stopped. Thābit fortified himself in the city, and Mūsā stayed in the suburb.

When he was traveling to H.shwrā, Thābit had sent [word] to Ṭarkhūn, and Ṭarkhūn [now] came to help him. [News of the advent of Ṭarkhūn reached Mūsā, who returned to al-Tirmidh. [Thābit and Ṭarkhūn went after him, accompanied by]376 the people of Kish, Nasaf, and Bukhārā, with [an army of] eighty thousand [men]. They besieged Mūsā and cut off his supplies, until [he and his followers] were severely affected. In going against Mūsā, the companions of Thābit used to cross a river in

374. Thus, too, in al-Balādhuri, Futūḥ, p. 418; Kh.shwrā in Ms. P. This place remains to be identified; Shaban [The ’Aṭṭār̄id Revolution, p. 60] has it from Wellhausen that this was Khushwārāgh [Wellhausen, Kingdom, p. 425, in fact says Khushwarāgh], but in neither case are we told where that may have been.

375. Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, register.

376. This rendering is inspired by Ibn al-Athīr, where “Mūsā returned to al-Tirmidh” is followed by wa-aqābala Thābit wa-Ṭarkhūn wa-ma’ahumā; in al-Ṭabarī, however (and similarly in al-Balādhuri, Futūḥ, p. 418.17), it is followed simply by a’ānahu, which suggests (wrongly, judging by the context) that the people of Kish, etc., were supporting Mūsā.
the daytime and go back to their camp at night. One day, Raqabah, who was a friend of Thabit’s and had advised the companions of Musa against doing what they had done, came out, wearing a tunic of silk (khazz), and called Thabit to a duel. [Thabit] said to him, “How are you, O Raqabah?” [Raqabah] said, “Do not ask about a man wearing a garment made of silk in the most intense of the summer heat,” and he complained to him of their condition. [Thabit] said, “You brought this upon yourselves.” [Raqabah] said, “I did not [willingly] take part in what they did. I did not like what they wanted.” Thabit said, “Where will you be until there comes to you what has been foreordained for you?” [Raqabah] said, “I shall be with al-Muhill al-Tufawi, a man from [the] Ya’sur [branch] of Qays”; al-Muhill was a drinker, and Raqabah stopped with him.

[‘Ali b. Muhammad] continued: Thabit sent five hundred dirhams to Raqabah via ‘Ali b. al-Muhajir al-Khuza‘i, [together with the message], “We have [some] merchants coming from Balkh. When it reaches you that they have arrived, send [word] to me and what you need will come to you.” ‘Ali came to al-Muhill’s door, and there were Raqabah and al-Muhill sitting with a large bowl of drink between them, together with a table on which were chickens and loaves of bread. Raqabah was tousle-headed and wearing a red waist wrapper around his middle. [‘Ali] handed him the bag [of dirhams] and delivered the message. [Raqabah] did not speak to him. He took the bag, gestured to him with his hand to get out, and did not speak to him.

[‘Ali b. Muhammad] continued: Raqabah was a heavily built [man], sunken-eyed, prominent-cheeked, and gap-toothed, with a face [round? flat?] like a shield.

[‘Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: When Musa’s companions were in dire straits and the siege had intensified, Yazid b. Huzayl said, “These people will stay on [besieging us] with Thabit [as long as he is alive], and it is better to be killed than to die of hunger. By God, I shall murder Thabit or die [in the attempt],” and he went out to Thabit and asked him for a safe-conduct. Zuhayr said to [Thabit], “I know more about this [man] than you do. He has not come to you because he likes you or because he

fears you. He has come to you in order to act treacherously. Beware of him and leave him to me.” [Thabit] said, “I am not going to take measures against a man who has come to me without my knowing whether he is like that or not.” [Zuhayr] said, “Let me take hostages from him,” and Thabit sent [word] to Yazid, saying, “As for myself, I am not given to suspecting a man of treachery after he has asked for a safe-conduct, [but] your cousin knows more about you than I. So see to what he requires in order to deal with you.” Yazid said to Zuhayr, “O Abū Saʿīd, you are raising objections out of envy. Don’t you think I have been humbled enough already! I had to leave Iraq and my family and came to Khurasan as you see. Doesn’t [our] kinship make you sympathetic?” Zuhayr said to him, “By God, if I had had my own way, this would not have happened, but[,] as it is[,] give us your sons Qudāmah and al-Daḥḥāk as hostages.” [Yazid] handed them over to them, and they were held by Zuhayr.

[Ali b. Muhammad] continued: Yazid kept looking out for inadvertency on the part of Thabit, and he was not able to do to him what he desired until one of the sons of Ziyād al-Qaṣīr al-Khuzaʿī died. News of his death reached [Ziyād] from Marw, and Thabit courteously went out to console [him], accompanied by Zuhayr and a group of his companions, including Yazid b. Huzayl. The sun had set. When [Thabit] reached the river of al-Ṣaghāniyān, Yazid b. Huzayl and two men who were with him tarried, Zuhayr and his companions having gone ahead. Yazid then drew near to Thabit and smote him: The sword bit into his head and reached the brain.

[‘Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Yazid and his two companions cast themselves into the river of al-Ṣaghāniyān. [Zuhayr and his companions] shot at them: Yazid escaped by swimming, while his two companions were killed. Thabit was carried to his house. In the morning, Ṭarkhūn sent [word] to Zuhayr, “Bring me the two sons of Yazid,” and he brought them. Zuhayr [first] presented al-Daḥḥāk b. Yazid, and [Ṭarkhūn] killed him and threw [his cadaver] and his head into the river. [Zuhayr then] presented Qudāmah so that [Ṭarkhūn] might kill him. [Qudāmah] turned and the sword hit his chest instead of cutting [his head off]; [Ṭarkhūn] threw him into the river alive, and he drowned. Ṭarkhūn said, “Their father and his treachery killed them.” Yazid b. Huzayl said, “[In vengeance] for my sons, I shall kill every Khuzaʿī
in the city.” 'Abdallāh b. Budayl b. 'Abdallāh b. Budayl b. Warqā’, who was one of the routed troops of Ibn al-Ash’ath who had come to Mūsā, said to him, “If you want to do that to Khuzā’ah, it will be difficult for you.” Thābit lived for seven days and then died. Yazīd b. Huzayl was a brave and generous [man], a poet, who governed the island of Ibn Kāwān378 in the days of Ibn Ziyād. He said [tawil]:

I used to call upon God secretly and sincerely
grant me taxes and legal income379
So that I might thereby leave Ṭalḥah380 forgotten
and my gifts and actions might thereby be praised.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: After the death of Thābit, Ṭarkhūn took charge of the non-Arabs, and Žuhary took charge of the companions of Thābit. However, they were weak, and this became well known. Mūsā decided to attack them by night, and a man came and informed Ṭarkhūn [of this]. Ṭarkhūn laughed and said, “Mūsā is too weak to enter his [own] privy [unaided]? How can he stage a night attack against us? You have lost courage. No one will guard the camp tonight.” When a third of the night had elapsed, Mūsā set out with eight hundred [men] whom he had mobilized in the daytime and had made into “fourths.”

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: He placed in charge of one fourth Raqabah b. al-Hurr, over another his brother Nūḥ b. 'Abdallāh b. Khāzim, over [the third] Yazīd b. Huzayl, while he himself was over the fourth. He said to them, “When you enter their camp, spread out. Let no one of you pass anything without striking it.” The entered their camp from four directions and did not pass any riding animal or man or tent or sack without striking it. Nizak heard the commotion, donned his arms, stood in the dark night, and said to 'Ali b. al-Muhājir al-Khuzā‘ī, “To to Ṭarkhūn, let him know where I am, and ask him what he thinks I should do with [Mūsā].” ['Ali] came to Ṭarkhūn and lo, he was in a tent, sitting on a chair, and his shākiriyyah381 had lit fires before

378. I.e., Abarkāwān or Barkāwān or Kāwān or Banī Kāwān; also called Lāfṭ and now Qishm, being a large island near the mouth of the Persian Gulf (see Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, vol. II, p. 79, and vol. III, p. 837; Le Strange, Lands of the Eastern Caliphate, p. 261); EF, s.v. Kishm.
379. Reading wa-ḥalālī (instead of wa-rijālī), with Ms. P.
380. See n. 241 above.
381. See above, n. 140.
him. ['Ali] delivered Nizak's message to him, and [Tarkhûn] said, "Sit." He was raising his eyes in the direction of their camp and the noise when Mahmiyâh al-Sulami came saying, "Hâ', mîm,"382 they will not be given victory."383 The shâkirîyyah scattered, and Mahmiyâh entered the tent. Tarkhûn rose to [resist] him, and [Mahmiyâh] came to him quickly. [Tarkhûn] smote him and put him out of action.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said; Tarkhûn wounded him in the chest with the sharp edge of [his] sword, felled him, returned to his chair, and sat on it; Mahmiyâh went out at a run.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: The shâkirîyyah returned, and Tarkhûn said to them, "You fled from a [single] man. Do you think, if it had been a fire, it would have burned more than one of you?" No sooner had he finished speaking than his slave girls entered the tent and the shâkirîyyah fled out. He said to the slave girls, "Sit," and to 'Ali b. al-Muhâjjir, "Stand."

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: The two of them went out and lo, there was Nûh b. Abdallâh b. Khâzîm in the ancillary tent. They wheeled about for a time and exchanged a couple of blows, but did nothing, and Nûh fled. Tarkhûn followed [Nûh] and wounded his horse in its flank. [The horse] reared up, and both it and Nûh fell into the river of al-$aghâniyân. Tarkhûn returned with his sword dripping with blood. He and 'Ali b. al-Muhâjjir went into the ancillary tent and then into the main tent. Tarkhûn said to the slave girls, "Go back," and they went back into the ancillary tent. Tarkhûn sent [word] to Mûsâ, "Restrain your companions. We are moving out in the morning." Mûsâ returned to his camp, and in the morning Tarkhûn and all the non-Arabs moved out. Each people returned to its country.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: The people of Khurasan used to say, "We have never seen or heard of the like of Mûsâ b. 'Abdallâh b. Khâzîm. He fought along with his father for two years. Then he went roaming about in the land of Khurasan until he came to a king and relieved him of his city and expelled him from it. Then

---

382. Seven sūrahs of the Qur'ān begin with this pair of "mysterious letters" [see EI², s.v. al-Kur'ân [vol. V, pp. 412ff.]], but the words that follow it here are not matched by the words that follow it there.

Arab and Turkish troops went to [fight] him, and he fought the Arabs in the first part of the day and the non-Arabs in the latter part of the day. He stayed in his fortress for fifteen years. Transoxania was his and no one strove with him to gain mastery over it.”  

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: In Qūmis there was a man called ' Abdallāh at whose place young men (fityān) would gather to keep one another company at his trouble and expense. [This man] incurred a debt, and he came to Mūsā b. ' Abdallāh, who gave him four thousand [dirhams]; he took them to his companions. The poet said, reproving a man called Mūsā (tawił): 

You are not Moses, when he confided in his God, 

nor [are you] the giver [to] young men, 384 Mūsā b. Khāzīm.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: When Yazīd [b. al-Muhallab] was dismissed and al-Mufaḍḍal took over, [al-Mufaḍḍal] wanted to enjoy al-Ḥajjāj's favor by fighting Mūsā b. ' Abdallāh. He sent out 'Uthmān b. Mas'ūd, 385 whom Yazīd had imprisoned, saying to him, “I want to send you against Mūsā b. ' Abdallāh.” ['Uthmān said, “By God, he has killed people related to me without my having obtained revenge. I seek revenge for Thābit—the son of my paternal aunt—and for the Khuzā‘ī. The treatment meted out to me and my family by your father and your brother has not been good. You [pl.] have imprisoned me and scared away my cousins and appropriated their property.” Al-Mufaḍḍal said to me, “Put [all] this aside. Go and exact your revenge,” and he sent him off with three thousand [men] saying to him, “Order a crier to cry out, ‘Whoever joins us will have a regular place in the army.’” 386

He had that called out in the market, and people hastened to him. Al-Mufaḍḍal wrote to [his brother] Mudriḵ, who was at Balkh, instructing him to go with ['Uthmān]. ['Uthmān] set forth and, when he was at Balkh, he went out one night touring the camp and heard a man say, “I have killed him, by God.” [At this,] he returned to his companions and said, “Surely I shall kill Mūsā, by

384. The text reads al-quaynāt, “singing girls,” while the Addenda et Emendanda propose al-qinyān, which is presumably to be regarded as a misprint for al-fityān (“young men”) in view of the preceding story.


386. So rendering fa-lahu diwan.
the Lord of the Ka'bah.'"

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: In the morning he set off from Balkh—Mudrik went out sluggishly with him—crossed the river and stopped with fifteen thousand [men] at an island at al-Tirmidh which is today called the Island of 'Uthmān, on account of [his] stopping there. He wrote to al-Sabal and to Ṭakhirūn, and they came to him. They besieged Mūsā and rendered him and his companions in straitened circumstances. Mūsā went out at night to Guftān, supplied himself with provisions from it, and then returned and remained for two months in a straitened condition. 'Uthmān had dug a trench and was watching out for a night attack, so that Mūsā was not able to catch him off guard. [Mūsā] said to his companions, "How much longer? Let us make a sortie and make our battle day one of either victory or death"; and he said, "Head for Soghd and the Turks." Then he made a sortie, having left al- Naḍr b. Sulaymān b. 'Abdallāh b. Khāzim in the city; he had said to him, "If I am killed, do not hand the city over to 'Uthmān; hand it over to Mudrik b. al-Muhallab." He sortied and placed a third of his companions opposite 'Uthmān, saying [to them], "Do not engage him unless he fights you." He [himself] headed for Ṭakhirūn and his companions, and fought them gallantly. Ṭakhirūn and the Turks were defeated, and [Mūsā and his men] took their camp and began to carry it off.

Muʿāwiyyah b. Khālid b. Abī Barzah looked at 'Uthmān, who was on a non-Arabian horse belonging to Khalīd b. Abī Barzah al-Aslami, and said, "Dismount, O amir." But Khalīd said, "Do not dismount, Muʿāwiyyah brings ill luck.

The Soghdians and the Turks returned the charge and interposed themselves between Mūsā and the fortress. He fought them, and [his horse] was hamstrung and he fell. He said to a mawlā of his, "Carry me." [The Mawlā] said, "Death is disagreeable. Ride mounted behind me. If we escape, we shall both escape; if we perish, we shall both perish."

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: [Mūsā] mounted behind him. 'Uthmān looked at him when he jumped up and said, "A jump [by] Mūsā, by the Lord of the Ka'bah." [Mūsā was] wearing a helmet of his which was adorned with red silk (khazz) and had a blue sapphire at its top.

387. According to Barthold (Turkestan³, p. 75), this is "undoubtedly Aral-Payghambar."
'Uthmān came out of the trench and [he and his men] put Mūsā’s companions to flight. Then ['Uthmān] headed for Mūsā. Mūsā’s riding animal stumbled, and he and his mawla fell. ['Uthmān and his men] ran up to him, gathered around him, and killed him. 'Uthmān’s crier called out, “Do not kill anyone you encounter; take him prisoner.”

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: The companions of Mūsā scattered. Some of them were taken prisoner and were paraded before 'Uthmān. When he was brought an Arab prisoner, he said, “Our blood is licit for you and your blood illicit for us,” and he ordered that he be killed. When he was brought a mawla prisoner, he abused him and said, “These Arabs fight me. Why did you not become angry on my account?” and he ordered that he be beaten. He was rough and coarse. No prisoner greeted him on that day apart from 'Abdallah b. Budayl b. 'Abdallāh b. Budayl b. Warqā—whose mawla he was; when ['Uthmān] saw him, he turned away from him and gestured with his hand that he should be released—and Raqabah b. al-Ḥurr, when he was brought [the latter], he looked at him and said, “There was no great sin against us from this [fellow]; he was a friend of Thābit’s and was with people to whom he acted loyally. The wonder is that you took him prisoner.” They said, “His horse was wounded, and he fell off into a deep hole and was taken prisoner.” ['Uthmān] set him free and gave him a mount, saying to Khalid b. Abi Barzah, “Let him stay with you.”

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: The person who despatched Mūsā b. 'Abdallāh was Wāsil b. Ṭaysalah al-'Anbarī. One day 'Uthmān looked at Zur’ah b. ‘Alqamah al-Sulami, ‘Alqamah al-Sulami, al-Ḥajjāj b. Marwān, and Sinān al-A’rābi, [who were standing] to one side, and said to them, “You have a safe-conduct.” The people suspected that he did not give them a safe-conduct until they wrote to him [and made an arrangement with him].


388. Ibn al-Athir makes it clear that the mawlās were set free after being beaten.
handed [the city] over to 'Uthmān. Al-Muṣafāḍal wrote of the conquest to al-Ḥajjāj. Al-Ḥajjāj said, "What an astonishing fellow Ibn Bahlah is! I order him to kill Ibn Samurah, and he writes to me that he is at death's door," and he [then] writes to me that he has killed Mūsā b. 'Abdallāh b. Khāzīm." 391

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: Mūsā was killed in the year 85. Al-Bakhtāri392 mentioned that Maghra b. al-Mughīrah b. Abī Ṣufrāḥ killed Mūsā. He said [tawīl]:

The cavalry crushed Khāzīm, Nūḥ, and Mūsā at al-Tirmidh, as if crushed under the[ir] chests.

One of the army struck Mūsā’s leg. When Qutaybah became governor, he was told about him and said, "What induced you to [do] what you did to the young man of the Arabs after his death?" [The man] said, "He had killed my brother." [Qutaybah] gave the order, and [the man] was killed in front of him.

In this year 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān wanted to remove his brother 'Abd al-'Azīz [from the succession]. 393

['Abd al-Malik’s Desire to Remove His Brother from the Succession]

Al-Wāqīḍi mentioned that 'Abd al-Malik intended that [removal] and Qabiṣah b. Dhu‘ayb 394 advised him against it, saying, "Do not do this; you will raise a rebellious voice against yourself. Maybe death will come to you and you will be relieved of him.” 'Abd al-Malik desisted from that, while yet yearning in his heart to remove ['Abd al-'Azīz]. [Then] there entered into his presence Rawḥ b. Zīnbā’ al-Judhāmī, 395 who was the person most respected by 'Abd al-Malik. He said, "O Commander of the Faithful, if you remove him, there will be no discord." ['Abd al-

390. Reading li-mā bi-hi in place of li-ma‘ābihi.
391. Ibn al-Athīr adds at this point, “the killing of Mūsā did not please him because he was from Qays.”
392. Correctly proposed in the Addenda et Emendanda in preference to the form given in the text.
394. ‘Abd al-Malik’s secretary and brother-in-law [Crone, Slaves on Horses, p. 128].
395. Ibid., pp. 99–100 [where the form “Zīnbā’” is wrongly preferred].
Malik said, "Do you think so, O Abū Zur'ah?" He said, "Yes, by God. I shall be the first to acquiesce in that." ['Abd al-Malik] said, "You advise me well, God willing."

[Al-Waqidi] said: While this was going on—and 'Abd al-Malik and Rawl b. Zinbā' had fallen asleep—Qabīshah b. Dhu'ayb entered into their presence at night. 'Abd al-Malik had previously instructed his chamberlains, "Qabīshah is not to be kept from me, whatever time he may come, by night or by day, whether I am unoccupied or have a man with me. Even if I am with the women, he is to be brought into the session and I am to be informed of his position," and he would come in. He was in charge of the seal and the coinage; reports came to him before [they came to] 'Abd al-Malik, and he would read letters before him; he would bring a letter to 'Abd al-Malik unrolled and ['Abd al-Malik] would read it—[all of this] being in honor of Qabīshah. [Qabīshah] entered into ['Abd al-Malik's] presence, greeted him, and said, "May God reward you, O Commander of the Faithful in respect of your brother!" He said, "Has he died?" Qabīshah said, "Yes." 'Abd al-Malik said, "We belong to God and to Him we return!" Then he advanced upon Rawl and said to him, "God has sufficed us, O Abū Zur'ah, with what we wanted and what we had decided on. That was contrary to [what] you [advised], O Abu Ishaq." Qabīshah said, "What was that?" and ['Abd al-Malik] informed him of what had taken place. Qabīshah said, "O Commander of the Faithful, the right opinion always lies in patience; in haste there is what there is."397 'Abd al-Malik said, "Many a time there can be much good in haste. You saw the affair of 'Amr b. Sa'id al-Ashdāq. Wasn't haste in that better than patience?

In this year 'Abd al-'Aziz b. Marwān died in Egypt in Jumādā I (May–June 704). 'Abd al-Malik assigned his governorship to his son 'Abdallāh b. 'Abd al-Malik and put him in charge of Egypt.

As for al-Madā'ini, he said in among what was related to us by Abū Zayd on his authority: Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to 'Abd al-Malik commending to him the oath of allegiance to al-Walid [as heir to the caliphate], and he sent in that regard a delegation led by 'Imrān b.

---

396. Ājaraka Allāh (fi-), a standard form of condolence.
397. A polite expression of objection or contradiction [see Lane, Lexicon, p. 2466c].
'Imrān b. ʿĪsām al-ʿAnazi. 'Imrān stood up and gave an address, and the delegation spoke, and they urged ʿAbd al-Malik and asked him to do that. 'Imrān b. ʿĪsām said (waʿfīr):

O Commander of the Faithful, to you we bring from a distance a greeting and a salutation! Acquiesce in what I want concerning your sons. Let your response to me be a noble action for them and a support for us.

If I am to be obeyed in respect of al-Walid, I make the caliphate and rule over to him. He resembles you. Quraysh surround his qubbah, through him the people seek rain from the clouds, And he is like you in piety. He has not acted childishly since the day when he took off his necklaces and amulets.

If you prefer your brother for [the caliphate], we, by your grandfather, are not able to level any accusation against that; But we are on our guard lest, through his sons, the sons by different mothers, we be given poison to drink.

And we fear, if you place dominion among them, clouds coming back to them without water. Let not what you have milked [belong] tomorrow to people [who are such that] after tomorrow, your [own] sons will thirst.

---

400. The Baladhuri and Aghānī variant ukrūmatan seems preferable to ʿādiyyatan or ʿāriyyatan.
401. The Baladhuri and Aghānī variant waʿl-zimāmā seems preferable to waʿl-dhimāmā.
402. Presumably, some sort of audience tent is meant.
403. The Addenda et Emendanda point out that the word maʿtharatan, which is given in the text at this point, "corrupta videtur," and propose instead maʿi-datan, i.e., "we are on our guard against . . . poisoned fare", al-Baladhuri's an nusqā seems preferable.
I swear, if 'Iṣām⁴⁰⁴ were to go beyond me⁴⁰⁵ in that regard, I should not forgive him that. If I gave my brother [something] for the sake of merit, desiring thereby good repute and standing, [That brother] would cause it to return to my sons, to the exclusion of his [own] sons, such [would be the case], or I would find some [other] way of dealing with him. He who has cleavages among his relatives, the cleavage of dominion is the slowest to mend.

'Abd al-Malik said, "O 'Imrān, it is 'Abd al-'Azīz [whom you are talking about]." He said, "Use artifice on him, O Commander of the Faithful!"

'Ali [b. Muḥammad] said: 'Abd al-Malik wanted to have the oath of allegiance to al-Walid [as heir] taken before the Ibn al-Ash'ath affair, because al-Ḥajjāj had sent 'Imrān b. 'Iṣām [to him] in that [connection]. When 'Abd al-'Azīz refused, 'Abd al-Malik turned away from what he wanted until 'Abd al-'Azīz died. When he wanted to remove 'Abd al-'Azīz and have the oath of allegiance taken to his son al-Walid, he wrote to his brother, "If you think it right to make this matter over to your nephew..." ['Abd al-'Azīz] refused, and ['Abd al-Malik] wrote to him, "Well, let [the caliphate] be his after you, for he is the dearest of creation to the Commander of the Faithful." 'Abd al-'Azīz wrote to him, "I see in Abū Bakr b. 'Abd al-'Azīz what you see in al-Walid." 'Abd al-Malik said, "O God, 'Abd al-'Azīz has severed his relationship with me, and I shall sever mine with him," and he wrote to him, "Transport the revenue⁴⁰⁶ of Egypt [to me]." 'Abd al-'Azīz wrote to him, "O Commander of the Faithful, you and I have both reached an age that no one in your family has reached without having only a little time left. Neither of us knows which of us will be reached by death first. If you are minded to make the rest of my life unpleasant for me, [by all means] do [so, but I would prefer otherwise]." [At this,] 'Abd al-Malik became gentle and said, "By my

---

⁴⁰⁴ The poet's father.
⁴⁰⁵ Reading takḥattānī instead of takḥatto'ānī.
⁴⁰⁶ Thus rendering kharāj here; Ibn Kathīr (Bidāyah, vol. IX, p. 59) notes that 'Abd al-'Azīz used to remit nothing.
life, I shall not make the rest of his life unpleasant for him," and he said to his two sons, "If God wants to give you [the caliphate], no one of his servants will be able to avert that"; and he said to his two sons, al-Walid and Sulaymân, "Have you ever committed anything forbidden?" They said, "No, by God." He said, "God is great! You will gain it, by the Lord of the Ka'bah."

[1168] ['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: When 'Abd al-'Azîz refused to acquiesce in what 'Abd al-Malik wanted, 'Abd al-Malik said, "O God, 'Abd al-'Azîz has cut his relationship with me, and I shall cut mine with him," and, when 'Abd al-'Azîz died, the Syrians said, "['Abd al-'Azîz] has returned the Commander of the Faithful's affair to him; he made an invocation against him, and his call was answered."

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: Al-Ḥajjâj wrote to 'Abd al-Malik advising him to use Muḥammad b. Yazîd al-Anṣârî as a secretary. He wrote to him, "If you want a discreet, submissive, easy-tempered, intelligent, worthy, and trusty man, whom you may take for yourself and with whom you may lodge your secret[s] and that which you do not wish to be manifest, then take Muhammad b. Yazid." 'Abd al-Malik [accordingly] wrote to [al-Ḥajjâj], "Convey him to me," and he did so, and 'Abd al-Malik took him as a secretary.

Muḥammad said: No letter reached ['Abd al-Malik] but that he passed it to me, and he concealed nothing but that he informed me of it, while keeping it from the people, nor did he write to any one of his governors but that he told me of it. I was sitting one day, in the middle of the daytime, when an official courier came from Egypt. He said, "[I request] permission to [meet] the Commander of the Faithful." I said, "This is not a time [when] permission [can be given]. Tell me what you have come for." He said, "No." I said, "If you have a letter, give it to me." He said, "No."

[Muḥammad] continued: One of those who were present with me informed the Commander of the Faithful, and he came out and said, "What is this?" I said, "A messenger who has come from Egypt." He said, "Well, take the letter." I said, "He has claimed that he has no letter." He said, "Then ask him what he has come for." I said, "I have asked him, and he did not tell me." He said, "Bring him in," so I took him in and the messenger said, "May God reward you, O Commander of the Faithful, in respect
of ‘Abd al-‘Azīz!” ['Abd al-Malik] said, “We belong to God and to Him we return!” and wept, and [then] remained silent with downcast eyes for a time. Then he said, “May God have mercy on ‘Abd al-‘Azīz! By God, ‘Abd al-‘Azīz has passed on and left us and this life of ours,” and the women and the people of the house wept. Then he summoned me on the next day and said, “‘Abd al-‘Azīz, may God have mercy on him, has gone on his way, and the people must have a waymark and someone to be in charge after me. Who do you think?” I said, “O Commander of the Faithful, the lord of the people and the most pleasing and most worthy of them, al-Walid b. ‘Abd al-Malik.” He said, “You are right, may God grant you success! Who do you think should be after him?” I said, “O Commander of the Faithful, who other than Sulaymān,407 the young man of the Arabs?” He said, “May you be granted success! If we were to leave [the caliphate] to Al-Walid, he would make it over to his sons. Write a covenant for al-Walid and [for] Sulaymān after him!” So I wrote an oath of allegiance to al-Walid and then Sulaymān after him. [At this,] al-Walid became angry with me. He did not put me in charge of anything after I had advised Sulaymān’s succession to him.

‘Ali [b. Muḥammad] said on the authority of Ibn Ju’dubah: ‘Abd al-Malik wrote to Hishām b. Ismā’il al-Makhzūmi to summon the people [of Medina] to the oath of allegiance to al-Walid and Sulaymān. They took the oath of allegiance, apart from Sa’īd b. al-Musayyab,408 who refused and said, “I shall not take the oath of allegiance while ‘Abd al-Malik is alive.” Hishām beat him violently, clad him in haircloth, and sent him to Dhubāb,409 a mountain pass at Medina where they used to kill and crucify410 [people]. He thought that they intended to kill him; but, when they got to that place with him, they brought him back, and he said, “Had I thought that they would not crucify me, I should not have worn haircloth drawers, but I said [to myself], ‘They will crucify me, 407. Literally, “Where will you turn it away from Sulaymān?”
408. For a view of Sa’īd’s role in the nascent religious law of the time, see Juynboll, Muslim Tradition, pp. 15–17 and index.
410. As Nöldeke pointed out (ZDMG 56 [1902], p. 433), Arab crucifixion appears usually to have involved headless cadavers; for an apparent exception, see Ibn A’tham, Futūh, vol. VII, p. 232.
and [the drawers] will cover up [my private parts].’” News [of that] reached ‘Abd al-Malik, who said, “May God remove Hishām from all that is good! He should have summoned [Sa‘īd] to the oath of allegiance, and, on his refusing [to take it], he should [either] have beheaded him or have desisted from him.”

In this year ‘Abd al-Malik had the oath of allegiance taken to al-Walid and then, after him, to Sulaymān, and he made them the two heirs of the covenant of the Muslims. He sent his oath for them out in writing to [all Muslim] territories, and the people took the oath. Sa‘īd b. al-Musayyab[; however,] refrained from that, and Hishām b. Ismā‘il, who was ‘Abd al-Malik’s governor of Medina, beat him, paraded him around, and imprisoned him. ‘Abd al-Malik wrote to Hishām, blaming him for what he had done in that regard. The beating consisted of sixty lashes, and he paraded him as far as the top of the mountain pass [clad] in breeches made of hair.


According to al-Hārith—Ibn Sa‘d—Muḥammad b. ’Umar—[1171] ‘Abdallāh b. Ja‘far and other companions of ours: ‘Abd al-‘Azīz b. Marwān died in Egypt in Jumādā [sic] 84 [sic: May–June or June–July 703]. ‘Abd al-Malik then made the covenant to his two sons al-Walid and Sulaymān, and sent the written oath to them to the territories. His governor [of Medina] at the time was Hishām b. Ismā‘il al-Makhzûmi, who summoned the people to the oath. They took it, and he summoned Sa‘īd b. al-Musayyab to take the oath. He refused, saying, “No. I’ll see.” Hishām b. Ismā‘il gave him sixty lashes and paraded him in breeches made of hair as far as the top of the mountain pass. When they brought him back, he said, “Where are you bringing me back to?” They said, “To prison.” He said, “By God, had I not thought it was going to be crucifixion, I should never have worn these breeches.” [Hishām] returned him to the prison and detained him, and he wrote to
'Abd al-Malik informing him of [Sa'id's] disobedience and what had happened. 'Abd al-Malik wrote to him blaming him for what he had done and saying, "There is more need to draw Sa'id close [to you] by kind treatment of his kindred than to beat him. We know that he has no dissension or disobedience in him."411

The pilgrimage was led in this year by Hishām b. Ismā'īl al-Makhzūmī: Thus it was related to us by Aḥmad b. Thābit on the authority of him who mentioned it on the authority of Ishaq b. ‘Īsā on the authority of Abū Ma’shar; and al-Wāqidi said the same. The governor of the East, together with Iraq, in this year was al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf.

411. Cf. the accounts of this episode given by Khalīfah (Ta’rikh, pp. 290–91).
[The Death of 'Abd al-Malik]

One of [the events that took place] in [this year] was the death of 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān in the middle of Shawwāl (early–mid October).

According to Aḥmad b. Thābit—him who mentioned it on the authority of Ishāq b. 'Īsā—Abū Ma'shar: 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān died on Thursday in the middle of Shawwāl in the year 86. His caliphate [lasted] ten years and five months.

As for al-Ḥārith, he related to me on the authority of Ibn Sa'd on the authority of Muḥammad b. 'Umar, who said: Shurahbīl b. Abī 'Awn related to me on the authority of his father: The people became unanimous about 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān in the year 73 (692–93).

According to Ibn 'Umar—Abū Ma'shar Najih: 'Abd al-Malik died in Damascus on Thursday in the middle of Shawwāl in the year 86. His rule, from the day when the oath of allegiance was taken to him until the day he died, was twenty-one years and one and a half months. For nine of these years, he was fighting Ibn al-Zubayr and was recognized as caliph in Syria; then [he was recognized as caliph] in Iraq, after Muṣ'ab had been killed, and remained [so
recognized) after 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr had been killed. The people were unanimous about him for thirteen years and four months, less seven nights.

As for 'Alī b. Muḥammad al-Madāʿinī, he, according to what Abū Zayd related to us on his authority, said: 'Abd al-Malik died in Damascus in the year 86. His rule [lasted] thirteen years, three months and fifteen days.

Report on His Age When He Died


Al-Wāqidī said: It has been related to us that he died when he was fifty-eight.412

[Abū Jaʿfar] said: The first [of these reports] is more secure, [since] it conforms with his birth date. He was born in the year 26, in the caliphate of ʿUthmān b. ʿAffān, may God be pleased with him, and he witnessed the Yawm al-Dār413 with his father when he was ten.


His Descent and His Teknonym (Kunyah)414


---

412. Cf. al-Baladhūrī [AAC, p. 152], who cites al-Wāqīḍī to the effect that ʿAbd al-Malik was fifty-three when he died.
413. I.e., the occasion of the murder of the Caliph ʿUthmān in Dhū ʿl-Ḥijjah 35 [June 656].
414. See EP, s.v.
You are the son of ‘Ā’ishah, who
cexcelled her fellow women in descent.
She paid no attention to her coevals
and went off on her own sweet way.

His Children and Wives

Among them were al-Walid, Sulaymān, Marwān al-Akbar (who
was without issue), and ‘Ā’ishah: Their mother was Wallādah bt.
Yazīd, Marwān, Mu‘āwiyah (who was without issue), and Umm
Kulthūm: Their mother was ‘Ātikah bt. Yazīd b. Mu‘āwiyah b.
Abī Sufyān.

Hishām, whose mother was Umm Hishām bt. Hishām b. Is-
mā‘īl b. Hishām b. al-Walīd b. al-Mughirah al-Makhzūmī. Al-
Mada‘īnī said: Her name was ‘Ā’ishah bt. Hishām.
Abū Bakr, whose name [was] Bakkār. His mother was ‘Ā’ishah
bt. Mūsā b. Ṭalḥah b. ‘Ubaydallāh.
Al-Ḥakam, who died without issue. His mother was Umm
Fāṭimah bt. ‘Abd al-Malik, whose mother was Umm al-
Mughirah bt. al-Mughirah b. Khālid b. al-‘Ās b. Hishām b. al-
Mughirah.
‘Abdallāh, Maslamah, al-Mundhir, ‘Anbasah, Muḥammad, Sa’īd
al-Khayr, and al-Hajjāj, who [were born] to ummahāt awlād.416
Al-Mada‘īnī said: His wives, other than those we have men-
tioned, were (a) Shaqrā’ bt. Salamah b. Ḥalbas al-Ṭā‘ī, (b) a
daughter of ‘Alī b. Abī Ṭālib’s,417 peace be upon him, and (c)
Umm Abīhā bt. ‘Abdallāh b. Ja‘far.

Al-Mada‘īnī mentioned on the authority of ‘Awānāh and others
than him that Salamah b. Zayd b. Wahb b. Nubātah al-Fahmī
entered into ‘Abd al-Malik’s presence and [‘Abd al-Malik] said to

---

416. Plural of umm walad, a “female slave who has borne a child to her owner” (Schacht, An Introduction to Islamic law, index).
417. Thus, too, in al-Balādhwī, AAC, p. 160, but according to Ibn al-Athir this is untrue.
him, "Which time you have experienced is the noblest and which of the kings the most endowed with perfection?" [Salamah] said, "As for kings, I have only seen those who can be both blamed and praised; as for time, it raises some people and lays others low. Everyone blames his own time, because it wears out the new and renders the young decrepit; all that is in it becomes cut short, except for hope." ['Abd al-Malik] said, "Tell me about Fahm." [Salamah] said, "They are just as the one who said [the following verses] said (khāfīf): 418

Night and day crept over Fahm
b. ‘Amr and they became like old bones.
Their abode became desolate,
after glory, wealth and ease.
Thus does time put an end to people; their abodes remain like traces."

['Abd al-Malik] said, "And which of you says (wāfīr):
I have seen people since time began,
liking him who is rich among men,
Even if the rich man does little good
and is niggardly, giving out small amounts.
I do not know why this should be so,
and what people can hope for from misers.
Is it for material gain? There is no material gain,
nor can he be hoped [to help] when the nights bring disaster."

[Salamah] said, "I."


I have been informed that Ibn al-Qalammas 420 has stigmatized me.

420. Or ‘Amalla, according to Ibn Manẓūr [Lisan al-‘arab, s.vv.], qalammas means “great lord” or “bountiful,” while ‘amallas means “vicious wolf” or “vicious dog.” It is not clear who is meant here.
and who among people is wholly free of fault?

The chief of his people sees the paths of what is right, and the beturbaned leader may see what is right.

[But] who are you? Tell me, who are you, when things are now visible, now concealed?

'Abd al-Malik said, "I did not think that the likes of us would have 'Who are you?' said to him. By God, but for what I know, I should have said something which would have caused you to join your base ancestors and should have had you beaten to death."

'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥajjāj al-Tha'labī said to 'Abd al-Malik (rajaz): 421

O Ibn Abī al-'Āṣ, O best of young men, you are the preserver of the religion if the religion becomes frail.

You are the one who does not let rule be of no avail; Quraysh are rent from you, just as the mill stone is rent [from its pivot]. 422

Abū al-'Āṣ—and in this he excelled— gave his sons advice which they heeded, That they should kindle war and reject what he rejected, [sons] who thrust fiercely at necks and kidneys, And advance boldly with swords to the fighting, and gather together [the like of] what he gathered.

A’shā Banī Shaybān said (kamil): 423

All of Quraysh acknowledge that rule belongs to the sons of Abū al-'Āṣ, To the most pious and deserving of them, as determined by consultation. They defend what they govern,


422. Reading ḥiba and ḥawba in place of ḥiba and ḥawba, as is suggested in the Addenda et Emendanda, the signification being that "you" are the center and "Quraysh" are around "you"; cf. Lane, Lexicon, p. 479b.

and benefit those who are in distress.
Of Quraysh they are the most deserving of it
(i.e., the Caliphate),
in good times and in bad.

'Abd al-Malik said, "I do not know that anyone had a stronger hold on this rule than I. Ibn al-Zubayr prayed long and fasted much, but, because of his avarice, he was not fitted to be a leader."
The Caliphate of al-Walīd b. ʿAbd al-Malik
In this year the oath of allegiance was taken to al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik as caliph. It has been mentioned that, when he had buried his father, he departed from his grave, entered the mosque, and ascended the pulpit. The people gathered to him, and he made an address. He said, "To God we belong and to Him shall we return. God is the One Whose aid is sought against our loss at the death of the Commander of the Faithful. Praise be to God for having bountifully bestowed the caliphate on us. Stand and take the oath of allegiance." The first to stand for the oath was 'Abdallāh b. Hammām al-Salūlī. He stood, saying (rajaz):424

God has given you that which cannot be excelled; heretics have wished to divert it from you, but God insisted on leading it to you, until he invested you with its neck ring.

And he took the oath of allegiance to him. Then the people followed one another in taking the oath. As for al-Wāqidi, he mentioned that al-Walid, when he came back from the burial of his father—he was buried outside Bāb al-

Jābiyah—did not go into his house but [instead] ascended the pulpit of Damascus, praised God and extolled Him as He deserves, and then said, "O people, there can be no hastening of that which God has delayed, nor any delaying of that which God has hastened. Death is part of God's decree, of His prior knowledge, and of what He has written for His prophets and the bearers of His throne. The one charged with this community has taken to the dwelling places of the pious that which justifies for God [whatever He may dispense] by way of severity toward him who occasions doubt and gentleness toward the people of right and merit, [the people who] establish such of the beacon of Islam and its waymarks as God has established, by making the pilgrimage to this House, campaigning against these frontier ways of access, and waging these wars on the enemy of God. He (i.e., 'Abd al-Malik) was neither incapable nor remiss. O people, incumbent upon you are obedience and cleaving to the collective body, for Satan is with the individual. O people, he who reveals to us his inner thoughts (that is, of opposition), we shall smite that in which his eyes are; and he who remains silent will die of his malady [that is, of his rancor]." Then he descended, looked at what there was of the... of the caliphate, and took it for himself. He was a froward tyrant.

In this year Qutaybah b. Muslim arrived in Khurasan as governor on behalf of al-Ḥajjāj.

According to 'Ali b. Muḥammad—Kulayb b. Khalaf—Ṭufayl b. Mirdās al-'Ammī and al-Ḥasan b. Rushayd—Sulaymān b. Kathir al-'Ammī—his paternal uncle: I saw Qutaybah b. Muslim when he arrived in Khurasan in the year 86. He arrived while al-Mufaqdāl, who intended to campaign in Akharūn and Shūmān, was reviewing the army. Qutaybah addressed the people and urged them...
to wage holy war. He said, "God has caused you to alight in this place so that He may make His religion strong, protect sacred things by means of you, and through you increase the abundance of wealth and the meting out of harsh treatment to the enemy. He promised His Prophet, may God bless him, in true speech and an articulate book and said, 'It is He who has sent His Messenger with the guidance and the religion of truth, that He may make it victorious over all religion, though the unbelievers be averse'; and He promised those who strive on His path the best reward and the greatest resource with Him. He said, 'That is because they are smitten neither by thirst, nor fatigue, nor emptiness on the path of God' up to where He says, 'the best of what they were doing.' Then He gave the information concerning him who is killed on His path, that he is alive and provided for. He said, 'Count not those who were slain on God's path as dead, but rather living with their Lord, by Him provided. So fulfill the promise of your Lord and habituate yourselves to the greatest of distances and the sharpest of pains; and beware of looking for easy ways out.'

What Happened to Qutaybah in Khurasan in This Year

Qutaybah then reviewed the army, complete with weapons and animals, and went off, having deputed at Marw over its military affairs (harb) Iyās b. 'Abd Allāh b. 'Amr and over its taxation (kharāj) 'Uthmān b. al-Sa'di. When he was at al-Tālaqān, he was met by the dihqāns of Balkh and some of their dignitaries, who went with him. When he crossed the river, he was met with gifts and a gold key by Tīsh al-A'war, the king of al-$aghāniyān, who invited him to his country. Then there came to him with

---

434. Reading amadd in place of amdā.
435. This address is given in abbreviated form by Ibn A'tham (Futūh, vol. VII, p. 217).
437. Thus too in al-Balādhuri (Futūh, p. 419), "keys," according to Ibn al-Athīr.
438. Following the Addenda et Emendanda (see Marquart, Erānsāhr, pp. 70, 226–27); see also the remarks of Bosworth, "The Rulers of Chaghāniyān in Early Islamic Times," Iran 19 (1981), p. 17, n. 10.
gifts and wealth the king of Guftân,\textsuperscript{440} who [also] invited him to his country. He went with Tish to al-Šaghâniyân and handed his country [back] to him. [Now] the king of Akharûn and Shûmân had been a bad neighbor to Tish, having campaigned against him and hemmed him in; Qutaybah went to Akharûn and Shûmân, which [formed part] of Tûkharistân,\textsuperscript{441} and Ghushtâsbân\textsuperscript{442} came to him and made peace with him in return for tribute which he made over to him. Qutaybah accepted it and was satisfied.

Then he departed for Marw and deputed over the army his brother, Şâlih b. Muslim, he went ahead of his troops and reached Marw before them. After Qutaybah’s return [to Marw], Şâlih conquered . . . .\textsuperscript{443} he was accompanied by Naṣr b. Sayyâr, who showed valor on that day, and he gave him a village called Tinjânah.\textsuperscript{444} Then Şâlih went to Qutaybah, who appointed him over al-Tîrmidh.

[‘Alî b. Muḥammad] said: As for the Bâhilîs, they say [that] Qutaybah arrived in Khurasan in the year 85. He reviewed the army and the total of the coats of mail they counted was 350. He campaigned against Akharûn and Shûmân, and then came back; he embarked in boats, went downstream to Āmul, and left the army, which took the Balkh road to Marw. [News of that] reached al-Ḥajjâj, who wrote to him blaming him and impugning his decision to leave his army. He wrote to him, “If you are on campaign, be at the head of the people; if you come back, be among the last of them and [in] the rear guard.”

\textsuperscript{439} Ignoring the second component of fa-ātā-hu wa-ātā.

\textsuperscript{440} See above, n. 356.

\textsuperscript{441} In this connection, Wellhausen noted [\textit{Arab Kingdom}, p. 430] that, while Tûkharistân was “properly speaking, the mountainous country on both sides of the middle Oxus as far as Badakhshân . . . usually only the country south of the Oxus is understood under this name.” Barthold states simply that “the term ‘Türkhâristân’ was also used in a much broader sense to embrace all the provinces on both shores of the Amu-Darya which were economically dependent on Balkh” [\textit{Turkestan}^3, p. 68].

\textsuperscript{442} Following Marquart’s reading [\textit{Erânsâhr}, p. 226], rather than the form given in the text [cf. Justi, \textit{Iranisches Namenbuch}, p. 372].

\textsuperscript{443} Two unclear components. According to the \textit{Addenda et Emendanda}, the first of these is to be read as Bâsârâ or Bâsârân, on which see Marquart, \textit{Erânsâhr}, p. 227 [for further discussion, see Barthold, \textit{Turkestan}^3, p. 70, n. 1], note, however, that the parallel passage in al-Balâdhrî’s \textit{Futûḥ} [p. 420] reads “Kâsân and Úrasht [leg. Úrast] in Farghânah.”

\textsuperscript{444} Not even Marquart knows more about this place.
It has been said that, before he crossed the river, Qutaybah in this year stayed [to take action] against Balkh, because some of it was in revolt against him and had waged open war against the Muslims. He accordingly fought its people, and one of the captives was the wife of Barmak, the father of Khalid b. Barmak; Barmak was in charge of al-Nawbahar. [This woman] fell to the lot of 'Abdallâh b. Muslim, called al-Faqir ["the poor one"], the brother of Qutaybah b. Muslim, and he had sexual relations with her; he suffered from elephantiasis. Then the people of Balkh made peace on the day after Qutaybah had made war on them, and Qutaybah ordered that the captives be returned. Barmak's wife said to 'Abdallâh b. Muslim, "O Arab, I have conceived by you," and 'Abdallâh, who was at death's door, made a testamentary disposition that what was in her womb should be brought to him. She was returned to Barmak.

It has been mentioned that, in the days of al-Mahdi, when [the latter] arrived at al-Rayy, the descendants of 'Abdallâh b. Muslim went to Khâlid [b. Barmak] and asserted his relationship to them. Muslim b. Qutaybah said to them, "If you claim him as a relative and that is formalized, you will have to provide him with a wife [from your family]," so they left him and turned away from their claim.

Barmak was a physician: He subsequently cured Maslamah [b. 'Abd al-Malik] of a malady he was suffering from. In this year Maslamah b. 'Abd al-Malik made a campaign in Byzantine territory.

In it, too, al-Hajjâj imprisoned Yazîd b. al-Muhallab; he also dismissed Ḥabib b. al-Muhallab from Kirmân and 'Abd al-Malik b. al-Muhallab from [the command of] his police.

The leader of the pilgrimage in this year was Hishâm b. 'Isâ'il al-Makhzûmî: Thus it was related to me by Aḥmad b. Thâbit on the authority of him who mentioned it on the authority of Ishâq b. 'Isâ on the authority of Abû Ma'shar; and al-Wâqidî said the

446. According to al-Tha'âlibi, he acquired this sobriquet because of his persistent pleading of poverty when importuning Qutaybah for extra shares of booty [Latâ'dif al-ma'drif, p. 40 [English trans., p. 59]].
same. The amīr over the whole of Iraq and the whole of the East was al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf; over civilian affairs (ṣalāt) at al-Kūfah was al-Mughirah b. ʿAbdallāh b. Abī ʿAqīl, and over military affairs (ḥarb) there, on behalf of al-Ḥajjāj, was Ziyād b. Jarīr b. ʿAbdallāh; over al- Başrah was Ayyūb b. al-Ḥakam;447 and over Khurasan was Qutaybah b. Muslim.

447. See above, n. 82.
The Events of the Year

87

(December 23, 705–December 11, 706)

In this year al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik dismissed Hishām b. Ismā'il from Medina. [Notice of] his dismissal arrived [there], according to what has been mentioned, on the night of Sunday, 7 Rabi’ 1 (February 26) in the year 87. His governorship there lasted four years, less a month or so.

[The Appointment of 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz as Governor of Medina]

In this year, too, al-Walid put 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz in charge of Medina.

Al-Wāqīḍī said: He arrived there as governor in the month of Rabi’ I, aged twenty-five, having been born in the year 62 (681–82). [Al-Wāqīḍī also] said: He arrived [with his baggage] on thirty camels and stopped at Dār Marwān.448

According to [al-Wāqīḍī]—'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Abī al-Zīnād—

448. Which apparently served as the governor’s residence. The Marwān in question was Marwān b. al-Ḥakam, who had himself served two terms as governor of Medina [de Zambaur, Manuel, p. 24]; for an earlier reference to his dār, see al-Ṭabarī, Ta’rīkh, ser. ii, p. 164, 1.6.
his father: When 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Aziz arrived at Medina and stopped at Dār Marwān, the people came into his presence and greeted [him]. When he had prayed the noontime prayer, he summoned ten of the jurisprudents of Medina, [namely,] 'Urwah b. al-Zubayr, 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Utbah, Abū Bakr b. 'Abd al-Raḥmān, Abū Bakr b. Sulaymān b. Abī Ḥathmāh,449 Sulaymān b. Yasār, al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad, Sālim b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar, 'Abdallāh b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar, 'Abdallāh b. 'Āmir b. Rabī‘ah, and Khārijah b. Zayd. They entered into his presence and sat down. He then praised God and extolled Him as He deserves, and said, “I have summoned you for a matter for which you will be rewarded and in which you will be helpers [in achieving] what is right. I do not wish to make any decision without [knowing] your opinion or [at least] the opinion of those of you who are present. If you see anyone transgressing, or [information about] injustice on the part of [any] [sub]governor of mine reaches you, I entreat you, in such circumstances, to inform me.” Then they went out, saying, “May God reward you with good,” and dispersed.

[Abū Ja‘far?] said: Al-Walid wrote to 'Umar, instructing him to make Hishām b. Ismā‘il stand before the people; [al-Walid] had a poor opinion of [Hishām].

Al-Wāqidi said: Dāwūd b. Jubayr said: The umm walad450 of Sa‘id b. al-Musayyab informed me that Sa‘id summoned his son and his mawlās and said, “This man will be made to stand before the people, or has been, and let no one confront him or harm him with a [single] word; we shall leave that to God and [his] kindred, even if what I know is no good for him. As for speaking to him, I shall never speak to him.”

[Al-Wāqidi] said: Muḥammad b. ‘Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. ‘Umar related to me on the authority of his father: Hishām b. Ismā‘il used to be a bad neighbor and harm us; ‘Ali b. al-Ḥusayn451 met with serious harm from him. When [Hishām] was dismissed, al-Walid ordered that he be made to stand before the people, and he said, “I fear only ‘Ali b. al-Ḥusayn.” ‘Ali b. al-Ḥusayn went past him when he had been made to stand at Dār Marwān, having previously told his intimates that no one of them should confront

449. Hathmāh is proposed by the Addenda et Emendanda in preference to Khaythamah. For Khārijah cf. Juynboll, Muslim Tradition, pp. 41–42.
450. Cf. above, n. 416.
Hishām with a [single] word. When ['Ali] passed, Hishām b. Ismā‘īl called out to him, “God knows very well where to place His messages.”

In this year Nizak went to Qutaybah, and Qutaybah made peace with the people of Bādghīs on the basis that he would not enter it.

[Qutaybah's Peace Agreement with the People of Bādghīs]

'Ali b. Muḥammad mentioned that Abū al-Ḥasan al-Jushamī informed him on the authority of Khurasani shaykhs and Jabalah b. Farrūkh on the authority of Muḥammad b. al-Muthannā that there were Muslim prisoners in the hands of Nizak Ṭarkhān. When Qutaybah made peace with the king of Shūmān, he wrote to [Nizak] concerning those Muslim prisoners whom he had, [telling him] to release them and threatening him in his letter. Nizak feared him, set the prisoners free, and sent them to Qutaybah. Qutaybah then sent to him Sulaym al-Nāṣīḥ, mawli of 'Ubaydallāh b. Abī Bakrah, calling him to peace and a safe-conduct. [Qutaybah] also sent him a letter in which he swore by God that, if [Nizak] did not go to him, he would campaign against him and pursue him wherever he might be, not turning back from him until he either defeated him or died before so doing. Sulaym brought Qutaybah’s letter to Nizak, and [Nizak] took to seeking [Sulaym’s] advice. He said to him, “O Sulaym, I do not think that your friend has any good [in mind]. He has written to me a letter [of the sort] that should not be written to someone like me.” Sulaym said to him, “O Abū al-Hayyāj, this man is severe in his government, easygoing when he is treated gently, and difficult when he is treated badly. Do not let the coarseness of his letter prevent you from [going to] him. You will be very well treated by him and by all of Muḍar.” Nizak accordingly went with Sulaym to Qutaybah and, the people of Bādghīs made peace with [Qutaybah] in the year 87 on the basis that he would not enter Bādghīs.

In this year Maslamah b. 'Abd al-Malik campaigned in Byzan-

---

452. Thus, too, in al-Ya‘qūbī, Ta’rikh, vol. II, p. 339; cf. Qur‘ān, 6:124 (which has risalatahu, in the singular). The remark was presumably intended as a compliment to 'Ali b. al-Husayn in his capacity as a member of the Ahl al-Bayt.

tine territory accompanied by Yazid b. Jubayr. He encountered a large force of Byzantines at Sūsanah in the region of al-Maṣṣiṣah.

Al-Wāqidi said: In [this year] Maslamah encountered Maymūn al-Jurjumānī— with Maslamah there were about one thousand fighting men from the people of Anṭākiyyah—at Ṭuwānah. He killed many of [the enemy], and at his hands God conquered fortresses.

It has been said that the person who campaigned against the Byzantines in this year was Hishām b. 'Abd al-Malik, at whose hands God conquered the fortress of Būlaq, the fortress of al-Akhram, and the fortress of Būlus and Qumqum. He killed about one thousand musta'ribah fighting men and took their offspring and women captive.

In this year Qutaybah campaigned against Paykand.

*Report of [Qutaybah’s] Campaign [against Paykand]*

According to ‘Ali b. Muḥammad—Abū 'l-Dhayyal—al-Muhallab b. Iyās—his father—Ḥusayn b. Mujāhid al-Rāzī and Hārūn b. ‘Isā—Yūnus b. Abī Ishāq and others: When Qutaybah made peace with Nizak, he stayed [put] until the time for campaigning, and then in that year—the year 87—he campaigned against

---

454. Who seems to be otherwise unknown.

455. I.e., Sision: See Brooks, “The Arabs in Asia Minor,” p. 191, and Lilie, Byzantinische Reaktion, p. 115, from which it emerges [i] that this action must have taken place earlier than A.H. 87, and [ii] that the Arabs suffered a serious defeat.

456. Thus in the Addenda et Emendanda, in preference to the “al-jurijānī” given in the text. This is Maymūn the Mardaite, who, contrary to what is implied here, was fighting on the Arab side against the Byzantines: See Brooks, “The Arabs in Asia Minor,” pp. 191, 203; Lilie, Byzantinische Reaktion, p. 116; EP, s.v. Djarādižma (vol. II, p. 457a).

457. I.e., Antioch [see EP, s.v. Anṭākiya].


459. The rendering of these place names is tentative, and they appear to be unidentified (Qalīfah gives t.w.l.q, and Ibn Kathir gives q.m.yq.m).


462. Which, as becomes apparent below, was at the very beginning of spring.
Paykand. He went from Marw to Marw Rūdh to Āmul to Zamm, crossed the river, and went to Paykand, which is the nearest of the cities of Bukhārā to the river and is called the City of the Merchants; it is at the end of the desert [adjacent to?] Bukhārā. When he stopped in the surrounding area, [the people of Paykand] asked the Soghdians for help and sought reinforcements from around them, and large numbers came to them, taking the road. No messenger of Qutaybah's could be sent off, nor could [any] messenger get to him; for two months no news reached him. Al-Ḥajījāj found news of him slow [in coming] and feared for the army. He ordered the people to make invocations for them in the mosques and wrote to this effect to the amšār. [Qutaybah and his men] were fighting every day.

[‘Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Qutaybah had a non-Arab spy called Ṭidhār, to whom the people of Upper Bukhārā gave money on [the understanding] that he would remove Qutaybah from them. Ṭidhār came to [Qutaybah] and said, “Let me be alone with you,” and the people [present] stood up [and left, although] Qutaybah kept ʿIrār b. Ḥuṣayn al-Ḍabbī back. Ṭidhār said, “[There is] a [new] governor coming to you, for al-Ḥajījāj has been dismissed; you ought to go off with the people to Marw.” Qutaybah called for Siyāh, his mawla, and said, “Behead Ṭidhār!” and he killed him. Then he said to ʿIrār, “There remains no one who knows this report but you and me, and I give God a covenant that, if this story comes out before this war of ours is finished, I shall make you join [Ṭidhār]. Control your tongue, for the spreading of this story will weaken the forearms of the people.”

[‘Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Then [those who had earlier been present] came in and were alarmed by the killing of Ṭidhār. They stayed silent, with downcast eyes, and Qutaybah said, “Do not be alarmed by the killing of a slave who has been destroyed by God.” They said, “We thought that he was a sincere adviser to the Muslims.” He said, “On the contrary, he was advising insincerely. God has destroyed him for his crime, and he has gone on his way. Go and fight your enemies, and encounter them with

463. See above, nn. 344 and 346.
464. This seems to be the likeliest rendering [see Justi, Iranisches Namenbuch, p. 324], the other forms given being T.ṇḍḥ.r, Y.ṭdh.r, T.ṇḍ.r, and B.ṇḍ.r.
[something] other than that with which you have been encountering them.\footnote{466}
The people then went off, readying themselves, and formed their lines. Qutaybah went and spurred on the flag bearers, and there was some fighting with spears. [The fighters] then came together, and swords were used to good effect; God sent fortitude down to the Muslims, and they fought them until the sun had set. Then God gave the Muslims the upper hand, and [their opponents] were routed, heading for the city. The Muslims followed them and distracted them from entering [the city]. They scattered, and the Muslims came upon them, killing and taking prisoners at will.

The few who had entered the city preserved themselves in it, and Qutaybah set workmen onto the foundation [of its wall] in order to demolish it. They asked him for a peace, and he made peace with them, appointing over them one of his sons.\footnote{467} [Then] he went away from them, intending to return [to Khurasan], but, when he had gone a stage or two and was five parasangs distant from them, they broke faith, killed the governor and his companions, and cut off their noses and ears. [This] reached Qutaybah, who returned to them, they having fortified themselves, and fought them for a month. Then he set the workmen onto the foundation of [the wall of] the city, and they [excavated it and] propped it up with wood; [Qutaybah] intended, when the [work of excavating and] propping was finished, to set fire to the wood so that [the wall] might be demolished. But the wall fell down while they were still propping it up, and forty of the workmen were killed. [The people in the city now] sought peace, but he refused, fought them, took [the city] by force of arms, and killed those fighting men who were in it. Among those taken in the city was a one-eyed man who had been responsible for mobilizing the Turks against the Muslims, and he said to Qutaybah, “I shall ransom myself.” Sulaym al-Nāṣīḥ said, “What will you give?” He said, “Five thousand pieces of Chinese silk worth one million [dirhams].” Qutaybah said [to his men], “What do you think?”

\footnote{466. That is, fight them more strongly.}
\footnote{467. So rendering rajulan min bani Qutaybah; thus too apud Khalīfah [Ta’rikh, p. 303]; however, Narshakhi [The History of Bukhara, p. 44] names the man appointed as Warqā’ b. Naṣr al-Bāhili, a name known also to al-Ya’qūbī [Ta’rikh, vol. II, p. 342], albeit not specifically in the context of Paykand.}
They said, “We think that his ransom will augment the booty of the Muslims. What mischief can this [fellow] possibly do?” Qutaybah said [to the man], “No, by God, no Muslim woman will ever be frightened by you,” and he gave the order, and he was killed.468

According to ‘Ali [b. Muḥammad]—Abū al-Dhayyāl—al-Muhallab b. Iyās—his father and al-Hasan b. Rushayd—Tufayl b. Mirdās: When Qutaybah conquered Paykand, they there came upon innumerable gold and silver vessels. He put in charge of the booty and the division ‘Abdallāh b. Wa’lān al-‘Adawi, [who was] one of the Banū al-Malakān and was called by Qutaybah “the trustworthy one, the son of the trustworthy one,” and Iyās b. Bayhas al-Bāhili. They melted down the vessels and the idols and presented [the resultant bullion] to Qutaybah. They also presented to him the dross of what they had melted down, and he gave it to them. They were then given forty thousand [dirhams] for it, and they told [Qutaybah], [At this, Qutaybah] changed his mind and ordered them to melt down [the dross]. They did so, and there emerged from it one hundred fifty thousand mithqāls, or fifty thousand mithgals.469

They acquired much at Paykand. From Paykand there came into the hands of the Muslims [booty] the like of which they had never acquired in Khurasan. Qutaybah returned to Marw, and the Muslims became strong. They bought weapons and horses, and riding animals were procured for them. They competed with one another in fine attire and equipment, and they bought weapons at high prices, until the [price of a] spear reached seventy [dirhams].470 Al-Kumayt said [basīt]:471

And the battle day of Paykand, the wonders of which cannot be enumerated,
and Bukhārā did not fall short of that.469

468. A similar account of this one-eyed prisoner is given by Ibn A’tham [Futūh, vol. VII, p. 224].
469. A mithgāl being approximately 4.4 g (see EI², s.v. Makāyil and Mawāzīn). The figure of 150,000 mithqāls is reflected in Narshakhi’s report (p. 45) of the total amount of treasure taken (rather than what issued from the dross, which he does not mention).
470. Ibn A’tham [Futūh, vol. VII, p. 221] adds here that the price of a coat of mail reached 700 dirhams [cf. Narshakhi’s remark that “a spear was worth fifty dirhams, a shield fifty or sixty, and a coat of mail seven hundred dirhams” [p. 46]].
471. EI², s.v. al-Kumayt b. Zayd al-Asadi, Sezgin, GAS, vol. II, pp. 347ff. The following verse is also given in Shi’r al-Kumayt, no. 147.
In the treasuries were many weapons and much war matériel. Qutaybah wrote to al-Hajjāj seeking his permission to hand out these weapons to the troops, and he gave him permission. They brought out such war matériel and traveling equipment as was in the treasuries, he divided it out, and they equipped themselves. When springtime came, he summoned the people and said, "I am going to take you on campaign [now], before you need to carry provisions, and I shall bring you back before you need warm clothes"; and he set off finely equipped with riding animals and weapons. He went to Āmul and crossed from Zamm to Bukhārā; he went to Tūmushkath,\footnote{So reading nūmushakath, following Wellhausen \textit{(Kingdom}, p. 434) and Gibb \textit{(Arab Conquests}, p. 34); Barthold \textit{(Turkestan}, p. 132, citing Yāqūt) identifies it as a "neighbourhood of Bukhara."} in Bukhārā [territory], and [its people] made peace with him.

According to 'Ali [b. Muhammad]—Abū al-Dhayyāl—shaykhs from the Banū 'Adī: [Qutaybah's father,] Muslim al-Bāhili, [had earlier] said to Wa'lān, "I have [some] money I should like to deposit with you." [Wa'lān] said, "Do you want it to be kept secret, or do you not mind the people knowing?" [Muslim] said, "I should like to keep it secret." [Wa'lān] said, "Send it with a man you trust to such-and-such a place and tell him that, when he sees a man in that place, he is to put down what he has with him and depart." "Yes," said Muslim, and he put the money in a saddlebag, loaded it on a mule, and said to a mawla of his, "Set off with this mule to such-and-such a place and, when you see a man sitting, leave the mule and depart." The man set off with the mule. [Meanwhile] Wa'lān had reached the place at the appointed time, while Muslim's messenger was slow in getting to him. The time appointed by Wa'lān was past, and he thought that [Muslim must have] changed his mind; so he departed. There [now] came to that place a man from the Banū Taghlib and, [when] Muslim's mawla came, he saw (the Taghlibi) sitting, left the mule, and returned [home]. The Taghlibī went up to the mule and, when he saw the money and did not see anyone with the mule, he led it to his house and took possession of both the mule and the money. Muslim thought that the money had gone to Wa'lān, and he did not ask him about it until he needed it. Then he met him and said, "My money." [Wa'lān] said, "I did not receive anything. I don't have any money of yours."
['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Muslim used to complain of [Wa'lan] and speak ill of him.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: He came one day to a gathering (majlis) of the Banū Ḍubay'ah and complained of him. The Taghlībi was sitting [there], went up to him, spoke to him in private and asked him about the money, and then told him [that he had it]. He took [Muslim] to his house, brought out the saddlebag, and said, "Do you recognize it?" "Yes," said Muslim. "And the seal?" "Yes," said Muslim. "Take your money," said [the Taghlībi], and he told him the story [of how he had come by it]. Muslim went to the people and the tribes to whom he had complained of Wa’lān, exonerating him and telling them the story. Concerning Wa’lān, the poet says [tawīl]:

I am not like Wa’lān, who was a leader in piety,
and I am not like Ḥimrān or like al-Muhallab.

[This] Ḥimrān [was Ḥimrān] b. al-Faḍil al-Burjumī.473

The leader of the pilgrimage in this year, according to what Aḥmad b. Thābit related to me on the authority of him who mentioned it on the authority of Ḥisāq b. ‘Īsā on the authority of Abū Maʿshar, was ‘Umar b. ‘Abd al-ʿAzīz, who was the amīr over Medina. Over the judiciary of Medina in this year was Abū Bakr b. ‘Amr b. Ḥazm, on behalf of ‘Umar b. ‘Abd al-ʿAzīz. Over Iraq and the whole of the East was al-Ḥajjāj; his deputy over al-Baṣra in this year was, according to what has been said, al-Jarrāḥ b. ʿAbdallāh al-Ḥakamī, while ‘Abdallāh b. Udhaynah was in charge of the judiciary [there]; his governor over military affairs (ḥarb) at al-Kūfah was Ziyād b. Jarir b. ʿAbdallāh, while Abū Bakr b. Abī Mūsā al-Ashtarī was over the judiciary [there]; over Khurasan was Qutayb b. Muslim.

The Events of the Year 88

(December 12, 706–November 30, 707)

Among them was God’s conquest for the Muslims of one of the fortresses of the Byzantines, called Tuwānah, in Jumādā II (May–June); they spent the winter there. In command of the army were Maslamah b. ‘Abd al-Malik and al-‘Abbās b. al-Walid b. ‘Abd al-Malik.

Muḥammad b. ‘Umar al-Waqidi mentioned that Thawr b. Yazid related to him on the authority of his companions: The conquest of Tuwānah was [effected] at the hands of Maslamah b. ‘Abd al-Malik and al-‘Abbās b. al-Walid. The Muslims inflicted an [initial] defeat on the enemy on that day. [The enemy] went to their church and then returned, and [the Muslims] suffered a defeat from which they thought they would never recover. Al-‘Abbās remained with a party [of men], including Ibn Muḥayriz al-Jumahi. He said to Ibn Muḥayriz, “Where are the people of the Qur’ān who desire Paradise?” Ibn Muḥayriz said, “If you call them, they will come to you.” Al-‘Abbās called, “O people of the Qur’ān!” and they all came forward. Then God defeated the enemy until they went into Tuwānah.474 Al-Walid b. ‘Abd al-Malik

The Events of the Year 88

had required the people of Medina to provide levies in this year. According to Muhammad b. 'Umar—his father: Makhramah b. Sulaymān al-Walībi said: He required them to produce two thousand levies. They stipulated among themselves to give pay to such of them as would serve as substitutes, and fifteen hundred set out and 500 stayed behind. They made the summer campaign with Maslamah and al-‘Abbās, who were in command of the army, and they wintered at Tuwānah and conquered it.

In [this year] al-Walid b. Yazīd b. 'Abd al-Malik was born.

[Reconstruction of the Mosque of Medina]

In [this year] al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik ordered the pulling down of the mosque of the Messenger of God, may God bless and preserve him, and the pulling down of the rooms of the wives of the Messenger of God, may God bless and preserve him, and the incorporation of them into the mosque.

Muḥammad b. 'Umar mentioned that Muḥammad b. Ja‘far b. Wardān al-Bannā‘ [i.e., “the builder’"] said: I saw the messenger sent by al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik. He arrived in the month of Rabi‘ I in the year 88 [February–March 707], with a turban wound round his head. He entered into the presence of 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz bearing al-Walid’s letter ordering him to incorporate the rooms of the wives of the Prophet, may God bless and preserve him, and to build the mosque.

He also said to him [in the letter]: “Move the qiblah [wall] forward, if you are able, and you are able, because of the standing of your maternal uncles; they will not go against you. If any of them objects, order the people of the miṣr to estimate a fair value for him. Then demolish and pay them the prices. You have good precedents [for this in the actions of] 'Umar and 'Uthmān.” ['Umar] had [the uncles] read the letter, they being with him; the people agreed to the price, and he gave them it and began to pull down the rooms of the wives of the Prophet, may God bless and preserve him, and to build the mosque. Soon afterward there arrived the workmen sent by al-Walid.

475. All of this being the sense of tajā‘alā‘ [see Lane, Lexicon, s.v.].
476. 'Umar’s mother being a descendant of 'Umar b. al-Khaṣṭāb.


Ṣāliḥ said: He put me in charge of pulling it down and rebuilding it. We pulled it down using the workers of Medina, and we began to pull down the rooms of the wives of the Prophet, may God bless and preserve him. [This went on] until there came to us the workmen sent by al-Walid.

According to Muḥammad—Mūsā b. Abī Bakr—Ṣāliḥ b. Kaysān: We started pulling down the mosque of the Messenger of God, may God bless and preserve him, in Safar in the year 88 (January–February 707). Al-Walid sent [word] to the Byzantine Emperor informing him that he had ordered the pulling down of the mosque of the Messenger of God, may God bless and preserve him, and [asking him] to help him in [that regard]. [The Byzantine Emperor] sent to him one hundred thousand mithqāls of gold, one hundred workers, and forty loads of mosaic; he ordered that mosaic be sought in cities that had been ruined and sent it to al-Walid. Al-Walid sent [all] that on to 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz.478

In this year 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz began building the mosque.479

In it, too, Maslamah campaigned against the Byzantines. Three fortresses were conquered at his hands: the fortress of Qustantin, [the fortress of] Ghazālah, and the fortress of al-Akhram; and he killed about a thousand of the mustaʿribah,480 along with taking

477. Following the suggestions made in the Addenda et Emendanda.
478. On this locus classicus, see Gibb, “Arab-Byzantine Relations under the Umayyad Caliphate,” pp. 52ff.
479. Al-Yaʿqūbī (Taʾrikh, vol. II, p. 340 [where the same figures are given for mithqāls, etc.]) notes that the work was finished in A.H. 90.
480. See above, n. 460.
the offspring captive and appropriating wealth.\textsuperscript{481}

In this year Qutaybah campaigned against Tūmushkath and Rāmīthanah.\textsuperscript{482}

\begin{quote}
\textit{[Qutaybah's] Campaign [against Tūmushkath and Rāmīthanah]}
\end{quote}

According to 'Ali b. Muḥammad—al-Mufaḍḍal b. al-Muhallab—his father and Muṣ'ab b. Ḥayyān—a mawla of theirs: Qutaybah campaigned against Tūmushkath in the year 88, having deputed over Marw Bashshār b. Muslim. Its people met him, and he made peace with them. Then he went to Rāmīthanah and its people made peace with him, and he departed from them. [At this point], the Turks, accompanied by the Soghdians and the people of Farghānah, marched on him and tried to intercept the Muslims while they were on their way. They caught up with 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Muslim al-Bāhili, who was in command of the rear guard, there being a [distance of an Arab] mile\textsuperscript{483} between him [on the one hand] and Qutaybah and the troops at the front [on the other]. When they drew near to him, 'Abd al-Raḥmān sent a messenger with his report to Qutaybah. The Turks came toward him and fought him. The messenger reached Qutaybah, who came back with [reinforcements] and joined 'Abd al-Raḥmān, who was [still] fighting them. The Turks had almost gained mastery over them, but when [the Muslims fighting them] saw Qutaybah, they took heart, showed fortitude, and fought them until noontime. Nizak, who was with Qutaybah, showed valor on that day, and God defeated the Turks and dispersed them. Qutaybah went back, heading for Marw: He crossed the river by way of al-Tirmidh, heading for Balkh, and reached Marw.

The Bāhīlīs said: In command of the Turks [when] they engaged the Muslims was Kūrbaḡānūn\textsuperscript{484} al-Turki, the son of the sister

\textsuperscript{481} Cf. Brooks, "The Arabs in Asia Minor," p. 192, where Ghazālah is identified as Gazelon. There are problems of chronology here [see Lilie, Byzantinische Reaktion, p. 118n.].

\textsuperscript{482} On Tūmushkath, see above, n. 472. Rāmīthanah was one of the districts of Bukhārā and contained a fortified village of the same name [Barthold, Turkestan\textsuperscript{3}, p. 116]; cf. Khalīfah, Ta'rikh, pp. 304-5.

\textsuperscript{483} Ca. two kilometers.

\textsuperscript{484} See Marquart, "Historische Glossen zu den alttürkischen Inschriften," p.
of the king of China. [His force numbered] two hundred thousand [men], over whom God gave the Muslims victory.485

In this year al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik wrote to 'Umar b. 'Abd al-Aziz concerning making the mountain passes easier and digging wells in the [Hijazi] territories.

According to Muḥammad b. 'Umar—Ibn Abi Sabrah—Sha'lih b. Kaysān: Al-Walid wrote to 'Umar concerning making the mountain passes easier and digging wells at Medina, and his letters to that [effect] went out to [all the] Muslim territories; al-Walid also wrote to Khalid b. 'Abdallān [al-Qasri] to that [effect]. [Ibn Kay-sān?] said: He stopped those with elephantiasis from going out among the people and arranged for allowances to be allocated to them.

Ibn Abi Sabrah said on the authority of Sha'lih b. Kaysān: Al-Walid wrote to 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Aziz [telling him] to construct the drinking fountain which is today at the house of Yazid b. 'Abd al-Malik. 'Umar constructed it and caused its water to flow. When al-Walid made the pilgrimage, he stopped at it, looked at the building and the drinking fountain [itself], and was pleased by them. He ordered that it should have superintendents to look after it and that the people of the mosque should be given to drink from it. That was done.

The leader of the pilgrimage in this year was 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz in the account of Muḥammad b. 'Umar. He mentioned that Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh b. Jubayr, mawla of the Banū al-'Abbās, related to him on the authority of Sha'lih b. Kaysān: 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz took out in that year—meaning the year 88—a number of Quraysh to whom he had sent gifts and baggage camels. They entered into a state of Ḣirām with him at Dhū al-Hulayfah,486 and he led with him animals for sacrifice. When they were at al-Tan'im,487 they were met by some Qurashīs, in-
including Ibn Abi Mulaykah and others, who informed him that Mecca was short of water and that they feared for the pilgrims in respect of thirst; the reason for that was that the rain had been scanty. Umar said, "What is wanted here is clear. Come! We shall call [upon] God." Şâlih b. Kaysân said: I saw them doing so, and he with them, and they were insistent in the [ir] prayer. Şâlih said: And, by God, no sooner had we reached the House on that day than it was raining, which it did into the nighttime; the heavens opened, the flash flood came down the valley, and there came about a situation that the people of Mecca feared. 'Arafah, Minâ, and Jam' were washed out, and could only be reached by bridging. Şâlih said: Mecca produced plants that year, because of the fertility.

As for Abu Ma'shar, he said: The leader of the pilgrimage in the year 88 was 'Umar b. al-Walîd b. 'Abd al-Malik. That was related to me by Ahmad b. Thâbit on the authority of he who mentioned it on the authority of Ishâq b. 'Isâ on his (i.e., Abu Ma'shar's) authority.

The governors over the ansâr in this year were the same as those we have mentioned as governors in the year 87.

---
Among them was the conquest by the Muslims in this year of the fortress of Sūriyah; in command of the army was Maslamah b. 'Abd al-malik. Al-Wāqidi claimed that Maslamah campaigned in this year in Byzantine territory, accompanied by al-'Abbās b. al-Walid, [that] they entered it together and then separated, and [that] Maslamah conquered the fortress of Sūriyah, while al-'Abbās conquered Adhrūliyyah and encountered a body of Byzantines and defeated them.

[An authority] other than al-Wāqidi has said that Maslamah headed for 'Ammūriyyah, where he encountered a large body of Byzantines. God defeated them, and he conquered Hiraqlah and Qamūdiyyah. Al-'Abbās made the summer campaign from the direction of al-Budandūn.489

In this year Qutaybah campaigned in Bukhārā and conquered Rāmithanah. ‘Ali b. Muḥammad mentioned on the authority of the Bāhilis

489. The identifications are Isauria, Dorylaion, Amorion, Herakleia, Kamauliana, and Podendon, respectively [see Brooks, “The Arabs in Asia Minor,” pp. 192–93; Lilie, Byzantinische Reaktion, pp. 118, 134 [map]].
The Events of the Year 89

that they said that and [that they said] that he returned, after he had conquered it, by way of Balkh. When he was at al-Fāryāb, there came to him al-Ḥajjājʾs letter telling him to go to Wardān Khudhāḥ; Qutaybah accordingly went back in the year 89. He went to Zamm, crossed the river, and was encountered on the desert road by the Soghdians and the people of Kish and Nasaf. They fought him, and he defeated them, went to Bukhārā, and stopped at Lower Kharqānāh, on Wardānʾs right. They engaged him with a large force, and he fought them for two days and nights, then God granted victory over them. Nahār b. Tawsīʾah said (tawīl):

They had a [long] night from us at Kharqān, and our night at Kharqān was [even] longer.

ʿAlī [b. Muḥammad] said: According to [i] Abū al-Dhayyāl—al-Muhallab b. Iyās, and [ii] Abū al-ʿAlāʾ—Idris b. Ḥanẓalah: Qutaybah campaigned against Wardān Khudhāḥ, the king of Bukhārā, in the year 89, made no headway against him, and did not conquer any of his territory. He returned to Marw and wrote to al-Ḥajjāj about that. Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to him, “Portray [the terrain] to me,” and [Qutaybah] sent him a representation of it. Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to him, “Return to your wallowing place, repent to God for what you have done, and make your approach from such-and-such a place”; and it has been said [that] al-Ḥajjāj wrote to him, “Outwit Kish, smash Nasaf, and reach Wardān; beware of beating about the bush and spare me the byways.”

In this year Khilīd b. ʿAbdallah al-Qasri became governor of Mecca, according to what al-Wāqidī claimed. He mentioned that ʿUmar b. Ṣāliḥ related to him on the authority of Nāfīʾ, mawlā of the Banū Makhzūm, who said: I heard Khilīd b. ʿAbdallah say on the pulpit of Mecca, while he was delivering a sermon, “O people, who is greater? A manʾs deputy (khalīfaḥ) over his people or his
messenger (rasūl) to them? If you were not to know the superiority of the caliphate, [I would tell you] that Abraham, the friend of the Merciful, prayed for water, and He gave him bitter salt to drink, and the Caliph prayed to Him for water, and He gave him sweet water," (meaning by "salt" Zamzam and by "sweet water") a well dug by al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik between the two mountain passes of Tawā and al-Ḥajūn. The water [of this well] used to be transported and placed in a tank made of leather beside Zamzam, so that its superiority over [the water of] Zamzam might be known. [Al-Wagidi] said: Then the well caved in and disappeared; today it is not known where it is.

In [this year] Maslamah b. 'Abd al-Malik campaigned against the Turks until he reached al-Bāb in the region of 'Adharbayjān; he conquered fortresses and cities there. The pilgrimage was led in this year by 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz: thus it was related to me by Aḥmad b. Thābit on the authority of him who mentioned it on the authority of Iṣḥāq b. 'Iṣā on the authority of Abū Ma'shar. The governors of the amṣār in this year were [the same as] the governors in the preceding year; we have mentioned them already.

495. For discussion of the significance of this, see Crone and Hinds, God's Caliph, p. 29.
496. The words in brackets have been added from Ibn al-Athīr.
498. Al-Ḥajūn is identified as a mountain one and a half mil [3 km] from the Ka'bah [Yaqūt, Mu'jam, vol. II, p. 215]. Tawā [Dhū Ṭuwā in the Aghānī] is more problematic: Yaqūt knows it as the "most famous wādī at Mecca" (vol. III, p. 554), while Dhū Ṭuwā is simply "a place at Mecca" (vol. III, p. 553).
499. I.e., Bāb al-Abwāb [see EI2, s.v.], modern Derbent, which could have been more accurately described as being in the region of Arrān.
The
Events of the Year

90
(November 20, 708—November 8, 709)

In this year, according to what Muḥammad b. ʿUmar mentioned, Maslamah campaigned in Byzantine territory in the region of Sūriyah and conquered the five fortresses there.

In it, too, al-ʿAbbās b. al-Walid campaigned, as far as al-Arzan according to some, and as far as Sūriyah according to others. Muḥammad b. ʿUmar said: It is sounder to say that he went as far as Sūriyah.500

In [this year] Muḥammad b. al-Qāsim al-Thaqafi, who was in command of an army on behalf of al-Ḥajjāj, killed Dāhir b. Ṣaṣṣah,501 the king of Sind.

In it, too, al-Walid appointed Qurrah b. Sharīk502 over Egypt in place of ʿAbdallāh b. ʿAbd al-Malik.

In [this year] the Byzantines took prisoner Khalid b. Kaysān, the sea commander, and took him to their king, the king of the By-

500. Cf. Brooks, “The Arabs in Asia Minor,” p. 193; Lilie, Byzantinische Reaktion, pp. 118. “Al-Arzan” seems to constitute a problem: Brooks says that it “should be Arzanene or its chief town, but this is clearly out of place here.”

501. I.e., Dāhir the son of Chach (for detailed discussion of this expedition, see F. Gabrieli, “Muḥammad ibn Qāsim ath-Thaqāfi and the Arab Conquest of Sind,” East and West, n.s. 15 [1965], pp. 281–95).

502. See EI², s.v. Kurra b. Sharīk.
zantines gave him to al-Walid b. ‘Abd al-Malik.\textsuperscript{503}

In it, too, Qutaybah conquered Bukhārā and defeated the armies of the enemy there.\textsuperscript{504}

*[Qutaybah’s Conquest of Bukhārā]*

‘Alī b. Muḥammad said: According to (i) Abū al-Dhayyāl—al-Muhallab b. Iyās, and (ii) Abū al-‘Alā’—Idrīs b. Ḥanzalah: When there reached Qutaybah al-Hajjāj’s letter—[the letter in which] he ordered him to repent of having departed from Wardān Khudhāh, the king of Bukhārā, before defeating him, [and ordered him] to go against [Wardān], informing him of the place from which he should proceed to [Wardān’s] territory—Qutaybah went out to Bukhārā on campaign in the year 90. Wardān Khudhāh sent [word] to the Soghdians and the Turks and those who were around them, requesting their help, and they came. Qutaybah, however, reached [Bukhārā] first and besieged [it], and, when the reinforcements arrived, [the Muslims] went out to fight them. The Azd said, “Keep us on our own and let us fight them.” Qutaybah said, “Go forward,” and they went forward, fighting them, while Qutaybah sat wearing a yellow ridā\textsuperscript{505} over his weapons. They all showed fortitude for a long time; then the Muslims wheeled round, and the polytheists came at them, broke them, entered Qutaybah’s camp, and crossed it until the women struck the faces of [the polytheists’] horses and wept. Then they returned to the charge, and the two wings of the Muslims closed in on the Turks and fought them until they repelled them to their positions.

The Turks stood on an elevation, and Qutaybah said, “Who will dislodge them from this place for us?” No one came forward; all the clans stood [stock-still]. Qutaybah went to the Banū Tamim and said, “O Banū Tamim, you are in the position of the ḥuṭamiyyah.\textsuperscript{506} [All I need is one] battle day like the battle days [in your glorious past], may my father be your ransom.” ['Alī b. Muḥammad] continued: Waki‘ [b. Abī Süd]\textsuperscript{507} took the standard

\textsuperscript{503} Cf. Lilie, *Byzantinische Reaktion*, p. 119.
\textsuperscript{504} Cf. Gibb, *Arab Conquests*, pp. 35–36.
\textsuperscript{505} See below, n. 596 (first part).
\textsuperscript{506} “Coat of mail on which swords break” [see the Glossarium].
\textsuperscript{507} A leading Tamimi in Khurasan [see Caskel, *Gamharat an-nasab*, register, s.v. Waki‘ b. Ḥassān].
in his hand and said, "O Banū Tamīm, will you abandon me today?" They said, "No, O Abū Muṭarrif." Huraym b. Abī Ṭah- 
mah al-Mujāshi’ī was in command of the cavalry of the Banū Tamīm, and Wāki’ was their chief. The people were standing, and 
all of them held back. Wāki’ said, "Forward, O Huraym," and he 
gave him the banner, "take your cavalry forward," and Huraym 
went forward, while Wāki’ walked slowly behind with the infan-
try. Huraym got as far as a river that was between him and the 
enemy and then stopped. Wāki’ said to him, "Press on, O 
Huraym."

[‘Alī b. Muḥammad] continued: Huraym gave Wāki’ the look of 
a fierce camel and said, "Am I to impel my cavalry across this 
river? If they are defeated, that will be the end of them. By God, 
you are stupid!" [Wāki’] said, "You son of a stinking woman! I’m 
not going to see you disobey my order," and he struck him 
with an iron bar he had with him. [At this,) Huraym whipped his 
horse and impelled it [across the river], saying, "There can’t be 
anything harder to take than this," and he crossed with the cavalry. 
Wāki’ came to the river, called for wood, and bridged it. He 
said to his companions, "Whoever of you has accustomed himself 
to [the idea of] death, let him cross; he who has not, let him stay 
in his place." Only eight infantrymen crossed with him. He walk-
ed slowly with them until, when they were tired, he sat them 
down and they rested, while he went near the enemy. He made 
the cavalry into two wings and said to Huraym, "I am going to 
thrust at the [enemy]. Distract them from me with the cavalry." 
He said to the [infantrymen], "Attack!" and they charged straight 
at [the enemy] until they were mixed with them. Huraym at-
tacked them with his cavalry, and they thrust at them with 
spears. By the time [the Muslims] desisted from [the Turks], they 
had dislodged them from their position. Qutaybah called out, 
"Do you not see the enemy defeated. No sooner did someone 
cross that river than the enemy fled in defeat." The [Muslims] 
followed them, and Qutaybah called out, "Whoever brings a[n 
enemy] head shall have one hundred [dirhams]."

[‘Alī b. Muḥammad] said: Mūsā b. al-Mutawakkil al-Quray’ī 
claimed: On that day eleven men from the Banū Quray’ came,

each of them bringing a head; each was asked, "Who are you?" and said, "A Quray'ī." Then a man from al-Azd brought a head and they said to him, "Who are you?" He said, "A Quray'ī." Jahm b. Zahrī was sitting [nearby] and said, "He is lying, by God! May God cause you to prosper, he is my cousin." Qutaybah said to [the Azdī], "Woe to you! What induced you to [say] this?" He said, "I saw that everyone who came said, 'A Quray'ī,' and thought that everyone who brought a head had to say, 'A Quray'ī.'" Qutaybah laughed.

['Āli b. Muḥammad] said: On that day Khāqān and his son were wounded.

Qutaybah returned to Marw and wrote to al-Ḥajjāj, "I sent ʿAbd al-Rahmān b. Muslim and God conquered at his hands." ['Āli b. Muḥammad] continued: A mawlā of al-Ḥajjāj's had witnessed the conquest, and he came and told [al-Ḥajjāj] what had [really] happened. Al-Ḥajjāj was angry with Qutaybah, and [Qutaybah] grieved at that. The people said to [Qutaybah], "Send a delegation of the Banū Tamīm to [al-Ḥajjāj]; give [generously] to them and please them, and they will tell the amīr that the matter was as you [described it when you] wrote." [Qutaybah] accordingly sent [some] men, including 'Uram b. Shutayr al-Dabbī, and, when they reached al-Ḥajjāj, he shouted at them and stigmatized them. He called for the cupper, [who had his] scissors in his hand, and said, "I'll cut off your tongues if you don't tell me the truth." They said, "The amīr is Qutaybah, and he sent ʿAbd al-Rahmān in command of them; the conquest belongs to the amīr and the one who is head of the people." It was 'Uram b. Shutayr who spoke these words to him. Al-Ḥajjāj quietened down.

In this year Qutaybah renewed the peace between himself and Ṭarkhūn, the king of Soghd.

[Renewed Peace between Qutaybah and the Soghdians]

According to ‘Ali [b. Muḥammad]—Abū al-Sarī al-Marwāzī—al-Jahm al-Bāhili: When Qutaybah fell upon the people of Bukhārā and broke them up, the people of Soghd feared him. Ṭarkhūn, the

---

510. Al-Juʿī, brother of Jabalah [Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, register].
511. See above, n. 79.
The Events of the Year 90

king of Soghd, went back accompanied by two horsemen until he stood near Qutaybah's camp, with the Bukhārā river between the two of them. He asked Qutaybah to send to him a man to whom he might talk. Qutaybah ordered a man to go, and this man drew near to Ṭarkhūn.

As for the Bāhilīs, they say that Ṭarkhūn called to Ḥayyān al-Nabāṭī, who went to them. Ṭarkhūn asked for a peace in return for tribute that he would pay to them, and Qutaybah agreed to his request, made peace with him, and took from him hostages to remain with him until such time as Ṭarkhūn might send to him the tribute on the basis of which he had made peace with him. Ṭarkhūn departed to his country, and Qutaybah returned [sc. to Marwj, accompanied by Nizak.

In this year Nizak broke the peace between himself and the Muslims, held out in his fortress, and reverted to war. Qutaybah campaigned against him.

[Nizak's] Perfidy and Why He Was Vanquished

'Ali [b. Muḥammad] said: According to (i) Abū al-Dhayyal al-Muhallab b. Iyās, (ii) al-Mufaḍḍal al-Ḍabbī—his father, (iii) 'Ali b. Mujāhid, and (iv) Kulayb b. Khalaf al-'Ammī—each mentioned something and I have put what they said together [in a single account]; and the Bāhilīs mentioned something, and I have annexed that to the report of these [others] and have put it in [with the rest]: Qutaybah left Bukhārā accompanied by Nizak, who had been alarmed by the conquests he had seen and who feared Qutaybah. Nizak said to his companions and his intimates among them, "I am with this fellow, and I don't feel safe with him, for the Arab is like a dog: If you beat him, he barks, and if you feed him, he wags his tail. If you campaign against him and then give him something, he is pleased and forgets what you have done to him. Ṭarkhūn fought him several times, and when he gave him tribute, he accepted it and was pleased. He is a dissolute brute. The best thing will be for me to take my leave and return." They said, "Take your leave of him," and, when Qutaybah was at Āmul, Nizak sought leave of him to return to Ṭukhāristān.

514. Reading the variant minhum in preference to muttham.
[Qutaybah] gave him leave, and, when he left his camp heading for Balkh, [Nizak] said to his companions, "Hasten," and they went at great speed until they reached al-Nawbahār. He stopped to pray in it and regarded it as a blessing, and said to his companions, "I do not doubt that Qutaybah regretted it when we left his camp with his permission to me and [that] his messenger will at any moment reach al-Mughirah b. 'Abdallāh, ordering him to detain me. So set up a lookout, and if you see [that] the messenger has passed through the city and has gone out of the gate, he will not reach al-Barūqān before we reach Ṭukharistān. Al-Mughirah will send a man, but he will not catch up with us before we enter the Khulm pass." They did so.

[‘Ali b. Muḥammad] said: A messenger set off from Qutaybah to al-Mughirah with orders to him to detain Nizak. When the messenger passed [on his way] to al-Mughirah, who was at al-Barūqān—the city of Balkh being in ruins at that time—Nizak and his companions rode off and went on their way. The messenger reached al-Mughirah, and [al-Mughirah] himself went in search of [Nizak]. [But] he found that he had entered the Khulm pass, and departed.

Nizak [now] openly disavowed [Qutaybah]. He wrote to the Išbahbadh of Balkh, to Bādhām, the king of Marw Rūdh, to Suhrak,⁵¹⁶ the king of al-Ṭālaqān, to Tūsik,⁵¹⁷ the king of al-Šāfīyāb, and to al-Šūzjānī, the king of al-Šūzjān, calling upon them to disavow Qutaybah. They responded positively to him, and he appointed the spring as the time for them to join forces and campaign against Qutaybah. He also wrote to the Kābul Shāh, seeking his help, sent to him his baggage and money, and asked him to give him permission—if he was driven to it—to go to him and receive a safe-conduct in his country; [the Kābul Shāh] agreed to that and held his baggage.

[‘Ali b. Muḥammad] said: Jabghūyah, the king of Ṭukharistān,

---

⁵¹⁵. Following the destruction of Balkh, "the Arabs built a new town in the locality of Barūqān, two farsakhs from Balkh" (Barthold, Turkestan,³ p. 77).
⁵¹⁶. The Addenda et Emendanda point to the form Šhr.b (sc. Suhrab) below (pp. 1566, 1569 of the Arabic text), but Justi is ready to settle for Suhrak [Iranisches Namenbuch, p. 292, sub Etaqogenous].
⁵¹⁷. Following the Addenda at Emendanda and G. Schlegel, La stèle funéraire du Teghin Giogh, p. 23.
whose name was al-Shadh,\textsuperscript{518} was weak. Nizak took him and put him in a gold fetter, for fear that he might stir up discord against him, Jabghühah being the king of Tukhäristan, and Nizak [one] of his slaves. When he was sure [that Jabghühah could not cause him trouble], he set watchmen over him and expelled Qutaybah’s governor, Muḥammad b. Sulaym al-Nāṣiḥ, from Jabghühah’s territories. [News of] his disavowal reached Qutaybah [just] before the winter, [at a time when] the troops had gone their separate ways; only the people of Marw remained with Qutaybah. He sent his brother ‘Abd al-Rahmān to [the district of] Balkh, to al-Barūqān, with [an army of] twelve thousand [men], saying to him, “Stay there and do not initiate anything. When the winter is over, gather the army and go to Tukhäristan [sic], know that I [shall be] near you.” ‘Abd al-Rahmān went off and stopped at al-Barūqān, and Qutaybah took his time until, late in the winter, he wrote to Abrashahr,\textsuperscript{519} Biward,\textsuperscript{520} Sarakhs, and the people of Herat [instructing them] to come to him. They did so, this being at an earlier time than usual.

In this year Qutaybah fell upon the people of al-Ṭālaqān, according to one of the collectors of historical reports [ahl al-akhbar], and killed them on a massive scale; he crucified them in two straight parallel rows four parasangs long.\textsuperscript{521}

\textbf{[Qutaybah’s Retribution against the People of al-Ṭālaqān]}

The reason for that, according to what has been mentioned, was that, when Nizak Tarkhan acted treacherously, disavowed Qutaybah, and resolved to make war on him, the king of al-Ṭālaqān concurred with [Nizak] in making war on [Qutaybah],

\textsuperscript{518} As Gibb points out (Arab Conquests, p. 9), this identification of the Shadh with the Jabghühah “is obviously impossible.” Gibb takes the Shadh in question here (see below, pp. 1224–25 of the Arabic text) to be “the chief prince in Lower Tukhäristan,” a description which “best suits the king of Chaghāniān.” For more recent discussion of these titles, see Bosworth and Clauson, “Al-Xwārazmī on the Peoples of Central Asia,” pp. 6, 9; Bombaci, “On the Ancient Turkish Title ‘Saṭ’”; Bosworth, “The Rulers of Chaghāniyān in Early Islamic Times,” p. 1.

\textsuperscript{519} I.e., Nishapur (see Le Strange, Lands of the Eastern Caliphate, p. 383).

\textsuperscript{520} I.e., Abiward (ibid., p. 394).

\textsuperscript{521} Concerning al-Ṭālaqān at this point, Gibb (Arab Conquests, p. 37) remarks that “the traditions are hopelessly confused.”
and he appointed a time for going to him along with those of the [other] kings who had agreed to rise with him to make war on Qutaybah. When, however, Nizak fled from Qutaybah and entered the Khulm pass, which leads to Ṭukhāristān, he knew that he was impotent against Qutaybah, and fled. Qutaybah went to al-Ṭalqān, fell upon its people, and did what I have mentioned earlier.

The person who said [all] this has been contradicted in what he has said; I shall come back to this in [dealing with] the events of the year 91.

The leader of the pilgrimage in this year was 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz: Thus it was related to me by Aḥmad b. Thābit on the authority of him who mentioned it on the authority of Iṣḥāq b. Ṭāṣ on the authority of Abū Ma'shar; and so too said Muhammad b. 'Umar. 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz was in this year al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik's governor of Mecca, Medina, and al-Ṭā'īf. Over Iraq and the East was al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūṣuf; al-Ḥajjāj's governor of al- Başrah was al-Jarrāḥ b. 'Abdallāh, and in charge of its judiciary was 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Udhaynah; over al-Kūfah was Ziyād b. Jarīr b. 'Abdallāh, and in charge of its judiciary was Abū Bakr b. Abī Mūsā. Over Khurasan was Qutaybah b. Muslim, and over Egypt was Qurrah b. Sharīk.

In this year Yazīd b. al-Muhallab and his brothers who were in prison with him fled with others and joined Sulaymān b. 'Abd al-Malik, seeking protection through him from al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūṣuf and al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik.522

The Reason for [the Muhallabids'] Escape from al-Ḥajjāj's Prison and Their Going to Sulaymān

According to Hishām [b. Muḥammad]—Abū Mikhnaf—Abū al-Mukhāriq al-Rāsibī: Al-Ḥajjāj went out to Rustāqubādh to send out troops, for the Kurds had gained control over the whole of the territory of Fārs. He took with him Yazīd and his brothers al-Mufaḍḍal and 'Abd al-Malik, brought them to Rustāqubādh, placed them in his camp, put around them something like a trench, housed them in a tent near his own quarters, placed them

---

under Syrian guard, fined them six million [dirhams], and began to torture them. Yazid showed great fortitude, which vexed al-Ḥajjāj. Then [al-Ḥajjāj] was told that [Yazid] had been shot by an arrow, the head of which had lodged in his leg; if anything touched it he would scream, and if it was moved, however slightly, you would hear him exclaim. He ordered that [Yazid] be tortured and that his leg be subjected to severe pressure, when that was done to him, he screamed. His sister, Hind bt. al-Muhallab, was married to al-Ḥajjāj; when she heard Yazid's screaming, she screamed and wailed, and al-Ḥajjāj divorced her. Then he desisted from them and started to try to get them to pay up. They started to pay, while at the same time working at escaping from their situation.

They sent [word] to Marwān b. al-Muhallab, who was at al-Baṣrah, instructing him to prepare horses for them by reducing them to scanty food; he was to make people think that he wanted to sell them, to exhibit them for sale, and overprice them so that they would not be bought, "so that they will be ready for us if we are able to escape from what is here." Marwān did that. Ḥabib was in al-Baṣrah [too], also being tortured.

Yazid ordered that much food be made for the guards, and they ate. He ordered drink, and they were provided with it and diverted one another's attention with it. Yazid [then] put on the clothes of his cook, put a white beard over his [own] beard, and went out. One of the guards said, "[It is] as if this is the gait of Yazid," and he went until he stood in front of him [to see] his face in the night, saw the whiteness of the beard, and departed from him; he said, "This is an old man." Al-Mufaddal went out in [Yazid's] footsteps undetected, and they reached their boats, which had been prepared for them in the Baṭā‘īḥ. They were eighteen parasangs from al-Baṣrah. When they got to the boats, 'Abd al-Malik was slow in reaching them and was diverted from them. Yazid said to al-Mufaddal, who had the same mother as 'Abd al-Malik, she being Bahlah, an Indian woman, "No, by God. I shall not leave until he comes, even if it were to mean going back to the prison." Yazid stayed put until he came to them, and at that they embarked on the boats and traveled that night until morning. In the morning, the guards knew that they had gone, and that was re-

523. Yudhaq: See the Glossarium.
524. The swamps of southern Iraq between the Tigris and the Euphrates [see EI², s.v. al-Baṭīḥa].
ferred to al-Ḥajjāj. Al-Farazdaq said concerning their exodus (ṭawīl): 525

I have not seen [anything] like the group who followed one another on the palm trunk, 526 while the guards were not sleeping.
They went off convinced that their allotted spans [were headed] for [immediate] destiny and death.
Not one of them did not quieten his fear with a sharp, cutting, burnished sword, 527
And when they met, they did not meet a faint-hearted old man, nor a soft-boned youth;
[121] They were like their father when they grew up, fifty [of them,], one after the other, [each of them replete with] courage and perfection.

Al-Ḥajjāj became fearful at [the escape] and imagined that they had gone in the direction of Khurasan. He sent the official courier to Qutaybah b. Muslim, warning him of their arrival and instructing him to be ready for them. He sent [word] to the amirs of the frontier ways of access and the districts to be on the look out for them and to be ready for them, and he wrote to al-Walid b. ‘Abd al-Malik informing him of their flight and [of the fact] that he did not think that they were heading [for anywhere] but Khurasan. Al-Ḥajjāj continued to suspect Yazid for what he had done; he used to say, “I suspect that he is telling himself [to do] the like of what Ibn al-Ash‘ath did.”

When Yazid drew near to Mawqū 528 in the Baṭā‘ih, he was met by the horses that had been prepared for him and his brothers. They went off on them, accompanied by a guide of theirs from Kalb called ‘Abd al-Jabbar b. Yazid b. al-Rab‘ah; 529 he took them by way of al-Samāwah. 530 Al-Ḥajjāj was brought [information]

526. ‘Alā ‘l-iḥd‘i, which must refer to the boats.
527. The Diwān reads bi-qalbin in place of bi-‘aṭbin.
528. Yāqūt (Mu‘jam, vol. IV, p. 688) knew this as a watering place or well [mā‘] in the region of al- Başrah.
529. See Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, register and chart 283, where the name of his grandfather is given as Rabi‘ah.
530. The name of the desert [and of a watering place or well] between al-Kūfah and Syria (Yāqūt, Mu‘jam, vol. III, p. 131).
The Events of the Year 90

two days later and was told, “The man has taken the Syria road, and these horses [have become] tired on the way; someone has come who has seen them going along in the desert.” [Al-Ḥajjāj] sent [word] to al-Walid, informing him of that.

Yazīd went on until he reached Palestine and stopped with Wuhayb b. 'Abd al-Raḥmān al-Azdi, who was held in high estimation by Sulaymān; he lodged some of his baggage and family with Sufyān b. Sulaymān al-Azdi. Wuhayb b. 'Abd al-Raḥmān went and entered into the presence of Sulaymān and said, “This [man] Yazīd b. al-Muhallab and his brothers are in my house. They have come to you as fugitives from al-Ḥajjāj, taking refuge with you.” [Sulaymān] said, “Bring them to me, for they are safe. They will never be got at as long as I am alive.” [Wuhayb] brought them and conducted them into his presence; they were in a secure position.

Their guide, the Kalbi, said concerning their journey (tawīl):

Surely God has made all good friends
a ransom for Ibn al-Muhallab, irrespective of what has happened!

What a fine young man [he is], O grouping of al-Azdi!

Your riding camels
drew near to al-Wahb,531 to the east of a mountain pass,

They [then] turned to the right, [alongside] the sand of ‘Ālij,532 while on the right of the people were the heights of Ghurrab.533

If our riding camels do not reach Sulaymān in the morning after five [nights] from the people of al-Liwi,534 they will return by night.535

---

531. Not known to Yāqūt.
533. According to Yāqūt (Mu’jam, vol. III, p. 783), Ghurrab is “a mountain this side of Syria in the diyār of the Banū Kalb.”
534. In addition to meaning “a place where the sand stops,” al-Liwa is a place name signifying “one of the valleys of the Banū Sulaym” (Yāqūt, Mu’jam, vol. IV, p. 366).
535. The sense of this is not clear to me.
We flee like the sun from what is behind us, and go, in the darkness of blackest night, with people who were kings. I guided them in the gloom in which no light of a star could be seen, nor a moon, save faintly, as if it were a gilded bracelet, fashioned by a bracelet smith.

According to Hishām—al-Ḥasan b. Abān al-'Ulaṃī: While 'Abd al-Jabbār b. Yazīd b. al-Rab'ah was journeying with them, Yazīd's turban fell off, and he missed it. He said, "O 'Abd al-Jabbār, go back and seek it for us." ['Abd al-Jabbār] said "Someone like me should not be ordered [to do] this." [Yazīd] repeated [the order], and ['Abd al-Jabbār] refused. [Yazīd] caught him with [his] whip, and 'Abd al-Jabbār proclaimed his genealogy to him; [Yazīd] felt ashamed, and that [is the context in which 'Abd al-Jabbār] said:

Surely God has made all good friends a ransom for Ibn al-Muhallab, irrespective of what has happened!

Al-Ḥajjāj wrote, "The family of al-Muhallab have embezzled God's money and have fled from me and joined Sulaymān." The family of al-Muhallab reached Sulaymān after the order had been given for people to be gathered to be sent to Khurasan, [since the authorities were sure] that Yazīd had gone in the direction of Khurasan in order to rouse those who were there to rebellion. When it reached al-Walīd that he was with Sulaymān, that made some of what he felt easier for him, [but he remained] angry about the money which [Yazīd] had taken.

Sulaymān wrote to al-Walīd, "Yazīd b. al-Muhallab is with me, and I have given him a safe-conduct. He owes three million [dirhams], al-Ḥajjāj having fined them six million and they having paid three million; I shall pay the remaining three million." [Al-Walīd] wrote to him, "No, by God, I shall not give him a safe-conduct until you send him to me." [Sulaymān] wrote to him, "If I send him to you, I shall come with him [myself]. I beseech you by God not to disgrace me and not to violate my [protection]." [Al-Walīd] wrote to him, "If you come to me, I shall not give him

536. Reading, with Ms B, nafirru furāra, rather than taqarru qarāra.
a safe-conduct.” Yazid said [to Sulaymân], “Send me to him, by God. I do not want to occasion enmity and war between you and him, nor [do I want] the people to see a bad omen for the two of you in me. Send me to him, and send your son with me, and write to [al-Walid] in the kindest terms you can manage”; [Sulaymân] accordingly sent his son Ayyûb with him.

Al-Walid had ordered [Sulaymân] to send [Yazid] to him in bonds, and he sent him to him saying to his son, “When you are about to enter [al-Walid’s] presence, you and Yazid are to bind yourselves with a chain and go in to al-Walid’s presence together.” [Ayyûb] did that with [Yazid] when they got to al-Walid, and they went into his presence [together]. When al-Walid saw his nephew in a chain, he said, “By God, we have gone rather far with Sulaymân.” Then the young man handed his father's letter over to his uncle and said, “O Commander of the Faithful, may I be your ransom, do not violate my father’s protection, you being the most worthy of those who have defended it, and do not cut short the hope of one who has hoped for safety in taking refuge with us because of our [good] standing with you; do not abase one who has hoped for high rank in resorting to us because of our high rank with you.”

[Al-Walid] read the letter: “To ‘Abd Allâh al-Walid, the Commander of the Faithful, from Sulaymân b. ‘Abd al-Malik. To continue: I used to think that, even if an enemy who had thwarted you and striven against you sought my protection and I lodged him and gave him protection, you would neither abase my protégé nor violate my protection. As it is, I have only protected an obedient and compliant [man]—he and his father and his family have contributed much to Islam—and I have sent him to you. If you intend cutting off relations with me, violating my protection, and going to excess in doing me harm, you are [of course] able to do that if you want; but I would wish you to seek preservation by God from [any] intention of cutting off relations with me, violating my honor, and ignoring my solicitous regard [for you] and my connection [with you]. By God, O Commander of the Faithful, you know neither how much longer either of us has to live nor when death will part us. If the Commander of the Faithful, may God perpetuate his joy, is able [to bring it about] that the appointed time of death does not come to us but that he is [still] respect-
ing our blood tie, giving me my due, and refraining from harming me, let him do so. By God, O Commander of the Faithful, nothing on earth—after piety to God—pleases me more than pleasing you. Your pleasure is part of that through which I seek God's pleasure. If for once, O Commander of the Faithful, you desire my joy, my friendly connection, my honor, and the exaltation of my due, pass over Yazid for me without punishing him; everything you seek of him will be my responsibility.”

When [al-Walid] had read the letter, he said, “We have been burdensome to Sulaymān; and he summoned his nephew and brought him near to him. [Then] Yazid spoke. He praised God and extolled Him, blessed His Prophet, may God bless him, and then said, “O Commander of the Faithful, our benefit through you is the best. Whoever may forget that, we shall not forget it; and whoever may deny that, we shall not deny it. There has issued from our benefit as a family, in [our] obedience to you, [in our] thrusting at the eyes of your enemies in great battlefields east and west, that in which there is for us a mighty grace.” [Al-Walid] said to him, “Sit,” and he sat, and [al-Walid] gave him safe-conduct and desisted from him.

[Yazīd] returned to Sulaymān, and his brothers strove to acquire the money he owed. [Al-Walid] wrote to al-Ḥajjāj, “I could not make any headway with Yazīd. His family is with Sulaymān. Desist from them, and stop writing to me about them.” When al-Ḥajjāj saw that, he desisted from them. Abū 'Uyaynah b. al-Muhallab owed al-Ḥajjāj one hundred thousand dirhams, which al-Ḥajjāj left to him; and he desisted from Habīb b. al-Muhallab.

Yazid returned to Sulaymān b. 'Abd al-Malik and stayed with him, teaching him how to dress well, making delicious dishes for him, and giving him large presents. He was one of those held in [Sulaymān's] highest regard. No gift reached Yazid b. al-Muhallab but that he sent it to Sulaymān; and no gift or benefit reached Sulaymān but that he sent half of it to Yazid b. al-Muhallab. No slave girl pleased him but that he sent her to Yazid, except for the slave girl Khatī'ah.

That reached al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik, who summoned al-

---

537. If this is how we are to understand *yu'allimu hu al-hay'ah*. Ibn al-Athir omits it, while Ibn Kathir [*Bidāyah*, vol. IX, p. 79] reads *ḥasan al-hay'ah*.

538. About whom no more information seems to be available.
Ḥārith b. Mālik b. Rabi‘ah al-Ash‘arī and said [to him], “Go off to Sulaymān and say to him, ‘O you who are inimical to your family. It has reached the Commander of the Faithful that no gift or benefit comes to you but that you send half of it to Yazīd, and that one of your slave girls comes to you, and no sooner does her state of purity come to an end than you send her to Yazīd.’ Show him the foulness of that and revile him for it. Do you think you can convey what I have instructed you to do?’ [Al-Ḥārith] said, “Obedience [consists of] obeying you. I am simply a messenger.” [Al-Walīd] said, “Go to him, say that to him, and stay with him. I shall send him a present. Hand it over to him and take from him a receipt for what you hand over to him.”

[Al-Ḥārith] went until he reached [Sulaymān], who had a copy of the Qur‘ān in front of him and was reciting. He entered into his presence and greeted him; [Sulaymān] did not return his greeting until he had finished his recitation. Then [al-Ḥārith] raised his head to him and said everything that al-Walīd had instructed him to say. [Sulaymān’s] face became distorted [with] anger. Then he said, “By God, if I am able to get hold of you one of these days, I shall cut part of you off!” [Al-Ḥārith] said to him, “Obedience was incumbent upon me,” and he went out of his presence.

When that [present] sent by al-Walīd to Sulaymān arrived, al-Ḥārith b. Rabi‘ah al-Ash‘arī entered into [Sulaymān’s] presence and said to him, “Give me the receipt for what I have handed over to you.” [Sulaymān] said, “What did you say to me?” He said, “I shall never repeat it to you.539 Obedience was incumbent upon me in respect of it.” [Sulaymān] was quiet and knew that the man had told him the truth. Then he went out and [those present] went out with him, and he said, “Take half of these bundles and baskets and send them to Yazīd.”

[Hishām] continued: The man knew that [Sulaymān] would not obey anyone in respect of Yazīd. Yazīd stayed with Sulaymān for nine months; and al-Ḥajjāj died in the year 95, on Friday, 20 Shawwāl (July 8, 714).540

539. Following Ibrāhim’s ilayka abadan in preference to the text’s seemingly unintelligible ‘āl.mā abadan.

540. The suspicion that something is wrong here is fortified by Ibn Kathir’s version [Bidāyah, vol. IX, p. 79]: “Yazīd b. al-Muhallab stayed with Sulaymān b. ‘Abd al-Malik until al-Ḥajjāj died in the year 95.”
In it, according to what Muḥammad b. 'Umar and others have mentioned, 'Abd al-'Azīz b. al-Walid made the summer campaign. In command of the army was Maslamah b. 'Abd al-Malik.

In it, too, Maslamah campaigned against the Turks until he reached al-Bāb in the region of Ādharbayjān. Cities and fortresses were conquered at his hands.

In it, Mūsā b. Nuṣayr campaigned against al-Andalus. Cities and fortresses were conquered at his hands.

[Qutaybah's Capture and Killing of Nīzak]

In this year Qutaybah b. Muslim killed Nīzak Ṭarkhān.543

The narrative returns to that of 'Alī b. Muḥammad and the story of Nīzak and Qutaybah’s victory over him until he killed him. When there reached Qutaybah those of the people of Abrašahr, Bīward, Sarakhs, and Herat to whom he had written instructing them to join him, he went with [his entire force] to

---

541. See above, n. 499.
542. See EI2, s.v. al-Andalus.
Marw Rūdh, having deputed [at Marw] over military affairs (ḥarb) Ḥammād b. Muslim and over taxation (kharāj) 'Abdallāh b. al-Ahtam. [When news of] the advance of [Qutaybah] into his territory reached the marzban of Marw Rūdh, he fled to the land of the Furs. Qutaybah arrived in Marw Rūdh, took two sons of his, killed them, and crucified them. Then he went to al-Ṭālaqān, the lord of which stayed put, not fighting him and desisting from him. [In al-Ṭālaqān] were brigands, whom Qutaybah killed and crucified. He appointed over al-Ṭālaqān 'Amr b. Muslim and went on to al-Fāryāb. The king of al-Fāryāb went out to him, submissively, and professing his obedience, and [Qutaybah] was satisfied with that and did not kill anyone there; he appointed over it a man from Bāhišlah.

News of them reached the lord of al-Jūzjān, and he left his territory and went out into the mountains in flight. Qutaybah went to al-Jūzjān, and its people met him, compliant and obedient, and he accepted [that] from them and did not kill anyone there; he appointed over it 'Amir b. Mālik al-Ḥimmānī. Then he reached Balkh; the Išbahbādh and the people of Balkh met him, and he entered it. He stayed in it only one day and then went on, following 'Abd al-Rahmān [b. Muslim], until he reached the Khulm pass. Nizak had gone off and camped at Baghlan, leaving fighting men at the mouth and the defiles of the pass in order to defend it, and placing fighting men in a strong fortress behind the pass. Qutaybah stayed for [some] days fighting them at the defile of the pass without being able to make any progress against them. He was unable to enter it, it being a defile through which the valley passed, and he did not know of any way by which he could get to Nizak other than the pass or a desert which would not support the troops. He remained, turning his face to right and left in perplexity, looking for stratagems.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: He was in this [dilemma] when there came to him the Ru‘b Khān, the king of al-Ru‘bān and

544. Which does not make sense in this context; in the Addenda et Emendanda, Marquart proposes that we should understand this as bilād al-Gharš, i.e., Gharšistān, a territory in the mountains to the east of Herat [see EI, s.v. Ghardjistān].

545. This appointment [together with that of 'Amir b. Mālik—see the next paragraph] is also mentioned in the account of Ibn A’tham [Futūh, vol. VII, p. 232].

546. Two days' journey from Siminjān [Barthold, Turkestan, p. 67].

Siminjān, \(^{548}\) seeking a safe-conduct from him on the basis that he would show him a way of getting into the fortress that was behind this pass. Qutaybah gave him a safe-conduct, gave him what he asked for, and sent with him at night men with whom he got to the fortress which was behind the Khulm pass. They fell upon [the men of the fortress] at night, they feeling perfectly secure [from attack], and killed them; those who survived and those who were in the pass fled, and Qutaybah and [his army] entered the pass and reached the fortress. Then he went on to Siminjān, Nizak being at Baghlān, at a spring called Fanj Jāh; \(^{549}\) between Siminjān and Baghlān is a desert that is not particularly difficult.

['Āli b. Muḥammad] continued: Qutaybah stayed in Siminjān for [some] days and then went off to Nizak; he sent his brother 'Abd al-Rahmān on ahead, and he reached Nizak. [At this,] Nizak set off from his house, crossed the Farghānah valley, \(^{550}\) sent his baggage and wealth to the Kabul Shah, and went on until he stopped at al-Kurz, \(^{551}\) being followed [all the while] by 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muslim. 'Abd al-Rahmān stopped and took control of the defiles of al-Kurz, and Qutaybah stopped at Iskimish, \(^{552}\) two parasangs away. Nizak took refuge in al-Kurz, having no way out save in one direction, which was difficult, since it could not be negotiated by riding animals.

Qutaybah besieged Nizak for two months, until Nizak's stock of grain became scanty and they were afflicted by smallpox, which Jabghuyah caught. Qutaybah feared the winter, and he summoned Sulaym al-Nāšīh \(^{553}\) and said, "Go off to Nizak and use artifice to get him to come to me without a safe-conduct. If he gives you trouble and refuses, give him a safe-conduct. Know that, if I see you and you don't have him with you, I shall crucify you. So work for your own sake." [Sulaym] said, "Write for me to

---

\(^{548}\) Two days' journey from Khulm [Barthold, Turkestan\(^{3}\), p. 67].

\(^{549}\) Rendered Panj-čāh, "Schneebrunnen" (rather than "Five Wells"), by Marquart [Érānšahr, p. 219].

\(^{550}\) As Marquart points out [Érānšahr, p. 220], this Farghānah must have been to the south of Baghlān.

\(^{551}\) Not even Marquart knows any more about this place.

\(^{552}\) Rendered thus by Marquart [Érānšahr, pp. 219–20]; if Wellhausen's identification [Kingdom, p. 435, n. 1] is correct, it was not far southeast of Baghlān.

The Events of the Year 91

'Abd al-Rahmān, [telling him] not to disobey me.” [Qutaybah] said, “Yes,” and he wrote for him to 'Abd al-Rahmān. [Sulaym] then went to ['Abd al-Rahmān] and said to him, “Send men to be [stationed] at the mouth of the pass and, when Nizak and I come out, let them slip round behind us, interposing themselves between us and the pass.”

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: 'Abd al-Rahmān sent cavalry, and they were [stationed] where Sulaym instructed them [to be]. Sulaym [now] went off, carrying with him foodstuffs to last for days and loads of khabīs,554 until he reached Nizak. Nizak said to him, “You have abandoned me, O Sulaym.” Sulaym said, “I haven’t abandoned you, but you disobeyed me and did harm to yourself. You disavowed [Qutaybah] and acted perfidiously.” [Nizak] said, “What is the right thing to do?” [Sulaym] said, “The right thing to do now is to go to him. You have angered him with your contention, and he is not going to leave this place of his. He is resolved to winter in situ, whether he perishes or survives.” [Nizak] said, “Am I to go to him without a safe-conduct?” [Sulaym] said, “I don’t think that he will give you one, on account of what [he holds] against you in his heart, for you have filled him with wrath. I think that you should place your hand in his before he is aware of you, and I hope that, if you do that, he will be ashamed and will forgive you.” [Nizak] said, “You think that?” He said, “Yes.” [Nizak] said, “I can’t bring myself to accept that. If Qutaybah sees me, he will kill me.” Sulaym said to him, “I have only come to advise you to do this. If you do it, I hope that you will be safe and that your position with him will revert to what it was. If you refuse, I shall be off.” [Nizak] said, “Then let us give you lunch.” [Sulaym] said, “I suspect that you [pl.] are too busy to prepare food; we have plenty of food with us.”

['Ali b. Muḥammad] continued: Sulaym called for lunch [to be served], and [his servants] brought abundant food, the like of which [Nizak’s men] had been unfamiliar with since they had been besieged. The Turks devoured it, and that grieved Nizak. Sulaym said, “O Abū al-Hayyāj, I am one of your [most] sincere advisers. I see that your companions have been worn out. If the siege goes on for a long time and you stay as you are, I can’t be

554. Lane (Lexicon, p. 697c) defines this as “a kind of food, sweet, well known, made of dates and clarified butter, mixed together.”
sure that they won’t make use of you in order to gain safe-conduct. Set off and go to Qutaybah.” [Nizak] said, “I have never felt safe with him, and I shall not go to him without a safe-conduct. My feeling about him is that he is going to kill me even if he does give me a safe-conduct, but the safe-conduct gives me more excuse from blame and more hope.” [Sulaym] said, “He has given you a safe-conduct: do you have any doubts about me?” Nizak said, “No.” [Sulaym] said, “So set off with me.” His companions said to him, “Accept what Sulaym has said, he would not have said but what is true.” So he called for his riding animals and went with Sulaym.

When he reached the steps by which he might descend to the plain, he said, “O Sulaym, whoever may not know when he will die, I [for one] know when I shall die. I shall die when I see Qutaybah.” [Sulaym] said, “By no means. Will he kill when you have a safe-conduct?” Then [Nizak] rode, accompanied by Jabghuyah, who had recovered from smallpox, and Schul and ‘Uthman, the sons of Nizak’s brother, and Schul Ṭarkhān, [who was] Jabghuyah’s deputy, and Khn. [227]

[1222] (‘Ali b. Muhammad) said: When he emerged from the pass, the cavalry left by Sulaym at the mouth of the pass slipped around and interposed themselves between the Turks and the exit. Nizak said to Sulaym, “This is the first bad [sign].” [Sulaym] said, “Don’t think that. The [fact that] these people are staying behind you is better for you.” Sulaym went on, together with Nizak and those who had had gone out with him, until they entered into the presence of ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muslim, who sent a messenger to Qutaybah informing him [of this]. Qutaybah sent ‘Amr b. Abī Mih-zam to ‘Abd al-Rahmān [with the message], “Bring them to me,” and ‘Abd al-Rahmān brought them to him. Qutaybah imprisoned the companions of Nizak and handed Nizak [himself] over to Ibn Bassām al-Laythī. He wrote to al-

555. Or “H.b.s.,” as in Ms P and Ibn al-Athir.
557. Reading takhallufu in place of tukhallifu [pace the Addenda et Emendanda].
Hajjaj asking his permission to kill Nizak.

Ibn Bassam placed Nizak in his yurt, dug a trench around the yurt, and set guards over him. Qutaybah sent off Mu'awiya b. 'Amir b. 'Alqamah al-'Ulaymi, who removed what goods and people there were in al-Kurz and brought them to Qutaybah. Qutaybah imprisoned [these people], pending [the arrival of] al-Hajjaj’s letter concerning what he had written to him about. Al-Hajjaj’s letter instructing him to kill Nizak reached him after forty days.

['Ali b. Mu'ammad) said: [Qutaybah] called for [Nizak] and said, “Do you have any commitment from me or from 'Abd al-Rahman or from Sulaym?” He said, “I have one from Sulaym.” [Qutaybah] said, “You are lying,” and he stood up and went into [an inner chamber]. He returned Nizak to his prison and remained [indoors] for three days without appearing to the people.

According to ['Ali b. Mu'ammad)—Al-Muhallab b. Iyäs al-'Adawi: The people talked about the matter of Nizak. Some of them said, “It is not lawful for [Qutaybah] to kill him,” while others said, “It is not lawful for him to let him be.” Much was said about this.

['Ali b. Mu'ammad] continued: On the fourth day Qutaybah came out, sat, and gave permission to the people [to come into his presence]. He said, “What do you think about killing Nizak?” They held differing opinions: There were those who said, “Kill him,” those who said, “You have given him a commitment; do not kill him,” and those who said, “We are not sure [that he will not do harm] to the Muslims,” Dirar b. Husayn entered, and [Qutaybah] said to him, “What do you say, O Dirar?” He said, “I say that I heard you say that you had given God a covenant that if He delivered [Nizak] into your hands, you would kill him, and that if you did not do so, [you wished that] God would never help you.” Qutaybah sat silently and with downcast eyes for a long time and then said, “By God, if there were to remain of my allotted span no more than three words, I would say, ‘Kill him, kill him, kill him.’” He sent for Nizak and ordered that he and his companions be killed; he was killed along with seven hundred [others].

As for the Bâhilis, they say that neither [Qutaybah] nor Sulaym gave him a safe-conduct. When [Qutaybah] intended to kill him,
he called for him and for a Ḥanafi sword.558 He unsheathed it, lengthened559 his sleeves, and executed him with his [own] hand. He ordered 'Abd al-Rahmān to behead Ṣūl, and he ordered Ṣāliḥ to kill 'Uthmān, called Shaqān, the son of Nizak’s brother. He said to Bakr b. Ḥabīb al-Sahmi, from Bāhilah, “Have you [enough] strength [to deal with the rest]?” He said, “Yes, more than enough”;560 there was roughness in Bakr. [Qutaybah] said [to him], “Take these dihqāns.”

[‘Ali b. Muhammad] continued: When he was brought a man, he would behead him and say, “Begin and keep at it.”561 Those who were killed on that day [numbered] twelve thousand, according to what the Bāhilīs say. [Qutaybah] crucified Nizak and the two sons of his brother at the source of a spring called Wakhsh Khāshān562 in Iskīmisht. Al-Mughirah b. Ḥabnā’ said, mentioning that in a long piece (tawīl):563

By my life, what a good campaign by the army that was; it put an end to Nizak and became lofty [in merit].

According to ‘Ali—Muṣʿab b. Ḥayyān—his father: Qutaybah sent the head of Nizak with Mihfān b. Jaz’ al-Kilābī and Sawwār b. Zahdām al-Jarmī. Al-Ḥajjāj said, “Qutaybah should have sent Nizak’s head with one of the sons of Muslim.”564 Sawwār said (wafīr):

I say to Mihfān, when an auspicious [bird]
has flown [from on my left]
and another [bird], an inauspicious one,
from my right,
And disasters have begun to
rise up all around him, and stop short of me,

558. According to Lane [Lexicon, p. 658], Ḥanafi swords were “certain swords, so called in relation to El-Ahnaf Ibn-Keys, because he was the first who ordered to make them.”

559. Sic: unrolled? One might rather have expected him to roll his sleeves up.

560. Following the preference of the Glossarium and of the Addenda et Emenda for wa-azīdu [rather than wa-urīdu].


562. Not even Marquart has anything to say about this place.


564. I.e., one of his brothers.
"I beseech you, does it please you that my saddle and yours are on Badhibin\textsuperscript{565} mules?"

Mihfan said, "Yes, [both here] and in China."

'Ali said: According to (i) Hamzah b. Ibrāhīm, (ii) 'Ali b. Mu-ğjāhid—Hanbal b. Abi Ḥuraydah—the marzban of Qūhistān, and (iii) an authority/authorities other than those two: Qutaybah called for Nizak one day, while he was imprisoned, and said, "What is your opinion about al-Sabal and al-Shadh? Do you think that they will come if I send to them [to come]?") [Nizak] said, "No."

['Ali] continued: Qutaybah sent to them, and they came to him. He summoned Nizak and Jabghūyah, and they entered, and there were al-Sabal and al-Shadh sitting in front of him. [Nizak and Jabghūyah] sat down opposite them, and al-Shadh said to Qutaybah, "Jabghūyah, even though he is an enemy of mine, is older than I, and he is the king, while I am as his slave. Give me permission to draw near to him." [Qutaybah] gave him permission, and he drew near to him, kissed his hand, and prostrated himself before him.

['Ali] continued: Then al-Sabal\textsuperscript{566} asked [Qutaybah's] permission [in respect of Jabghūyah]; [Qutaybah gave him permission, and he drew near to him and kissed his hand. Nizak said to Qutaybah, "Give me permission to draw near to al-Shadh, for I am his slave." He gave him permission, and he drew near to him and kissed his hand. Then Qutaybah gave leave to al-Sabal and al-Shadh, and they departed to their lands; he joined to al-Shadh's party] al-Hajjāj al-Qaynī, who was a leading Khurasani.

Qutaybah killed Nizak, and al-Zubayr, the mawla of 'Abīs\textsuperscript{567} al-Bāhili, took a boot of Nizak's in which there was a jewel. Owing to that jewel, which he had acquired in [Nizak's] boot, he became the richest and most landed person in his territory. Qutaybah allowed him it, and he remained rich until he died at Kābul in the governorship of Abū Dāwūd.\textsuperscript{568}

\textsuperscript{565} A place in Iraq to the east of Wāsiṣ [see Comu].

\textsuperscript{566} Following Ms B. (Thumma ista'dhanahu al-sabal) in preference to the version that inserts fi before al-sabal; the latter version would involve al-Shadh's paying homage to al-Sabal, which seems less likely.

\textsuperscript{567} Ibn al-Athīr reads "'Abbās."

\textsuperscript{568} Abū Dāwūd Khālid b. Ibrāhīm al-Dhuḥli, who was governor of Khurasan from 137/754–55 to 140/757–58 [see Omar, The 'Abbāsid Caliphate, 132/750–170/786, pp. 203–4].
['Ali] continued: Qutaybah set Jabghuyah free, gave generously to him, and sent him to al-Walid; he stayed in Syria until al-Walid died. Qutaybah returned to Marw, and appointed his brother 'Abd al-Raḥmān over Balkh. The people used to say that Qutaybah behaved perfidiously toward Nizak. Thābit Qutnah said (tawīl):

Do not consider perfidy [to be the equal of] resolution; with it feet may ascend one day and then slip.

['Ali] said: Al-Ḥajjāj used to say, "I sent Qutaybah as an inexperienced young man: Whenever I gave him an extra dhirā', he gave me an extra bā'."570

'Ali said: According to (i) Ḥamzah b. Ibrāhīm—Khurasani shaykhs, (ii) 'Ali b. Mujāḥid—Hanbal b. Abī Ḥuraydah—the marzbān of Qūḥistān, and (iii) [an authority/authorities] other than those two: When Qutaybah b. Muslim had returned to Marw and killed Nizak, he sought the king of al-Jūzjān, who had fled from his country. [The king] sent [word to Qutaybah], requesting a safe-conduct, and [Qutaybah] gave him one on condition that he come to him and make peace with him. [The king] requested hostages, to be held by him, while he [in turn] would give hostages. Qutaybah gave [him] Ḥabīb b. 'Abdallāḥ b. 'Amr b. Ḥuṣayn al-Bāhili, and the king of al-Jūzjān gave [him] hostages from his family. The king of al-Jūzjān left Ḥabīb in al-Jūzjān, in one of his fortresses, and came to Qutaybah and made peace with him. Then he returned and died in al-Tālaqān. The people of al-Jūzjān said, "They have poisoned him," and they killed Ḥabīb; [at this,] Qutaybah killed the hostages who were with him. Nahār b. Tawsil'ah said to Qutaybah (wafir):571

May God show you a judgment concerning the Turks like [His] judgment concerning Qurayţah and al-Nadīr!572

A decree from Qutaybah, not tyrannical, through which thirsting bosoms are cured.

570. I.e., he repaid him amply or fourfold. Dhirā' signifies "forearm, cubit," and the dhirā' sharī'yyah is the canonical ell of 49.875 cm; bā' signifies the "span of two outstretched arms" and is the equivalent of four canonical ells.
571. The first two of the following verses are given also by Ibn A'tham [Futūḥ, vol. VII, p. 233].
572. Two of the Jewish groupings at Yathrib against whom the Prophet took harsh measures [EI2, s.v. Kurayţa].
The Events of the Year 91

If Nizak sees disgrace and abasement,
then how many amirs have been rendered stupid
in the war?

Al-Mughirah b. Ḥabna' said, eulogizing Qutaybah and mentioning the killing of Nizak, Şul, and Nizak's nephew [called] 'Uthmān or Shaqrān (kāmil):573

For whom have the abodes effaced at the foot of
a piece [of land]
[everything] except for what remains of dry
herbage and panic grass?
The winds have violently blown about the dust and
rubbish there and have obliterated them,
sweeping right across their open spaces.
An abode of a slave girl, whose saliva is
as if it were musk, the mixture of which is
mingled with wine.
Inform Abū Ḥafṣ Qutaybah of my eulogy,
and recite to him my greeting and salutation.
O sword, convey it, for its praise is
good, and you are witness to my deed.
He is elevated, and, when he is elevated, men are humbled
to Qutaybah, the protector of the preserve of Islam.
The finest one, the one who is chosen for a matter
of moment,
the experienced one, through whom the numerous
enemy is taken.
He goes forth when the coward fears and the war has
become hot, its fire kindled with blazing
kindling grass.
The spear, with the standard before it, is given to drink
blood, under flashing [weapons] and [gushing]
throats;
Heads are cut off by swords as if they were
broken ostrich eggs, when you see them in
the hole.
You see slender steeds readied

573. The first of the following verses appears also [in mangled form] in Ibn A‘tham (Futūḥ, vol. VII, p. 324).
in his courtyard for whatever may befall; With them he brought Nizak down from a high place and al-Kurz, where [Nizak] was doing what he wanted. You gave to his brother, Shaqrân, to drink from his cup, and you gave their two cups to Bâdhâm to drink from. You left Šül, when he attacked, knocked down, with the horses treading on him with the backs and edges of their hooves.

In this year—I mean the year 91—Qutaybah made his second campaign in Shûmân, Kish, and Nasaf, and he made peace with Ṭarkhân.574

[Qutaybah’s Campaign in Transoxania]

‘Ali said: According to (i) Bishr b. ‘Īsâ—Abû Ṣafwân, (ii) Abû al-Sarî and Jabalah b. Farrûkh—Sulaymân b. Mujâlid, (iii) al-Ḥasan b. Rushayd—Tufayl b. Mirdâs al-‘Ammî, (iv) Abû al-Sarî al-Marwâzî—his paternal uncle, (v) Bishr b. ‘Īsâ and ‘Ali b. Mujâhid—Ḥanbal b. Abî Ḥuraydah—the marzban of Qûhistân, (vi) ‘Ayyâsh b. ‘Abdallâh al-Ghanawî—Khurasanî shaykhs, and (vii) my foster father—“each has mentioned something, and I have put it [all] together and have inserted some parts into other parts”: Qaybishtasban575—one of them said Ghushtasban576—the king of Shûmân, threw out Qutaybah’s governor and withheld the tribute on the basis of which he had made peace with Qutaybah. Qutaybah sent to him ‘Ayyâsh al-Ghanawî, accompanied by one of the Khurasanî ascetics, to induce the king of Shûmân to pay the tribute on the basis of which he had made peace with Qutaybah. They reached the country, and [the people] came out to them and shot at them. [The ascetic] turned back, while ‘Ayyâsh al-Ghanawî stayed [where he was]. He said, “Is there no

575. Following the proposal of Marquart in the Addenda et Emendanda [see also Erânsahr, p. 326 (= Kai-Bištaspân; cf. Justi, Iranisches Namenbuch, p. 372)].
576. Following the proposal of Marquart in the Addenda et Emendanda [see also Erânsahr, loc. cit. = Ghushtaspân, and cf. above, p. 128 and n. 442].
Muslim here?" and a man came out of the city to him and said, "I am a Muslim; what do you want?" [Ayyāsh] said, "[I want] you to help me make holy war (jihād) against them." [The man] said, "Yes." Ayyāsh said to him, "Be behind me to protect my back," and he stood behind him; the man's name was al-Muhallab. Ayyāsh fought them; he charged them, and they scattered away from him. [Then] al-Muhallab attacked Ayyāsh from behind and killed him. They found sixty wounds on him, and his death grieved them; they said, "We have killed a brave man."

[News of this] reached Qutaybah, who went to them in person, taking the Balkh road. When he reached [Balkh], he sent his brother 'Abd al-Rahmān on ahead and placed Amr b. Muslim over Balkh. The king of Shūmān was a friend of Šālih b. Muslim's, and Šālih sent to him a man to order him to [render] obedience and guarantee him Qutaybah's pleasure if he reverted to the [terms of the] peace. [The king] refused and said to Šālih's messenger, "With what will you make me frightened of Qutaybah? I, among the kings, have the strongest fortress. When I shoot at the top of it—I, the strongest of people with the bow and the strongest of them in shooting—my arrow does not [even] get halfway up my fortress. I do not fear Qutaybah."

Qutaybah went on from Balkh, crossed the river, and reached Shūmān, where the king had fortified himself. Qutaybah set up mangonels against it and pounded it. When [the king] feared that he would be vanquished and saw what had befallen him, he gathered all the money and jewels he had and dropped them in a spring in the middle of the fortress, the bottom of which was not known.

['Ali] said: Then Qutaybah conquered the fortress. [The king] went out to them, fought them, and was killed. Qutaybah took the fortress by force of arms, killed the fighting men, and took the offspring captive. Then he returned to Bāb al-Ḥadid,577 and passed from there to Kish and Nasaf. Al-Ḥajjāj had written to him, "Outwit Kish, and smash Nasaf; and beware of beating about the bush."578 He conquered Kish and Nasaf, [but] Frīyāb579 held out

---

577. The famous Iron Gate, i.e., the Buzgala pass, on the road from al-Tirmidh to Kish and Nasaf [Barthold, Turkestan3, p. 186; Le Strange, Lands of the Eastern Caliphate, pp. 441–42].
578. Cf. above, p. 147.
579. Thus, too, in Ibn Kathir [Bidāyah, vol. IX, p. 83], but this cannot be the
against him; so he burned it, and it was called "The Burnt."\footnote{580} From Kish and Nasaf, Qutaybah sent his brother 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muslim to Ṭarkhûn in Soghd. \[\text{[\'Abd al-Rahmān] went along until he stopped at a meadow near [Ṭarkhûn and his followers], that being at the time of the afternoon prayer. [His army] broke up into groups and drank until they became silly and made mischief. \[\text{[\'Abd al-Rahmān] ordered Abū Mardiyah, a mawla of theirs (sc. the Bāhilis), to prevent the people from drinking the [fermented] juice,}\footnote{581} he beat them, broke their vessels, and poured out their wine, which flowed into the valley. It was called "Wine Meadow." One of their poets said (kāmil):

As for wine, I do not drink it;
I fear the dog Abū Mardiyah,
Going vigorously and violently with his ax handle,\footnote{582} jumping over walls, [looking] for drink.

\[\text{\'Abd al-Rahmān took from Ṭarkhûn something on the basis of which Qutaybah had made peace with him, handed over to him [some] hostages that were with him, and departed [heading] for Qutaybah, who was at Bukhārā. They then returned to Marw. The Soghdians said to Ṭarkhûn, \[ "You have been satisfied with humiliation, and you have deemed the [paying of] tax agreeable; you are an old man, and we have no need of you."}\footnote{583} \[\text{[\'Ali] said: They put Ghūrak\footnote{584} in charge and imprisoned Ṭarkhûn. Ṭarkhûn said, \[ "There is nothing after being stripped of kingship other than being killed; I prefer that that should be by my [own] hand rather than that someone other than myself should take charge of it in respect of me";} and he leaned on his sword until it came out of his back.\footnote{584} [\'Ali] said: They did this to

\begin{footnote}
\footnote{580. As Barthold \textit{Turkestan}\textsuperscript{3}, p. 138 [also Wellhausen, \textit{Kingdom}, pp. 435 [n. 3], 466].}
\footnote{581. So rendering \textit{al-\'a;ir}, which was clearly alcoholic in this case (Dr. D. F. Waines has informed me that this sense of \textit{\'asīr} is not uncommon).}
\footnote{582. Preferring \textit{bi-shikkatīhi}, as proposed by the Addenda et Emendanda.}
\footnote{583. Following the \textit{Addenda et Emendanda}, rather than the text (see also Gibb, \textit{Arab Conquests}, p. 42 and n. 15 thereto), Ibn Kathir (\textit{Bidāyah}, vol. IX, p. 84) gives this form and says that Ghūrak was Ṭarkhūn's brother.}
\footnote{584. According to al-Ya'qūbi (\textit{Ta'rikh}, vol. II, p. 344), Ghūrak killed Ṭarkhūn.}
\end{footnote}
The Events of the Year 91

Tarkhūn when Qutaybah went out to Sijistān, and they put Ghūrak in charge.

As for the Bāhilis, they say: Qutaybah besieged the king of Shūmān and set mangonels against his fortress. He set up a mangonel that they used to call “The Pigeon-Toed,” shot the first stone, and hit the [city] wall; he shot another, and it landed in the city. Then the stones followed one another, landing in the city. One of them landed in the king’s court, hitting a man and killing him. [Qutaybah] conquered the fortress by force of arms. Then he returned to Kish and Nasaf, and thence to Bukhārā. He stopped at a village in which there were a fire temple and a house of gods; in [this village] there were peacocks, and they called it “The Dwelling Place of the Peacocks.” Then he went to Tarkhūn in Soghd, in order to collect from him that on the basis of which he had made peace with him. When he looked out on the valley of Soghd and saw how good it was, he recited (basīt):

A green and fertile valley that has been protected
from people, out of caution against death and battle.586
I have come to it with fine horses, that are urged along,
bringing at a run tousle-headed [fighters]
thirsty for blood.

['Ali] said: [Qutaybah] took from Tarkhūn his [tribute as stipulated in the] peace. Then he returned to Bukhārā. He made a young man Bukhāra Khudhāh, and killed those he feared would oppose him. Then he went by way of Āmul to Marw.

According to ['Ali]—the Bāhilis—Bashshār b. 'Amr—a man from Bāhilah: [Qutaybah’s men] kept on bombarding their buildings until the fortress was conquered.

[Khālid al-Qasrī’s Strict Governorship of Mecca]

In this year al-Walid b. ‘Abd al-Malik appointed over Mecca Khālid b. ‘Abdallāh al-Qasrī, who remained governor there until 1231 al-Walid died.

586. Reading hadhāru 'l-mawti wa-'l-rahoji, with Ms B.
According to Muḥammad b. ʿUmar al-Wāqidi—Ismāʿīl b. Ibrāhīm b. ʿUqbah—Nāfiʿ, mawla of the Banū Makhzūm: I heard Khālid b. ʿAbdallāh say, “O people, you are in the most sacrosanct of God’s lands. God chose it from [all] the lands and put His House in it. Then He prescribed for His servants the making of pilgrimage to it, ‘he who is able to make his way there.’587 O people, incumbent upon you are obedience and cleaving to the collective body. Beware of uncertainties. By God, no one who impugns his imām (that is, the Caliph) will be brought to me but that I shall crucify him in the Ḥaram. God has placed the caliphate in relation to Him in the position in which He has placed it. Assent, obey, and do not say, ‘Thus and thus.’ The only [right] view concerning what the Caliph writes about or opines is to put it into effect. Know that it has reached me that some of those [given to] disobedience are coming to you and staying in your land. Beware not to accommodate anyone you know to be deviating from the collective body. I shall not find any one of them in the house of any one of you but that I shall demolish his house. Look [carefully] at those you accommodate in your houses. Incumbent upon you are the collective body and obedience. Disunity is the great affliction.”

According to Muḥammad b. ʿUmar—Ismāʿīl b. Ibrāhīm—Mūsā b. ʿUqbah—Abū Ḥabībah: I performed the lesser pilgrimage and stopped at the residences of the Banū Asad, in the houses of al-Zabir. Suddenly, there was [Khālid], calling me. I went into his presence, and he said to me, “Who are you from?” I said, “From the people of Medina.” He said, “What made you stop in the houses of the one who went against obedience?” I said, “It is where I stay, if I stay for a day or so. Then I go back to my [own] house. There is no disobedience in me. I am one of those who exalt the matter of the caliphate. I claim that he who disowns it will be destroyed.” He said, “Where you stayed will not be held against you. But it is disliked that there stays [here] anyone who is scornful of the Caliph.” I said, “God forbid!” [In addition,] I heard him one day saying, “By God, if I were to know that this wild animal that is safe in the Ḥaram had spoken without acknowledging obedience, I would expel it from the Ḥaram. No one who goes

587. Qurʾān, 3:97 = 91.
against the collective body, who scoffs at [the caliphs], may dwell in the Haram of God." I said, "May God grant the amir success."

[Al-Walid’s Visit to Medina]

The leader of the pilgrimage in this year was al-Walid b. ’Abd al-Malik. Ahmad b. Thabit related to me on the authority of him who mentioned it on the authority of Ishâq b. ’Isâ on the authority of Abû Ma’shar, who said: Al-Walid made the pilgrimage in the year 91.

Similarly, Muhammad b. ’Umar said: Musa b. Abî Bakr related to me: Salîh b. Kaysân related to us: When the arrival of al-Walid took place, ’Umar b. ’Abd al-‘Aziz ordered twenty men from Quraysh to go out with him to meet al-Walid b. ’Abd al-Malik; they included Abû Bakr b. ’Abd al-Rahmân b. al-Ḫârith b. Hisâhâm, his brother Muḥammad b. ’Abd al-Rahman, and Abdallâh b. Amr b. Uthmân b. ’Affân. They went out until they reached al-Suwaydâ', they being with ’Umar b. ’Abd al-‘Aziz; with them on that day were riding animals and horses. They met al-Walid, who was mounted. The chamberlain said, "Dismount for the Commander of the Faithful," and they dismounted. Then [al-Walid] gave them an order, and they rode. [Al-Walid] summoned ’Umar and went with him until he stopped at Dhû Khushub. Then they were presented: [Al-Walid] summoned them one by one, and they greeted him. [After this, al-Walid] called for lunch, and they lunched with him; he left Dhû Khushub in the evening.

When he entered Medina, he went in the morning to the mosque, to look at its building. The people were cleared out of it, and no one was left in it except Sa’îd b. al-Musayyab, whom none of the guards dared to send out. [Sa’îd] was in his place of prayer wearing only two thin garments, worth no more than five dirhams. Someone said to him, "If only you would stand," and he said, "I shall not stand until there comes the time when I usually stand." Someone said to him, "If only you would greet the Commander of the Faithful," and he said, "No, by God. I shall not

---

588. Two stages from Medina on the way to Syria (see Comu).  
589. One stage from Medina on the way to Syria (see Comu).  
590. Literally, "... no one was left in it. Sa’îd b. al-Musayyab remained...."
stand up for him." 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azîz said, "I began to steer al-Walid to the side of the mosque, hoping that he would not see Sa'îd until he stood up." But al-Walid happened to glance toward the qiblah and said, "Who is that [person] sitting? Is he the shaykh Sa'îd b. al-Musayyab?" 'Umar said, "Yes, O Commander of the Faithful, he's unpredictable. If he knew that you were here, he would stand up and greet you, [but] his sight is weak." Al-Walid said, "I know about him. We shall go to him and greet him." He took a turn in the mosque until he stopped at the grave [of the Prophet], and then advanced until he stood before Sa'îd. He said, "How are you, O shaykh?" Sa'îd neither moved nor stood, and [then] said, "Well, praise be to God. And how is the Commander of the Faithful?" Al-Walid said, "Well, praise be to God," and he departed, saying to 'Umar, "This is the last of the old school." I said, "Yes, O Commander of the Faithful."

[Muhammad b. 'Umar] said: Al-Walid distributed in Medina many foreign slaves, vessels of gold and silver, and wealth. He gave the sermon in Medina on the Friday and led the prayer.

According to Muhammad b. 'Umar—Ishâq b. Yahyâ: I saw al-Walid delivering the sermon on the pulpit of the Messenger of God, may God bless and preserve him, on Friday in the year when he made the pilgrimage. His troops were lined up in two rows from the pulpit to the back wall of the mosque; in their hands were iron rods, and on their shoulders were iron bars. I saw him ascend it wearing a durrâ'ah594 and a qalansuwvah.595 without a ridâ'.596 He went up the pulpit, and, when he reached the top, he

591. Wa-min ḥâlihi wa-min ḥâlihi: Ibn al-Athîr has wa-min ḥâlihi kadhâ wa-kadhâ, while Ibn Kathir's version (Bidâyah, vol. IX, p. 82) is somewhat different at this point.
593. Raqîqân kathîrân ujmân. Ibn al-Athîr has daqîqân kathîrân, but al-Tabari's 'ujmân is the clincher as far as the raqiqân reading is concerned.
594. A "[garment of the kind called] jubba, slit in the fore part" [Lane, Lexicon, p. 872b, s.v. midra'a], lined, according to EI², s.v. Libâs [vol. V, p. 737a]; see also Dozy, Dictionnaire détaillé des noms des vêtements chez les arabes, pp. 177–81.
595. Originally a close-fitting cap, this could also designate a hood or cowl [EI², s.v. Libâs [vol. V, pp. 734b–735a]]; see also Dozy, Noms des vêtements, pp. 365–71.
596. "Garment covering the upper half of the body" [Lane, Lexicon, s.v.]; al-Ya'qûbî [Ta'rikh, vol. II, p. 341] provides an abbreviated version of this report.
proclaimed a greeting. Then he sat, and the muezzins made the call to prayer. Then they were quiet, and he delivered the first sermon sitting; then he stood, and delivered the second standing. Ishāq said: I met Rajā' b. Ḥaywah,597 who was accompanying [al-Walid], and said, "Do they [always] do it this way?" He said, "Yes. Mu‘awiyyah did it in this way, and so on." I said, "Aren’t you going to speak to him [about it]?" He said, "Qabīṣah b. Dhu‘ayb informed me that he spoke to ‘Abd al-Malik b. Marwān [about it], and he refused to do [anything different], saying, "Uthmān delivered sermons in this way.'" I said, "By God, he did not deliver sermons in this way; 'Uthmān only delivered sermons standing up." Rajā' said, "They were told this and took to it." Ishāq said: We did not see any [Umayyad caliph] more proud than [al-Walid].

Muhammad b. ‘Umar said: [al-Walid] brought the incense of the mosque of the Messenger of God, may God bless and preserve him, its thurible, and the covering of the Ka‘bah. [The covering] was spread out on ropes in the mosque, [it being made] of good brocade. The like of it had never been seen. He spread it out one day, and then folded [it] and moved [it].

The governors of the amṣār in this year were [the same as] those who were their governors in the year 90, except for Mecca, the governor of which in this year was Khalid b. ‘Abdallāh al-Qasrī, according to al-Wāqidi. [An authority/authorities] other than al-Wāqidi said: The governorship of Mecca was ‘Umar b. ‘Abd al-‘Azīz’s in this year too.

The Events of the Year

92

[Oct 29, 710–Oct 18, 711]

Among them was the campaign of Maslamah b. 'Abd al-Malik and 'Umar b. al-Walid in Byzantine territory. Three fortresses were conquered at the hands of Maslamah; the people of Sūsanah migrated to the inner part of Byzantine territory.

In this year Ṣariq b. Ziyād, the mawla of Mūsā b. Nuṣayr, campaigned in al-Andalus with twelve thousand [men]. He encountered the king of al-Andalus—al-Wāqidi claimed that he was called Adrīnūq—who was one of the people of Iṣbahān. He (al-Wāqidi) said: They are the kings of the foreigners of al-Andalus. Ṣariq marched on him with all his forces, and al-Adrīnūq went forward on the king's throne, wearing his crown, his gloves, and all the adornments kings used to wear. They fought a hard battle until God killed al-Adrīnūq. Al-Andalus was conquered in the year 92.

599. Al-Ya'qūbi's version of what is clearly the same report (Ta'rikh, vol. II, p. 341) is to be taken to mean at this point "they are the Goths, the kings of al-Andalus."
In [this year], according to what one of the biographers (ahl al-siyar) claimed, Qutaybah campaigned in Sijistan, heading for the great Zunbil and al-Zubul. When he stopped in Sijistan, the messengers of the Zunbil met him with [a proposal for] a peace agreement. Qutaybah accepted that, departed, and appointed over them 'Abd Rabbihi b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Umayr al-Laythī.

The leader of the pilgrimage in this year was 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz, who was over Medina: Thus it was related to me by Aḥmad b. Thābit on the authority of he who mentioned it on the authority of Ishāq b. ‘Īsā on the authority of Abū Ma'shar; and al-Wāqidī and [an authority/authorities] other than him said the same. The governors of the amṣār in this year were [the same as] their governors in the preceding year.

---

600. I.e., Zābulistān (see Marquart, Erdnahr, p. 247).
Among [the events] in [this year] was the campaign of al-‘Abbās b. al-Walid in Byzantine territory. God conquered Samastiyyah\textsuperscript{602} at his hands.

In it, too, was the campaign of Marwān b. al-Walid against the Byzantines. He reached Khanjarah.\textsuperscript{603}

In it was the campaign of Maslamah b. ‘Abbād al-Malik in Byzantine territory. He conquered Māsah,\textsuperscript{604} and Ḥiṣn al-Hadid, Ghazālah, and Tarḥamah\textsuperscript{605} in the region of Ma-latyah.

In it Qutaybah killed the king of Khām Jird and made a renewed peace with the king of Khwārazm.\textsuperscript{606}

\textsuperscript{602} Sabastiyya, according to Ibn al-Athīr. Brooks ("The Arabs in Asia Minor," p. 193n.) and Lilie (Byzantinische Reaktion, p. 120n.) take it to signify Mistheia.

\textsuperscript{603} I.e., Gangra.

\textsuperscript{604} I.e., Amaseia.

\textsuperscript{605} Following the Mss. and Brooks ("The Arabs in Asia Minor," p. 194n); Khālifah’s version (Ta’rikh, p. 309) is even more mangled.

\textsuperscript{606} Cf. Gibb, Arab Conquests, pp. 42 ff.; Ibn A’tham, Futūḥ, vol. VII, pp. 235–37. It looks as if it remains for Khām Jird to be identified, but Gibb rightly points out that its king is to be identified with Khurrazādh (who figures in the account that follows here), "or at least with his party" (p. 43).
'Ali b. Muḥammad said: According to (i) Abū al-Dhayyāl—al-Muhallab b. Iyās, (ii) al-Ḥasan b. Rushayd—Ṭufayl b. Mirdās al-ʻAmmī, (iii) ʻAlī b. Mujāhid—Ḥanbal b. Abi Ḥuraydah—the marzban of Qūhīstān, (iv) Kulayb b. Khalaf, (v) the Bahilis, and (vi) [an authority/authorities] other than [the foregoing]—some of them mentioned what others did not mention, and I have put it all together: The king of Khwārazm was weak, and his younger brother Khurrazādah seized power. If it reached him that anyone who concerned himself with the king had a slave girl or a riding animal or fine goods, he sent and took it [from him]; or [if] it reached him that any one of them had a daughter or a sister or a beautiful wife, he sent to him and constrained him by force, taking what he wanted and withholding what he wanted. No one could hold out against him, nor could the king protect [anyone]. When [the king] was spoken to [about this], he said, "I am not strong [enough to deal] with him." [Khurraz]madh) had nonetheless filled him with anger, and, when that had gone on for a long time on the part of [Khurrazādah], to the detriment of [the king], he wrote to Qutaybah, calling him to his land [and] desiring to hand it over to him. He sent to him the keys of the cities of Khwārazm—three keys of gold—and he stipulated that [Qutaybah] should hand over to him his brother and all who had opposed him, so that he might judge concerning [them] as he saw fit. He sent messengers concerning [all] that, and he did not apprise any of his marzbāns or dihqāns of what he had written about to Qutaybah. His messengers reached Qutaybah in the last part of the winter, at the time [when] campaigning [started]; Qutaybah had [already] prepared himself for campaigning, and he made it look as if he were heading for Soghd. The Khwārazm Shāh's messengers returned to him with welcome news from Qutaybah, who went and deputed over Marw Thābit al-A'war, Muslim's mawālā.

[ʻAli] said: The next thing they knew was that Qutaybah had
stopped at Hazarasp. They stopped at Hazarasp. The Khwarazm Shah said to his companions, "What do you think?" They said, "We think that we should fight him." He said, "But I do not think that. People stronger and more powerful than we are have been helpless before him. I think that we should turn him away by giving him something. We'll turn him away for this year and then see what we think." They said, "We agree with your view." The Khwarazm Shah accordingly set off and stopped at the city of al-Fil on the other side of the river. ['Ali] said: The cities of the Khwarazm Shah were three in number, surrounded by a single moat; the city of al-Fil is the most strongly fortified of them.

The Khwarazm Shah stopped at [al-Fil] while Qutaybah was at Hazarasp, on the other side of the river; he had not crossed it, and indeed only the Balkh river (that is, the Oxus) lay between him and the Khwarazm Shah. [The latter] made peace with Qutaybah for ten thousand slaves, for gold and goods, and on the conditions that [Qutaybah] would help him against the king of Khām Jird and would fulfill what he had written for him. Qutaybah accepted that from him and fulfilled [what he had said he would do] for him. [He] sent to the king of Khām Jird—who had been hostile to the Khwarazm Shah—his brother 'Abd al-Rahmān, who fought him, killed him, and gained mastery over his land. He then came to Qutaybah from [there] with four thousand prisoners; [Qutaybah] killed them. When his brother 'Abd al-Rahmān brought them, Qutaybah ordered that his throne be brought out, and he appeared before the people [sitting on it].

['Ali] said: He ordered that the prisoners be killed: One thousand were killed in front of him, one thousand to his right, one thousand to his left, and one thousand behind him.

According to ['Ali]—al-Muhallab b. Iyās: The swords of the

---

607. E1, s.v.
608. I.e., at Kāth, the ancient capital of Khwārazm, "at the time of the Arab invasion the town consisted of three parts, of which the most strongly fortified, i.e., the citadel, bore the name of Fil or Fir" (Barthold, Turkestan, p. 144).
609. Pārīn, which is defined in the Glossarium as "fossa quae cingit murum urbis"; according to the Glossarium (p. 82) accompanying al-Baladhuri's Futūh, this is the arabized form of Persian bārgin or pārgin.
610. Translated thus here and below, literally, "heads."
nobles were taken on that day, and heads were cut off with them. Among them were [swords] that could neither cut nor wound. They took my sword, with which nothing had been struck without being cut clean through. One of Qutaybah's family envied me [it], and he indicated to the one who was performing the executions that he should cut to one side with it; he cut a little to one side and it hit the molar of the dead man and was notched. Abū al-Dhayyāl said: I have the sword.

[Ali] said: Qutaybah handed over to the Khwārazm Shāh his brother and those who had gone against him, and he killed them, appropriated their wealth, and sent it to Qutaybah. Qutaybah entered the city of Fil and accepted from the Khwārazm Shāh that on the basis of which he had made peace with him. Then he returned to Hazārasp. Ka'b al-Ashqari said (basīt): Fil has cast to you what is in it and has not transgressed; before you, the boastful babbler wanted it. He who is weak with the spear will not suffice for the frontier, nor will the one who is soft when put to the test, [the one with] a palpitating heart. Do you remember the nights when you were killing Turks on the other side of Kazah, while the babbler was wrapped in his sheet? They only rode horses once they were grown men, heavy [men], hard on their backs. You [pl.] are Sh.bās and Mardādhān, [who is] despicable, and Baskharā', tombs filled with foreskins.

611. Which has now lost its definite article.
613. Presumably, Yazid b. al-Muhallab is meant.
614. Yāqūt, Mu'jam, vol. IV, p. 226 ult., knows this as one of the villages of Marw.
615. This verse calls for several comments: [i] As will become clear and as was noted by Hell (“al-Farazdak's Lieder auf die Muhallabiten,” p. 591 n.), the purpose of the verse is to point to the non-Arab origins of the Muhallabids. The Persian names come in various forms: (a) Sh.bās [Tab.], Shunas [Agh.], and B.shish [Yāqūt],
I have seen that the battle days of Abū Ḥafš [that is, Qutaybah] prefer him, while the efforts of the people differ. [He is] the pure Qaysite, while some of the people are allotted to villages and countryside, those with real genealogies and those with fake ones. If you had obeyed the people of weakness, they would not have shared seventy thousand [slaves], with the glory of Soghd commencing anew. In Samarqand there is more [booty]: you are the one to divide it up, if death hangs back from your soul. You have been ahead with whatever good people have preferred, and no nobility of what they have left misses you.

['Āli] said: ‘Āli b. Mujāhid recited to me [as the wording of the beginning of the first line], “Fil has cast to you what is beyond Kāzah”; ['Āli] said: And so too said al-Ḥasan b. Rushayd al-Jūzjānī. As for [someone] other than those two, he said, “Fil has cast

According to ['Ali]—the Bāhili: Qutaybah acquired one hundred thousand slaves from Khwārazm.619

['Ali] said: Qutaybah's intimates spoke to him in the year 93 saying, "The people are becoming weary," they had come from Sijistān, "let them rest this year." He refused.

['Ali] said: When [Qutaybah] had made peace with the people of Khwārazm, he went to Soghd. Al-Ashqari said:

If you had obeyed the people of weakness, they would not have shared seventy thousand [slaves], with the glory of Soghd commencing anew.

Abū Ja'far said: In this year Qutaybah, on his departure form Khwārazm, campaigned against Samarqand and conquered it.620

**[Qutaybah's Conquest of Samarqand]**

We have already referred to the chain of authorities [isnād] of the people from whom 'Ali b. Muhammad mentioned that he took [material concerning events] when Qutaybah made peace with the lord of Khwārazm. Then he mentioned, by way of insertion into that [account], that, when he took the peace [tribute] of the lord of Khwārazm, al-Mujashshar621 b. al-Muzāhim al-Sulami said, "I need [to say something to you]; let me be alone with you." [Qutaybah] did so, and [al-Mujashshar] said, "If you want [to conquer] the Soghdians one of these days, do so now, for they feel secure from your moving against them this year. They are only ten days away." [Qutaybah] said, "Has anyone advised you [to suggest] this?" He said, "No." [Qutaybah] said, "Have you informed anyone of it?" He said, "No." [Qutaybah] said, "If anyone speaks of it, I shall execute you."

---

618. Where al-Ṭabarī has qālu: Fil madinat Samarqand, al-Baladhuri (Futūh, p. 421) has qālu 'Ali b. Mujāhid: innamā madinat Fil Samarqand.

619. Khalifah (Ta’rikh, p. 309) says ten million, which is amended in the margin to ten thousand.


621. Following the emendation proposed in the Addenda et Emendanda.
Igo The Caliphate of al-Walid b. `Abd al-Malik

[Qutaybah] stayed put that day. On the morning of the next day he summoned `Abd al-Rahmān [b. Muslim] and said, “Go with the horsemen and archers and take the baggage622 to Marw.” The baggage was sent off in the direction of Marw, and `Abd al-Rahmān spent all that day following it, heading for Marw. In the evening, [Qutaybah] wrote to him, “In the morning, send the baggage to Marw and go with the horsemen and archers to Soghd. Keep [this] information secret. I shall be following [you].” ['Ali] said: When [this instruction] reached `Abd al-Rahmān, he ordered the people in charge of the baggage to go on to Marw, and he went where he [himself] had been ordered to go.

Qutaybah addressed [his army] and said, “God has conquered this place for you at a time when campaigning in it is possible. Now this [region of] Soghd has no one to defend it. They have broken the covenant that was between us. They have withheld that on the basis of which we made peace with Ṭārkhūn, and have done to him that which has reached you. God has said, ‘Whosoever breaks his oath breaks it but to his own hurt.’623 Go with God’s blessing. I hope that Khwarazm and Soghd will be like al-Naḍīr and Qurayzhah,624 for God has said, ‘And other [spoils] you were not able to take; God has encompassed them already.’”625

['Ali] said: Qutaybah reached Soghd—`Abd al-Rahān had reached it before him—with twenty thousand [men].626 Qutaybah reached it, accompanied by Khwarazmians and Bukhārans, three or four nights after `Abd al-Rahmān had stopped there, and said, “When we light on a people’s courtyard, how evil will be the morning of them that are warned.”627 He besieged them for a month; in the course of being besieged, [the Soghdians] fought [Qutaybah’s men] several times from a single direction. Fearful throughout the siege, the Soghdians wrote to the king of al-Shāsh and the Ikhsād628 of Farghānah, “If the Arabs vanquish us, they will visit upon you the like of what they brought us.”

622. See above, n. 343.
624. See above, n. 572.
626. Alternatively, the 20,000 men were with `Abd al-Rahmān.
628. Rather than the more usual “Ikhsād” (see EI2, s.f.); for further discussion of this form, see Bombaci, “On the Ancient Turkish Title ‘Saβ,’” pp. 182–83.
[The king of al-Shāsh and the Ikhshād and their followers] agreed to go to [the Soghdians] and sent [word] to them: "Send [against the Arabs] those who may distract them, so that we may make a night attack on their camp."

['Ali] said: They chose horsemen from [among] the sons of the marzbāns, the Asāwirah,629 and heroic men of strength, and sent them off, having ordered them to stage a night attack on the [Arab] camp. The spies of the Muslims came bearing information [of this], and Qutaybah chose three hundred—or six hundred—men of courage, put Šāliḥ b. Muslim in charge of them, and sent them along the road from which he feared that he might be approached. Šāliḥ sent out spies to bring him information [about the enemy], while he [himself] stopped two parasangs away from their camp. The spies returned and informed him that [the enemy] would be coming to him that night. Šāliḥ split his cavalry into three groups, kept two of them hidden, and [himself] stayed on the main road. The polytheists came by night, unaware of the position of Šāliḥ and confident that no one would engage them before [they reached Qutaybah’s] camp. They did not know about Šāliḥ until they ran into him.

['Ali] said: [Šāliḥ and his men] charged them and, when spear thrusts were being exchanged, the two hidden groups came out and fought.

According to ['Ali]—one of the Barājim:630 I was present [on that occasion], and I have never seen people fighting more strongly or with more fortitude in adversity than the sons of those kings; only a few of them fled. We gathered together their weapons, cut off their heads, and took prisoners. We asked them about those whom we had killed, and they said, "You have killed none other than [here] a son of a king, or [here] one of the nobles, or [here] one of the heroes. You have killed men [among whom were those who were each] the equal of a hundred men; [in those cases,] we have written [their names] on their ears."631 Then we entered the camp in the morning, and there was not a single man

629. Persian knights, "who under Persian rule were exempt of taxes together with the other higher classes" (Løkkegaard, Islamic Taxation in the Classic Period, p. 171).
630. A name applied to two separate clan groupings, one in Tamim and one in 'Abd al-Qays (Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, vol. II, p. 224).
631. The syntax is complicated here; Ibn al-Athīr simplifies and changes it.
among us who did not hang up a head known by name. We took as plunder excellent weapons, fine goods, and brisk riding animals, and Qutaybah let us have all that as nafal.

That broke the Soghdians. Qutaybah set up mangonels against [the Soghdians], and shot at them, fighting them without desisting. He was well advised by those of the Bukharans and Khwarazmians who were with him; they fought hard and gave of themselves unstintingly. Ghurak sent [word] to [Qutaybah]: "You are fighting me with my brothers and family from [among] the non-Arabs. Send Arabs out to me." Qutaybah became angry, summoned al-Jadali, and said, "Review the [army] and pick out the bravest people," and [al-Jadali] gathered the [army] together. Then Qutaybah set, reviewing them himself. He summoned the platoon commanders ('urafa') and began to call for one man after another, saying, "What do you have?" The platoon commander would say, "[This is] a brave [man]." "And what is this?" "[This is] one of limited ability." "And what is this?" "[This is] a coward." Qutaybah called the cowards "the Stinkers," took their good weapons, and gave them to the brave men and those of limited ability, and left them the most worn-out weapons. Then Qutaybah took them forward and fought [the enemy] with them, [using both] horsemen and infantrymen. He bombarded the city with the mangonels and made a breach [in the wall] which [the enemy] blocked with sacks of millet. There emerged a man who stood on top of the breach and shouted abuse at Qutaybah. Qutaybah said to the archers who were with him, "Choose two of your number," and they did so. Qutaybah said, "Which of the two of you will shoot at this man [on the understanding that,] if he hits him, he will receive ten thousand [dirhams] and, if he misses him, his hand will be cut off?" One of them held back, while the other came forward and shot him, right in the eye. [Qutaybah] ordered that he be given ten thousand [dirhams].

According to [‘Ali]—the Bāhilīs—Yaḥyā b. Khālid—his father, Khālid b. Bāb, the mawlā of Muslim b. ‘Amr: I was among the

---

632. Preferring Ibrahīm’s mu’alliqun to Guidi’s mu’allaqun.
633. “That part of the booty which was left to the free disposal of the leader, when distributing the portions of booty that were due to the soldiers” [Løkkegaard, Islamic Taxation in the Classic Period, p. 19].
634. See above, n. 583.
archers of Qutaybah. When we conquered the city, I climbed up the wall and reached the place in which that man was. I found him dead on the wall; the arrow had gone right through his eye and come out the nape of his neck.

On the morning of the next day, they bombarded the city and breached it again. Qutaybah said, "Press on to [the breach], so that you may cross on it." They fought [the enemy] until they were on the breach, and the Soghdians shot them with arrows. [The Arabs] put up their shields—a man would put his shield up over his eye and then charge—until they were on the breach. [The Soghdians] said to [Qutaybah], "Depart from us today, so that we may make peace with you tomorrow."

As for Bāhilah, they say: Qutaybah said, "We shall not make peace with you without our men being on the breach and our mangonels moving up and down [bombarding] your heads and your city."

As for [authorities] other than [Bāhilah], they say: Qutaybah said, "The slaves have become frightened. Depart victorious," and they departed. He made peace with them the next day, on [the following terms]: [1] 2,200,000 [dirhams] per annum; [2] in that year, 30,000 slaves free of defect and including neither young boys nor old men; [3] that they would empty the city for Qutaybah, and would not have in it any fighting men; [4] that there would be built for Qutaybah in it a mosque, so that he might enter [it] and pray, and [that] a pulpit would be set up in it, so that he might preach a sermon, eat lunch, and go forth.

[‘Ali] said: When the peace had been concluded, Qutaybah sent ten men—two from each fifth—and they took receipt of that on the basis of which [the Soghdians] had made peace with him. Qutaybah said, "Now they have been humbled—now that their brethren and children have fallen into our hands." Then they emptied the city, built a mosque, and set up a pulpit. Qutaybah went into the city with four thousand [men] he had chosen. When

635. The first of the two preceding figures is also given by al-Baladhuri (Futuḥ, p. 421), and both of them are given by Khalifah (Ta’rikh, p. 309); but Ibn A’tāham (Futūḥ, vol. VII, p. 243) mentions [1a] an immediate payment of 2,000,000 dirhams; [1b] an annual payment of 200,000 dirhams; and [2] 3,000 [sic] slaves including neither young boys nor old men [see also what purports to be the ‘ahd document formalizing the peace arrangements (pp. 244–46)].
he had entered it, he went to the mosque and prayed and preached a sermon. Then he ate lunch and sent [word] to the Soghdians: "Whoever of you wants to take his goods may do so, for I am not going out of [the city]. I have done this for you, and I shall not take from you more than that on the basis of which I made peace with you; but the troops will stay in [the city]."

['Ali] said: As for the Bāhilīs, they say: Qutaybah made peace with them in return for one hundred thousand slaves, the fire temples, and the adornments of the idols. He took receipt of that on the basis of which he had made peace with them, and he was brought the idols, which were despoiled and then placed before him, gathered together, they were like an enormous edifice. He ordered that they be burned, and the non-Arabs said to him, "Among them are idols the burner of which will be destroyed." Qutaybah said, "I shall burn them with my [own] hand." Ghūrak came, knelt before him, and said, "Devotion to you is a duty incumbent upon me. Do not expose yourself to these idols." Qutaybah called for fire, took a brand in his hand, went out, proclaimed "God is great," and set fire to them; [others then also] set fire [to them], and they burned fiercely. In the remains of the gold and silver nails that had been in them, they found fifty thousand mithqāls.636

According to ['Ali]-Makhlad b. Ḥamzah b. Biḍ—his father—someone who witnessed the conquest of Samarqand, or one of the districts of Khurasan: They brought out of it [some] huge copper cooking pots, and Qutaybah said to Hūdayn, "O Abū Sāsān, do you think that Raqāsh637 ever had cooking pots like these?" He said, "No, but ʿAylan638 had a pot like these." Qutaybah laughed and said, "You have gained your revenge."

['Ali] said: Muḥammad b. Abī ʿUaynah639 said to Salm b. Qutaybah in the presence of Sulaymān b. ʿAli,640 "The non-Arabs revile Qutaybah for perfidy; he acted perfidiously at Khwārazm

636. See above, n. 469, and cf. the story given at that point.
637. I.e., Ḥudayn’s own clan.
638. ʿAylan being the grouping to which Bāhilah belonged; the wordplay seems to be that ‘aylan can signify “hungry, going about looking for sustenance.”
640. I.e., Sulaymān b. ʿAli b. ʿAbdallāh al-ʿAbbāsī, governor of al-Baṣrah from 133 (750–51) to 137 (754–55) [de Zambaur, Manuel, p. 40].
The Events of the Year 93

According to ['Ali]—a shaykh from the Banû Sadûs—Hamzah b. Bi'd: Qutaybah acquired in Khurasan—in Soghd—a slave girl who was one of the descendants of Yazdajird. He said, "Do you think that the son of this [girl] will be hajîn?" They said, "Yes, he will be hajîn through his father." He sent her to al-Ḥajjâj, who sent her to al-Walîd; she bore him Yazîd b. al-Walîd.

According to ['Ali]—one of the Bahâlis—Nahshal b. Yazîd—his paternal uncle, who was contemporary with all that: When Ghûrak saw Qutaybah’s pressure against them, he wrote to the king of al-Shâsh, the Ikhshâd of Farghânah, and Khâqân, "We are between you and the Arabs. If we are reached [by them], you will be weaker. Exert whatever strength you have." They took stock and said, "We shall be outmaneuvered [if we use] our common people, for they do not have our ability. We, the grouping of the kings, are the ones to be concerned with this matter. Choose the sons of the kings and the people of valor from [among] the young men of their kings, and let them go forth until they reach Qutaybah's camp, which should be subjected to a night attack while he is distracted with besieging the Soghdians."

They did [this], put in command a son of Khâqân's, and went off, having agreed to make a night attack on the camp. [News of this] reached Qutaybah, who chose people of valor and courage and leading figures—among them Shu'bah b. Zuhayr and Zuhayr b. Ḥayyân; there were four hundred of them. He said to them, "Your enemies have seen God’s favor with you and His support of you in your fighting and your contending. [In view of] all that, God will give you mastery over them. They have decided to use your heedlessness as an expedient and to attack you by night, and have chosen their dihqânâns and kings. You are the dihqânâns and horsemen of the Arabs, and God has favored you with His religion, so do Him a good deed, and you will thereby merit reward, together with defense of your honor."

['Ali] said: Qutaybah set spies on the enemy [and was informed

---

642. Baseborn, having an Arab father and a non-Arab slave mother.
643. So rendering adâ'af wa-adhall.
644. Guidi renders this "Zahir."
645. So transposing the Qur’ânîc expression ablâhu Allâhu balâ’-ın ḥasanân.
by them] until, when [the enemy] were near [enough] to him to be able to reach his camp in the course of the night, he brought in those whom he had chosen, spoke to them, exhorted them, and placed Šāliḥ b. Muslim in charge of them. They went out of the camp at sunset, proceeded [on their way], and stopped two parasangs from the camp on the road of the [enemy] described to them by [the spies]. Šāliḥ split his cavalry into groups, placing one in hiding on his right and one in hiding on his left; halfway—or two-thirds of the way—through the night, the enemy came, together, quickly, and silently. Šāliḥ stood with his cavalry, and when they saw him they attacked him. When spear thrusts were exchanged, the two hidden groups attacked from right and left, and we heard only battle cries. We have never seen people tougher than they.

According to ['Ali]—one of the Barājim—Zuhayr or Shu'bah: We were repeatedly thrusting at them and smiting them when I discerned Qutaybah under the [cover of] night. I had struck a blow that had pleased me, and I looked toward Qutaybah and said, "What do you think, may you [be ransomed] by my father and mother?" He said, "Shut up, may God smash your mouth!" He continued: We killed them and only the [odd] stray escaped. We stayed, gathering plunder and cutting off heads, until morning; then we went to the camp, and I have never seen a group bring the like of what we brought. There was not a [single] man among us who did not hang up a head known by name and [did not have] a prisoner in his bonds. He continued: We took the heads to Qutaybah, and he said, "May God reward you with good for [what you have done for] the religion and personal honor!" Qutaybah showed me regard, without articulating anything to me [by way of special compliment]; in the presenting of gifts and the showing of regard, he joined with me Ḥayyān al-'Adawī and Ḥulays al-Shaybānī, and I thought that he [must have] seen from the like of what he had seen from me. That [battle] broke the people of Soghd. They sought peace and offered tribute. [But Qutaybah] refused, saying, "I am going to avenge the blood of Ṭarkhūn, who was my mawla and one of the people under my protection."

[The main authorities all] said: 'Amr b. Muslim related on the authority of his father, who said: Qutaybah prolonged his stay,

---

646. See n. 632 above.
The Events of the Year 93

and the breach was made at Samarqand. [Muslim?] said: A crier who was eloquent in Arabic called out, abusing Qutaybah.

['Amr b. Muslim?] said: 'Amr b. Abî Zahdam said: We were around Qutaybah. When we heard the abuse, we went out in haste and waited for a long time while he persisted in [his] abuse. I went to Qutaybah's tent and looked, and, there was Qutaybah, sitting with his knees bound to his chest (muhtabîn) by a wrapper, saying, as one talking to himself, “For how much longer, O Samarqand, will Satan nest in you? By God, in the morning I shall do my damnedest with your people.” I departed to my companions and said, “How many intransigent souls from among us and them will die tomorrow!” and I told them [what he had said].

['Ali] said: As for Bahilah, they say: Qutaybah journeyed, keeping the river on his right, until he arrived in Bukhârâ. He rallied [the people of Bukhârâ] with him and journeyed until, when he was at the city of Arbinjân—[the one from which Arbinjân saddlecloths come]—Ghûrak, the lord of Soghd, engaged him with a large force of Turks and people from al-Shâsh and Farghânah. There took place skirmishes between them, without [any large-scale] fighting; the Muslims won all of these, and [the two sides then] desisted from fighting until they drew near to the city of Samarqand. At that point they joined in fighting: The Soghdians made an all-out charge on the Muslims, broke [their ranks, and] passed through their camp; then the Muslims wheeled round on them [and] pushed them back to their camp. God killed a large number of the polytheists, and [the Muslims] entered the city of Samarqand, [the population of which] made peace with them.

According to ['Ali]—the Bahilis—Hâtim b. Abî Saghirah: I saw the cavalry on that day exchanging spear thrusts with the Muslims. Qutaybah had given the order on that day for his throne to be brought out, and he sat on it. [The enemy] exchanged spear thrusts with [the Muslims] until they got as far as Qutaybah, who was sitting with his knees up to his chest, [propping himself] with his sword; he stayed just like that, and the two wings of the Muslims swept in on those who had defeated the center, defeated them, and pushed them back to their camp. Many polytheists

647. Also called Rabinjân, to the west of Samarqand [Barthold, Turkestan³, p. 97].
were killed. The Muslims entered the city of Samarqand, the population of which made peace with them. Ghūrak prepared food and invited Qutaybah to partake of it with him; Qutaybah went to him with a number of his companions and, when he had finished lunch, Qutaybah asked Ghūrak to give him Samarqand. He said to the king, “Depart from it,” and he did so; Qutaybah recited, “And that He destroyed ‘Ād, the ancient, and Thamūd, and He did not spare [them].”

According to [ʿAlī]—Abū al-Dhayyal—ʿUmar b. Abdallāh al-Tamīmī: The person sent by Qutaybah to al-Ḥajjāj with news of the conquest of Samarqand related to me: I reached al-Ḥajjāj, and he sent me to Syria. I reached Syria, entered the mosque of Damascus, and sat, [it being] before sunrise. Next to me was a blind man, and I asked him something about Syria. He said to me, “You are a stranger.” I said, “Yes.” He said, “Where are you from?” I said, “From Khurasan.” He said, “What brought you?” and I told him. He said, “By Him Who sent Muhammad with the truth, you have only conquered it by perfidy. You, O people of Khurasan, are those who will strip the Banū Umayyah of their dominion, and pull Damascus down stone by stone.”

[ʿAlī] said: Al-ʿAlaʾ b. Jarir informed us: It has reached me that, when Qutaybah conquered Samarqand, he stood on its hill, looked at the people scattering in the meadows of Soghd, and recited the words of ʿTarāfah (tawārīḵ): And peoples pastured; had we not alighted at Makhshiyah, they would have taken their camels off and their tents down.

[ʿAlī] said: Khālid b. al-ʿAṣfah informed us: Al-Kumayt said (basīt): Samarqand was Yamani for [many] years, now Muṭar are giving it a Qaysi lineage.

---

649. Reading illā in place of the misprint in the text (which is noted in the Addenda et Emendanda).
650. This line is not to be found in ʿTarāfah's Diwān (ed. D. al-Khaṭīb and L. al-Šāqqāl, Damascus, 1975).
651. Judging by Shiʿr al-Kumayt, no. 188, the following verse survives only here and in Ibn al-Athir.

The campaigning that brought riches nigh has ended, and generosity and munificence have died after al-Muhallab. They have stayed at Marw al-Rūdha as two pledges at his sepulcher, and have been rendered totally absent from both east and west.

Is this campaigning, O Nahār?” Nahār said, “No, this is the congregation, and I am he who says (tawīl):

Neither in our own lifetimes, nor before us, nor after us, is the like of Ibn Muslim. He killed Turks hither and yon with his sword, and made abundant divisions of spoil among us, one division after another.”

[‘Ali] said: Then Qutaybah set off, returning to Marw. He deputed ‘Abdallāh b. Muslim over Samarqand, and left with him massive [numbers of] troops and much war matériel, saying to him, “Do not let [any] polytheist enter any of Samarqand’s gates without having a seal on his hand. If the clay has dried before he goes out, kill him. If you find on him a piece of iron, [or] a knife, [or] anything else, kill him. If you close the gate at night and find any one of them in [the city], kill him.” Ka‘b al-Ashqarī—or, it has been said: a man from Ju‘fī—said (Khafīf):

652. Cf. above, p. 32 and n. 144; Ibn A’tham (Futūḥ, vol. VII, pp. 241–42) wrongly takes the poet in question to have been Ka‘b b. Ma’dān al-Ashqarī.


654. According to al-Ya‘qūbī (Ta’rikh, vol. II, p. 344) and Ibn A’tham (Futūḥ, vol. VII, p. 246), Qutaybah appointed his brother ‘Abd al-Rahmān b. Muslim. It can be added that al-Ya‘qūbī’s account of this episode is rather muddled and that he thought that the peace was concluded in A.H. 94.

655. Thus, too, in Ibn Kathīr (Bidayah, vol. IX, p. 86). The Kitāb al-‘uyūn wa-l-hadā’iq (pp. 2–3) also says that the poet was Ka‘b al-Ashqarī and cites all the following verses; but al-Baladhuri (Futūḥ, p. 421) says that the poet was al-Mukhtār b. Ka‘b al-Ju‘fī and cites only verse 3.
Every day Qutaybah gathers plunder
and increases wealth even more
A Bāhili who has been given a crown to wear until
partings of the hair that were black have
become gray.
He subdued Soghd with the squadrons until
he left it stripped and prone.
The infant weeps at the loss of his father,
and a pained father cries for his infant.
Whenever [Qutaybah] stops in, or reaches, a place,
his cavalry leaves [its] mark there.

['Ali] said: Qutaybah said, “This is [real] succession, not [just] successive killing of a couple of asses [lā ‘idā ‘ayrayn],” because he conquered Khwārazm and Samarqand in a single year. [The explanation of] that [expression is] that, when a horseman fells two asses in a single heat, people say, “He made a succession, one to the other, between the two asses.” Then [Qutaybah] departed from Samarqand and stayed at Marw. His governor over Khwārazm was Iyās b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Amr, over its military affairs (ḥarb)—he was weak—and over its taxation (kharāj) was ‘Ubaydallāh b. Abī ‘Ubaydallāh, the mawla of the Banū Muslim.

['Ali] said: The people of Khwārazm thought Iyās to be weak and gathered together against him. ‘Ubaydallāh wrote to Qutaybah, and Qutaybah sent ‘Abdallāh b. Muslim in the winter as governor, saying [to him], “Flog Iyās b. ‘Abdallāh and Ḥayyān al-Nabāṭī, and shave [their heads]. Draw ‘Ubaydallāh b. ‘Ubaydallāh, the mawla of the Banū Muslim, close to you, and listen to him, for he is loyal.” ‘Abdallāh went on until, when he was one stage from Khwārazm, Iyās was clandestinely informed and warned, and withdrew. ‘Abdallāh then arrived, took Ḥayyān, gave him a hundred lashes, and shaved [his head].

['Ali] said: Then Qutaybah sent al-Mughirah b. ‘Abdallāh with troops to Khwārazm, after ‘Abdallāh. [News of] that reached them, and, when, al-Mughirah arrived, the sons of those whom

---

656. Cf. Lane, *Lexicon*, p. 1978b, where my source of translational inspiration will be obvious.

657. According to al-Baladhuri (*Futūḥ*, p. 421), Qutaybah appointed over Khwārazm “his brother ‘Ubaydallāh b. Muslim.”
[the] Khwârâzm Shâh had killed said, “We shall not help you,” and he fled to the land of the Turks. Al-Mughirah arrived, and took captives and killed. Those who survived made peace with him; he took the tax and went to Qutâybah, who appointed him over Nishapur.

In this year Mûsâ b. Nuṣayr dismissed Târiq b. Ziyâd from al-Andalus and sent him to Toledo.

[Mûsâ b. Nuṣayr’s Dismissal of Târiq b. Ziyâd]

Muḥammad b. 'Umar mentioned that Mûsâ b. Nuṣayr became angry with Târiq in the year 93 and went to him in Rajab of that year [April–May 712], accompanied by Ḥabīb b. 'Uqbah b. Nâfi’ al-Fihrî. When he went off, he deputed over Ifrîqiyyah his son, 'Abdallâh b. Mûsâ b. Nûṣayr. Mûsâ crossed [the sea] to Târiq with [a force of] ten thousand [men] and met him. [Târiq] sought to please him, and he was pleased with him and accepted his excuse from him. [Mûsâ] sent [Târiq] from [where he was] to the city of Toledo, which was one of the great cities of al-Andalus, twenty days’ [journey] from Cordova. There he acquired the table of Solomon the son of David, containing God knows how much [by way of] gold and jewels.658

[Muḥammad b. 'Umar] said: In [this year] the people of Ifrîqiyyah suffered a terrible drought. Mûsâ b. Nûṣayr went out and prayed for rain,659 making invocations until the middle of that day, and preaching a sermon to the people. When he wanted to step down, he was asked whether he was going to make an invocation to the Commander of the Faithful. He said, “This is not a day for that.” They were given to drink that which sufficed them for a time.

In this year 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azîz was dismissed from Medina.

Why al-Walid Dismissed ['Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azîz]

The reason for that, according to what has been mentioned, is that 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azîz wrote to al-Walid informing him of the harshness of al-Ḥâjjâj toward the people of his governorship in Iraq, of his aggression toward them and his oppression of them,

659. See EI², s.v. Istîskâ'.
without any right (on his part) or offense (on theirs), and that reached al-Ḥajjāj, who held it against 'Umar and wrote to al-Walid, "I have with me the deviant elements of the Iraqis and the people of schism. They have emigrated from Iraq and have taken refuge in Medina and Mecca. That [constitutes a point of] weakness." Al-Walid wrote to al-Ḥajjāj, "Suggest to me [the names of] two men," and [al-Ḥajjāj] wrote to him suggesting 'Uthmān b. Ḥāyyān and Khālid b. 'Abdallāh. Al-Walid appointed Khālid over Mecca, and 'Uthmān over Medina, and dismissed 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz.

Muḥammad b. 'Umar said: 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz went out of Medina and stayed at al-Suwaydā', saying to [his mawla] Muzāḥim, "Does it make you fearful that you are one of those whom Taybah has expelled?"661

In this year 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz flogged Khubayb b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr on al-Walid's order to him and poured on his head a skin of cold water.662

Muhammad b. 'Umar mentioned that Abū al-Mulayḥ related to him on the authority of someone who was present when 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz gave Khubayb b. 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr fifty lashes, poured a skin of water on his head on a wintry day, and made him stand at the door of the mosque; he stayed [there] all that day and then died.

The leader of the pilgrimage in this year was 'Abd al-'Azīz b. al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik: Thus it was related to me by Ahmad b. Thābit on the authority of him who mentioned it on the authority of Ishāq b. 'Isā on the authority of Abu Ma'shar. The governors of the amṣār in this year were [the same as] the governors in the preceding years, except for the case of Medina, where the governor was 'Uthmān b. Ḥāyyān al-Murri, who took over, so it has been said, in Sha'bān of the year 93 [May–June 712]. As for al-

660. Caskel, Gamharat an-nasab, register.
661. The reference being to the [Prophetic] ḥadīth, "innahā Taybah wa-innahā tanfī al-khabath," "It is Taybah [i.e., Medina] and it expels/will expel dross" (Wensinck, Concordance, vol. IV, p. 69). Ibn al-Athir spells it out: "When 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz went out of Medina, he said, 'I fear that I shall be one of those whom Medina has expelled,' meaning by that the saying of the Messenger of God, may God bless and preserve him, 'It will expel its dross.'"
Wāqīdī, he said that 'Uthmān reached Medina on Shawwāl 27 in the year 94 [July 26, 713]. One of [the authorities] said: 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz departed from Medina, dismissed, in Sha'bān of the year 93, and campaigned in [the same year]. When he went off, he deputed over it Abū Bakr b. Muḥammad b. 'Amr b. Ḥazm al-Anšārī. 'Uthmān b. Ḥayyān reached Medina on Shawwāl 27 [August 6, 712].
The Events of the Year

94
(OCTOBER 7, 712–SEPTEMBER 25, 713)

Among them was the campaign of al-ʿAbbās b. al-Walīd in Byzantine territory. It has been said that he conquered Anṭākyah\(^{663}\) in [this year].

In [this year], according to what has been said, ʿAbd al-ʿAzīz b. al-Walīd campaigned in Byzantine territory until he reached Ghazālah; al-Walīd b. Hīšām al-Muʿaytī reached the land of Burj al-Ḥamām,\(^{664}\) and Yazīd b. Abī Kabshah [reached] the land of Sūriyāh.

In it there was an earthquake in Syria.

In it, too, al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad al-Thaqāfī conquered the land of al-Hīn.\(^{665}\)

In [this year] Qutaybah campaigned in al-Shāsh and Farghānah

---


\(^{664}\) Not identified. As Wellhausen has pointed out (“Die Kämpfe der Araber,” p. 437n.), it may be interchangeable with al-Yaʿqūbī’s “marj al-shāhm” [s.p.; *Taʾrikh*, vol. II, p. 337], which was between Malāṭyah and al-Maṣṣīṣah.

\(^{665}\) I.e., parts of Sind. Clearly Muḥammad b. al-Qāsim should be understood in place of al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad (see above, p. 141).
until he reached Khujandah and Kāsān, the two [principal] cities of Farghānah.

Qutaybah's Campaign [in al-Shāsh and Farghānah]

ʿAlī b. Muḥammad said that Abū al-Fawāris al-Tamīmī informed him on the authority of Māhān and Yūnūs b. Abī Ishaq that Qutaybah campaigned in the year 94. When he crossed the river, he imposed a levy of twenty thousand fighting men on the people of Bukhārā, Kish, Nasaf, and Khwārazm. ʿAlī said: They went with him to Soghd; they were then sent to al-Shāsh, while [Qutaybah] himself went to Farghānah. He went as far as Khujandah, the people of which gathered against him and engaged him. They fought several times, with the Muslims being victorious on each occasion. One day [the Muslims] were unoccupied and rode their horses [about, here and there]; one man went to the top of an elevated place and said, "By God, I haven't seen [anything] like today [for us to be caught] off guard. If there were any commotion today, with us as spread about as I see, we would be shamefully [defeated]." A man beside him said, "By no means; we are as ʿAwf b. al-Khari said (mutaqārib):

We betake ourselves to the land because of love of engaging [in fighting], and we do not guard against a bird of omen when it flies; Whether it be auspicious or inauspicious, either way we meet with prosperity."

Sahbān Wāʾil said, mentioning their fighting at Khujandah (kāmil):

Ask the horsemen in Khujandah, [who are] beneath sharp/slim spears, "Wasn't I the one who used to gather them together

---

666. Reading this, as in Ms B, rather than Kāshān, as in the text; Kāshān is in Jūzjān, not Farghānah [see Cornu].
669. The following verses are also given by Ibn Kathir (Bidāyah, vol. IX, pp. 95–96), who says that Ibn al-Jawzī says in his Munazzam that Sahbān died in the caliphate of Muʾāwiyah some time after A.H. 50. Al-Ṭabarī makes no other reference to Sahbān.
206 The Caliphate of al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik

[again] when they were defeated, and came forward to fight?

Wasn't I the one who smote the head of the insolent and endured the spears?"

This, and you are the hero of all Qays, giving out on a large scale.

You have excelled Qays in generosity, just as your father did in past years.

The justice of your judgment among them in all money [matters] has become clear.

Your [pl.] manliness is complete and your [pl.] glory has risen up to the loftiest of mountains.

['Ali] said: Then Qutaybah went to Kāsān,670 the [principal] city of Farghānah, [where] he was joined by the troops he had sent to al-Shāsh, which they had conquered and most of which they had burnt; [from Kāsān,] Qutaybah departed to Marw. Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to Muḥammad b. al-Qāsim, “Send such Iraqis as you have with you to Qutaybah, and send to [i.e., with] them Jahm b. Zahr b. Qays, for he is better with Iraqis than with Syrians.” Muḥammad was fond of Jahm b. Zahr; when Jahm bade him farewell, he wept and said, “O Jahm, [this is] the [moment of] parting.” [Jahm] said, “It cannot be avoided.” ['Ali] said: [Jahm] reached Qutaybah in the year 95 (713–14).

[1258] In this year 'Uthmān b. Ḥayyān al-Murri arrived in Medina as governor for al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik.

['Uthmān b. Ḥayyān al-Murri's] Governorship

We have already mentioned the reason for al-Walid's dismissal of 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz from Medina and Mecca and his appointment of Muḥammad b. Ḥayyān as amir of Medina.

Muḥammad b. 'Umar claimed that 'Uthmān reached Medina as amir on 27 Shawwāl in the year 94 (July 26, 713) and stopped there at Dār Marwān,671 saying, “By God, [this is] a repellent place,672 he who is [really] deceived is he who is deceived by you”; and he placed Abū Bakr b. Ḥazm in charge of the judiciary.

670. See n. 666 above.
671. See above, n. 447.
672. So rendering miz'ān: See the Glossarium.
According to Muḥammad b. 'Umar—Muḥammad b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī Ḥurrah—his paternal uncle: I saw 'Uṯmān b. Ḥayyān take Riṭāḥ b. 'Ubaydallāh and Munqīdhiḥ al-Īrāqi; he imprisoned them, punished them, and then sent them in neck collars⁶⁷³ to al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf. He let no Iraqi, whether a merchant or anyone else, [stay] in Medina. He ordered [all of] them out, from every place [in the area under his control], and I saw them in neck collars. He hounded the nonconformists and arrested Ḥayṣam, on whom he inflicted amputation,⁶⁷⁴ and Manḥūr; the two of them were from Khawārizj.

[The same authority] said: I heard [‘Uṯmān] deliver a sermon on the pulpit, saying, “0 people, we have found you, both long since and more recently, to be insincere to the Commander of the Faithful. [Now] there have taken refuge with you those who will increase your unsoundness. The people in Iraq are people of schism and hypocrisy. By God, they are the nest of hypocrisy and the egg that split apart and produced it! By God, I have never put an Iraqi to the test but that I have found him who thinks most of himself to be him who says about the family of Abū Ṭālib what he says.⁶⁷⁵ They are not [in reality] partisans of [the family of Abū Ṭālib]; [rather,] they are enemies of them and of [persons] other than them. Because of what God desires by way of spilling their blood, I shall not, by God, be brought anyone who has given refuge to any one of them, or has rented him a house, or has accommodated him, but that I shall demolish his house and shall cause to befall him what he deserves. When 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭāb garrisoned⁶⁷⁶ the territories, striving after what was good for his subjects, those who wanted to make holy war would stop by him and seek his advice, [asking,] 'Is Syria dearer to you or Iraq?' and he would say, 'Syria is dearer to me. I think that Iraq is an incurable disease; in it Satan has hatched [his brood] and they have made things difficult for me.⁶⁷⁷ I can see myself scattering them

⁶⁷³. See n. 303 above.
⁶⁷⁴. The text reads simply fa-qata'ahu. According to the Kitāb al-'uyūn wa'l-haddā'iq [p. 16], 'Uṯmān was ordered by al-Walid to cut off his hand and his foot and then kill him.
⁶⁷⁵. Apparently a roundabout way of suggesting that the most arrogant and hypocritical of the Iraqis professed themselves to be extreme philo-Ṭālibids.
⁶⁷⁶. So rendering massa'ara.
⁶⁷⁷. La-qaḍ dā'alu bi: Lane, Lexicon, p. 2074, renders this "[the people of El-Koofeh have caused that] the means of effecting my object in their affair . . . have
in the [various] territories. [But] then I say, "If I were to scatter them, they would corrupt those into whose presence they enter by [using] argument and contention, [saying,] 'How?' and 'Why?' and by [their] swiftness of entering into sedition.'" If they are put to the test with swords, no superiority on their part emerges. They did no good for 'Uthmān, who met with death and disaster from them. They were the first of the people to occasion this enormous breach, undoing the loops of Islam one by one and spoiling [its] territories. By God, I shall draw nearer to God with everything I do to them, because of what I know of their view[s] and their tenets. Then the Commander of the Faithful Muʿāwiya took charge of them, he cajoled them and they did him no good. [Next,] a real man⁶⁷⁸ took charge of them, flogging them and extending [his] sword over them; he made them fearful, and they became orderly for him, whether willingly or otherwise, that being because he tested them and knew them. 0 people, by God, we have never considered [any] rallying cry to be the like of security; nor have we considered [any] basis [for life] to be worse than fear. So cleave to obedience. 0 people of Medina, I have experience of disobedience. By God, you are not people given to fighting; keep to your houses and grit your teeth. For I have sent to your gathering (majālis) those who will hear [what you say] and will inform me about you. [Something] other than unnecessary talk is more requisite for you. Leave off the stigmatizing of governors; for [such stigmatizing causes] the situation gradually to deteriorate, until sedition comes about. Sedition is an affliction; seditions destroy the religion, property, and children." ¹²⁶⁰

According to Muhammad b. 'Umar—Khālid b. al-Qāsim—Saʿīd b. 'Amr al-Anṣārī: I saw 'Uthmān b. Ḥayyān's crier call out among us, "O Banū Umayyah b. Zayd,⁶⁷⁹ God's protection will be removed from anyone who gives refuge to an Iraqi." There was with us a Başran of some merit, one of the pious people, called Abū Sawādah, and he said, "By God, I do not want to occasion something unpleasant for you. Convey me to somewhere where I may

---

⁶⁷⁸. Rajul min al-nās: Presumably, al-Ḥaji is meant.
⁶⁷⁹. Presumably, the Aws and Anṣār clan of Umayyah b. Zayd b. Mālik is meant.

**Unnamed Reference**

become strait to me . . . and the treating them with gentleness has become difficult to me."

---

¹²⁶⁰
be safe.” I said, “There is no good for you in going out. God will protect both you and us.” [Sa‘īd b. ‘Amr] continued: I took him into my house, and [news of that] reached ‘Uthmān b. Ḥāyyān, who sent guards. I removed him to my brother’s house, and [the guards] came across nothing; [the person] who had got me into trouble was an enemy. I said to the amir, “May God cause the amir to prosper! He is bringing [to your attention] a falsehood. Do not punish on the basis of it.” He continued: [‘Uthmān] gave the person who had got me into trouble twenty lashes. We got the Iraqi out. He used to perform the ritual prayer with us, not missing a single day. The people of our house showed kindness to him and said to him, “We shall die in defense of you.” He did not leave until ‘Uthmān was dismissed.

According to Muhammad b. ‘Umar—‘Abd al-Ḥakīm680 b. ‘Abdallāh b. Abī Farwah: Al-Walid sent ‘Uthmān b. Ḥāyyān to Medina to expel those Iraqis who were there and to scatter the nonconformists and those who controlled them and those who espoused their cause. He did not send him as governor; he neither ascended the pulpit nor gave a sermon on it. When [‘Uthmān] had done what he did to the Iraqis and to Manhūr and others, [al-Walid] established him over Medina [as governor], and he [thenceforward] used to ascend the pulpit.

In this year al-Ḥajjāj killed Sa‘īd b. Jubayr.681


The reason why al-Ḥajjāj killed him was that he had gone against [al-Ḥajjāj], together with ‘Abd al-Raḥmān b. Muhammad b. al-Ash‘ath. Al-Ḥajjāj had put [Sa‘īd] in charge of the troops’ stipends when he sent ‘Abd al-Raḥmān to fight the Zunbil. When ‘Abd al-Raḥmān disavowed al-Ḥajjāj, Sa‘īd was among those who disavowed him with him; and, when ‘Abd al-Raḥmān was defeated and fled to the Zunbil’s country, Sa‘īd [also] fled.

According to Abū Kurayb—Abū Bakr b. ‘Ayyāsh: Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to so-and-so, who was in charge of Iṣbahān—and Sa‘īd was [there]: Abū Ja‘far said: I think that, when he fled from al-Ḥajjāj,
he went to İsbahân. [Al-Ḥajjāj] wrote to [this governor], “Saʿīd is with you. Arrest him.” The order came to a man who held himself aloof from doing wrong, and he sent [word] to Saʿīd, “Move yourself away from me.” Saʿīd did so and went to Ādharbayjān, where he remained [for some time]. Then he felt that he had been there long enough, and he made the lesser pilgrimage; he went out to Mecca and stayed there. [In Mecca] there were people of his sort, lying low and not revealing their names.

[1262] [Abū Kurayb?] continued: Abū Ḥuṣayn said, relating this to us: It reached us that so-and-so had been made amīr of Mecca, and I said to [Saʿīd], “O Saʿīd, this man cannot be trusted; he is a man of evil nature, and I am on my guard against him for you. Go off! Depart!” [Saʿīd] said, “O Abū Ḥuṣayn, by God, I have been a fugitive until I have become ashamed before God. Let there come to me what God has prescribed for me.” I said, “By God, I think that you are happy [saʿīd], just as your mother named you.” [Abū Ḥuṣayn] continued: That man came to Mecca and sent [for Saʿīd], who was arrested. Then he treated [Saʿīd] gently and spoke to him and tried him this way and that.682

According to Abū Āsim—ʿAmr b. Qays: Al-Ḥajjāj wrote to al-Walid, “The people of hypocrisy and schism have taken refuge in Mecca. If the Commander of the Faithful sees fit to allow me [to get] at them, that will be a good thing.” Al-Walid wrote to Khālid b. Abdallāh al-Qasrī, who arrested ‘Aṭā’, Saʿīd b. Jubayr, Mujāhid, Ṭalq b. Ḥabīb, and ʿAmr b. Dinār.683 As for ʿAmr b. Dinār and ‘Aṭā’, they were released, since they were Meccans. As for the others, they were sent by [Khālid] to al-Ḥajjāj; Ṭalq died on the way, Mujāhid was held in prison until al-Ḥajjāj died, and Saʿīd b. Jubayr was killed.

According to Abū Kurayb—Abū Bakr—al-Ashjaʾi: When the two guards brought Saʿīd b. Jubayr, he was accommodated in a house near to al-Rabadhah.684 One of the guards went off to answer a call of nature, while the other remained. The one who was with [Saʿīd] woke up, having had a dream, and said, “O Saʿīd, by

682. Reading yudiruḥu, as proposed by the Addenda et Emendanda.
God, I'll have nothing to do with killing you. In my dream I was told, 'Woe to you, have nothing to do with killing Sa‘īd b. Jubayr.' Go where you want. I shall never pursue you.' Sa‘īd said, "I hope for well-being and [keep on] hoping," and he refused. Then [the other guard] came, and on the next day he had a similar dream and was told, "Have nothing to do with killing Sa‘īd." He said, "O Sa‘īd, go where you wish. I'll have nothing to do with killing you," [and he kept on saying this?] until he brought him to his house; the house in which Sa‘īd was is this house of theirs.685

According to Abū Kurayb—Abū Bakr—Yazīd b. Abī Ziyād, the mawlā of the Banū Hāshim: I entered into [Sa‘īd's] presence in this house of Sa‘īd's, and he was brought in fettered. Then the Kūfān qurrā' entered into his presence. I said, "O Abū 'Abdallāh, did he speak to you?" 686 He said, "Yes, by God," laughing and talking to us, with a little daughter of his on his lap. She glanced and saw the fetter, and wept. I heard him say, "My daughter, be careful not to take [it] as a bad omen," and, by God, that was hard on him. We followed him, saying goodbye to him, until we got to the bridge with him. The two guards said, "We shall never take him across until he gives us a surety. We are afraid that he may drown himself." [Yazīd] continued: We said, "Sa‘īd drown himself?" but they did not cross until we made ourselves responsible for him.

According to Wahb b. Jarīr—his father—al-Fadl b. Suwayd: Al-Ḥajjāj sent me off for something. Sa‘īd b. Jubayr was brought [in my absence], and I then returned and said [to myself], "I'll see what [al-Ḥajjāj] does," and I stood by al-Ḥajjāj's head. Al-Ḥajjāj said to him, "O Sa‘īd, did I not cause you to partake of my trust? Did I not appoint you? Did I not do [such-and-such]?" until I thought that he was going to let him go. [Sa‘īd] said, "Yes." "Then what induced you to go against me?" [Sa‘īd] said, "It was enjoined upon me [to do so]." [The narrator] continued: [At this, al-Ḥajjāj] flew into a rage and said, "Hah! You thought that the enjoining of the Enemy of the Merciful687 [constituted] a duty incumbent upon you, and you did not think that you had any duty to God, to the Commander of the Faithful, and to me. Behead him!" and he

685. Presumably, the narrator was in, or in sight of, the relevant house at this juncture in his narrative. The text is rather tangled here.
686. The identity of the subject here is unclear.
687. 'Aduww al-raḥmān: Cf. above, n. 95.
212 The Caliphate of al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik

was beheaded; his head fell, attired in a small white item of headgear.

According to Abū Ghassān Mālik b. Ismā'īl—Khalaf b. Khalīfah—a man who said: When Sa'im b. Jubayr was killed and his head fell, he called out “There is no god but God” three times; the first time he articulated it clearly, and the next two times he said something like that, without clear articulation.

According to Abū Bakr688 al-Bāhili—Anas b. Abī Shaykh: When al-Ḥajjāj was brought Sa'id b. Jubayr, he said, “May God curse the son of the Christian woman”—[Anas] said: Meaning Khālid al-Qasrī, who had sent [Sa'id] from Mecca—“didn’t I know the place where he was? Yes, by God, and the [very] house in Mecca where he was.” The he advanced upon Sa'id and said, “What induced you to go out against me?” He said, “May God cause the amir to prosper, I am simply a Muslim man who makes a mistake on one occasion and gets it right on another.” [Anas] continued: Al-Ḥajjāj cheered up, and his face brightened, and he hoped that he might find a way out of [this] situation. [Anas] continued: Then he came back at [Sa'id] about something, and Sa'id said, “But I was bound by an oath of allegiance to ['Abd al-Rahmān].” [Anas] continued: Then [al-Ḥajjāj] became filled with rage, to the extent that one of the ends of his ridā'689 fell from his shoulder, and he said, “Oh Sa'id, did I not go to Mecca and kill Ibn al-Zubayr, and then take its people’s oath of allegiance and your oath of allegiance to the Commander of the Faithful, ‘Abd al-Malik?” He said, “Yes.” [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, “And did I not then arrive in al-Kūfah as governor of Iraq and renew the oath of allegiance to the Commander of the Faithful and take your oath of allegiance to him for a second time?” He said, “Yes.” [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, “And you then forswear two oaths of allegiance to the Commander of the Faithful and fulfill one to the weaver, the son of the weaver? Behead him!” [Anas?] said: It was [Sa'id] that Jarīr meant with his words [kāmil]:690

How many a breaker of two oaths of allegiance have you left, with his beard dyed with the blood of [his]
jugular veins.  

688. Following the Addenda et Emendanda. 
689. See above, n. 596. 
690. Diwān, p. 90.
According to 'Attāb b. Bishr—Sālim al-Aftās: Al-Ḥajjāj was brought Saʿīd b. Jubayr when he was about to go riding and had put one of his feet in the stirrup.\textsuperscript{691} He said, "By God, I shall not ride until you occupy your sitting place in hellfire. Behead him!" and he was beheaded. Then al-Ḥajjāj's mind became confused on the spot, and he started saying, "Our fetters, our fetters."\textsuperscript{692} [The people present] thought that he was referring to the fetters on Saʿīd b. Jubayr; they cut his legs at the knees and removed the fetters.

Muḥammad b. Ḥātim said: 'Abd al-Malik b. 'Abdallāh related to us on the authority of Hilāl b. Khabbāb:\textsuperscript{693} Saʿīd b. Jubayr was brought to al-Ḥajjāj, who said to him, "Did you write to Muṣʿab b. al-Zubayr?" He said, "No, Muṣʿab wrote to me." [Al-Ḥajjāj] said, "By God, I shall kill you." [Saʿīd] said, "In that case I shall be happy (saʿīd), just as my mother named me."

[The narrator] said: [Al-Ḥajjāj] killed him and then [himself] lasted only about forty days after him. When he slept, he would see [Saʿīd] in his sleep, taking hold of the front part of his clothing and saying, "O enemy of God, what did you kill me for?" and he would say, "What concern is Saʿīd b. Jubayr of mine? What concern is Saʿīd b. Jubayr of mine?"

Abū Jaʿfar said: This year was called the year of the specialists in religious law (fuqahā'), [for] in it most of the Medinan fuqahā' died, [starting with] 'Alī b. al-Ḥusayn, peace be upon him, at the beginning of it, then 'Urwah b. al-Zubayr, and then Saʿīd b. al-Musayyab and Abū Bakr b. 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. al-Ḥārith b. Hishām.\textsuperscript{694}

In this year al-Walid placed Sulaymān b. Ḥabīb\textsuperscript{695} in charge of the judiciary in Syria.

There is disagreement about who led the pilgrimage in this year. Abū Maʿṣhar said, according to what Aḥmad b. Thābit related to me on the authority of him who mentioned it on the author-

\textsuperscript{691} Thus rendering simply al-gharz aw al-rikāb.
\textsuperscript{692} Quyūḏūnā quyūḏūnā, and thus, too, in the Kitāb al-ʿuyūn waʾl-ḥadāʾiq [p. 10] and Ibn Kathir [Bidayah, vol. IX, p. 97]; the variants suggest an alternative possible reading qayyīḏūnā qayyīḏūnā, "fetter us, fetter us!"
\textsuperscript{693} Following the Addenda et Emendanda.
\textsuperscript{694} Cf. Juynboll, Muslim Tradition, pp. 41–42.
\textsuperscript{695} Al-Muḥāribī. Cf. Waki', Akhbār al-qudāh, vol. III, pp. 210–12, where we are told that he was 'Abd al-Malik's judge over Ḥimṣ and that he was a judge for 'Umar II and Hishām, but where no mention is made of al-Walid.
ity of Išāq b. Ĩsā on his (Abū Maʿsharʿs) authority: Maslamah b. 'Abd al-Malik led the pilgrimage in the year 94. [However,] al-Wāqidi said: In the year 94 'Abd al-'Azīz b. al-Walīd b. 'Abd al-Malik led the pilgrimage. [Al-Wāqidi] added: It is said [that] Maslamah b. 'Abd al-Malik [did so].

The governor of Mecca in [this year] was Khālid b. 'Abdallāh al-Qasrī; over Medina was 'Uthmān b. Ḥayyān al-Murri; over al-Kūfah was Ziyād b. Jarīr, with Abū Bakr b. Abī Mūsā in charge of the judiciary; over al-Baṣrah was al-Jarrāḥ b. 'Abdallāh, with 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Udhaynah over the judiciary; over Khurasan was Qutaybah b. Muslim; and over Egypt was Qurrah b. Sharik. Over Iraq and the East in its entirety was al-Ḥajjāj.
In it there took place the campaign of al-‘Abbās b. al-Walīd b. ‘Abd al-Malik in Byzantine territory. At his hands God conquered three fortresses, according to what has been said, they being Tūlus, al-Marzbānayn,696 and Hiraqlah.

In it the rest of al-Hind was conquered, except for al-Kayraj and al-Mandal.697

In it Wāṣīṭ al-Qaṣāb was built, in the month of Ramadān [May–June 714].

In it Mūsā b. Nušayr left al-Andalus for Ifrīqiyyah. He performed the rites of the Feast of the Sacrifice (10 Dhū al-Ḥijjah/August 26, 714) at Qaṣr al-Mā', one [Arab] mile from al-Qayrawān.

In it Qutaybah b. Muslim campaigned against al-Shāsh.

696. It remains for these two places to be identified with any certainty [Brooks, "The Arabs in Asia Minor," p. 194; Lillie, Byzantinische Reaktion, p. 121].

697. Yāqūt knows Mandal [sic] as a place in al-Hind from which fine aloes come [Mu'jam, vol. IV, p. 660]; he does not mention al-Kayraj. Both places figure in al-Balādhuri's account of Arab operations in Sind (Futūḥ, pp. 440, 442).
The narrative returns to that of 'Ali b. Muḥammad, who said: Al-Ḥajjāj sent from Iraq an army that joined Qutaybah in the year 95; and [Qutaybah] went on campaign. When he was at al-Shāš or at Kushmāhan, news of the death of al-Ḥajjāj in Shawwāl reached him. That grieved him; he turned back to Marw and recited (tawīl):

By my life, how good is the man from the Āl Ja'far, who was caught by snares in Ḥawran.
If you live, I shall not tire of my [own] life, and if you die, there will be no avail in life after your death.

['Ali b. Muḥammad] said: He returned with [his army] and dispersed them; he left some people in Bukhārā and sent some people to Kish and Nasaf. Then he reached Marw and stayed there.

There came to him al-Walid's letter: "The Commander of the Faithful knows your testing and your striving in the waging of holy war against the enemies of the Muslims, and the Commander of the Faithful raises your station and does to you what ought to be done. [Now] consolidate your campaigns and await the reward of your Lord; let not your letters to the Commander of the Faithful fall short, so that it may be as if I can see your territory and the frontier on which you are."

In [this year] al-Ḥajjāj b. Yūsuf died in Shawwāl (mid-June–mid-July 713), aged fifty-four years, also put at fifty-three years; it has also been said that his death took place in this year on 25 Ramadān (June 13, 713).

In it, when death was imminent, al-Ḥajjāj deputed over the ritual prayer his son 'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥajjāj. According to al-Ṭawqīdī, al-Ḥajjāj's rule over Iraq lasted for twenty years.

In this year al-ʿAbbās b. al-Walid conquered Qinnasrīn.

---

698. One stage from Marw on the Bukhārā road (Le Strange, Lands of the Eastern Caliphate, p. 400).
699. The poet is al-Ḥuṣaynah. Cf. Aghānī2, vol. XVI, p. 295 (where an extra verse is given); Yāqūt, Mu'am, vol. II, p. 358 (where two extra verses are given).
700. This cannot be right (and is ignored by Brooks, Wellhausen, and Lilie); there is no evidence that Qinnasrīn (see EI2, s.v. Qinnasrin) had fallen out of Arab control. Possibly this is a mangled version of the report that al-ʿAbbās raised levies from Qinnasrīn (see al-Baladhuri, Futūḥ, p. 189).
In it, al-Waḍḍāḥī and about one thousand men with him were killed in Byzantine territory.

In it, according to what has been mentioned, al-Manṣūr, ‘Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. ‘Alī was born.

In it al-Walid b. ‘Abd al-Malik put Yazīd b. Abī Kabshah in charge of military affairs (ḥarb) and civilian affairs (ṣalāt) in the two mīṣrās of al-Kūfah and al-Baṣrah; and he put Yazīd b. Abī Muslim in charge of their taxation (kharāj). And it has been said that, when his death was imminent, al-Ḥajjāj deputed Yazīd b. Abī Kabshah over the military affairs of the two places and [over] the civilian affairs of their people and Yazīd b. Abī Muslim over their taxation and [that], after the death of al-Ḥajjāj, al-Walid confirmed them [in their positions] over what al-Ḥajjāj had deputed them over. He did the same with all of al-Ḥajjāj’s governors; after [his death], he confirmed them [in their positions] over the governorships they occupied during his lifetime.

The leader of the pilgrimage in this year was Bishr b. al-Walid b. ‘Abd al-Malik: Thus it was related to me by Ahmad b. Thabit on the authority of him who mentioned it on the authority of Ishaq b. Ḽisā on the authority of Abu Ma’shar; and al-Wagidi said the same.

The governors of the amšār in this year were the same as those who were [governors] in the preceding year, except for al-Kūfah and al-Baṣrah, which were joined to those whom I have mentioned, after the death of al-Ḥajjāj.

701. This (together with the parallel reference in Ibn al-Athīr) appears to be the sole reference to him; presumably, he was one of the lieutenants of al-Waḍḍāḥī, the Berber freedman of ‘Abd al-Malik who commanded the force known as the Waḍḍāḥiyyah (Crone, Slaves on Horses, p. 38).
The Events of the Year

96

[September 16, 714—September 4, 715]

In it there took place, according to what al-Waqqidi said, the winter campaign of Bishr b. al-Walid; he returned after al-Walid had died.

[The Death of al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik]

In it there took the place the death of al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik on Saturday in the middle of Jumada II in the year 96 (late February 715), according to what all the biographers (ahl al-siyar) say. There has been disagreement about the length of his caliphate. According to Ibn Wahb—Yūnus—al-Zuhri: Al-Walid ruled for ten years less one month. According to Ahmad b. Thābit—Ishaq b. 'Isa—Abū Ma'shar: The caliphate of al-Walid lasted for nine years and seven months. Hishām b. Muḥammad said: The rule of al-Walid lasted for eight years and six months. Al-Waqqidi said: His caliphate lasted for nine years, eight months, and two nights. There has also been disagreement about the length of his life.

Muḥammad b. 'Umar said: He died at Damascus aged forty-six years and six months. Hishām b. Muḥammad said: He died aged forty-five. 'Ali b. Muḥammad said: He died aged forty-two and a
few months. 'Ali said: The death of al-Walid took place at Dayr Murān;\(^702\) he was buried outside Bāb al-Šaghīr;\(^703\) and it has been said: in the al-Farādis graveyards.\(^704\) And it has [also] been said that he died aged forty-seven.

According to what 'Ali said, he had nineteen sons: 'Abd al-'Azīz, Muḥammad, al-'Abbās, Ibrāhīm, Tamīm, Khālid, 'Abd al-Raḥmān, Muḥāshshīr, Maṣrūr, Abū 'Ubaydah, Ṣadaqah, Maňūs, Marwān, 'Anbasah, 'Umar, Rawḥ, Bishr, Yazīd, and Yaḥyā. The mother of 'Abd al-'Azīz and Muḥammad was Umm al-Banīn bt. 'Abd al-'Azīz b. Marwān, and the mother of Abū 'Ubaydah was a Fazāriyyah; the rest of [the sons] were by various mothers.\(^705\)

**Report of Some of What He Did**

According to 'Umar [b. Shabbāh]—'Ali: In the opinion of the Syrians, al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik was the worthiest of their caliphs. He built mosques—the mosque of Damascus and the mosque of Medina—set up pulpits,\(^706\) gave out to the people, and gave to those afflicted with elephantiasis, telling them not to beg from the people; he gave every cripple a servant and every blind person a guide. During his rule massive conquests were effected: Mūsā b. Nuṣayr conquered al-Andalus, Qutaybah conquered Kāshghar, and Muḥammad b. al-Qāsim conquered al-Hind. [The narrator] continued: Al-Walid would stop by at the greengrocer's, take a bunch of greens, and say, "How much is this?" [The greengrocer] would say, "[One] fals,"\(^707\) and [al-Walid] would say, "Put more [greens] in it."

[The narrator] continued: A man from the Banū Makhzūm came to him asking him [for help] in respect of a debt of his. [Al-Walid] said, "Yes, if you are deserving of that." [The Makhzūmī] said, "O Commander of the Faithful, how can I not be deserving

---

702. A monastery near Damascus (see *EI*\(^2\), s.v.).


704. Yaqūt (*Mu'am*, vol. III, p. 862) says that al-Farādis is "a place near Damascus"; presumably, what is meant here is the graveyard near the Bāb al-Farādis, on the north side of Damascus (*EI*\(^2\), s.v. Dimashq, vol. II, pp. 279a, 281a).


706. Reading al-manābīr with the *Iṣd* (vol. IV, p. 424); the text has al-manār.

707. A copper or bronze coin (*EI*\(^2\), s.v.).
The Caliphate of al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik

of that, given my relationship [to you]?" [Al-Walid] said, "Have you recited the Qur’an?" He said, "No." [Al-Walid] said, "Draw near to me." He drew near, and al-Walid knocked off his turban with a rod he had in his hand and struck him several times with it; he said to a man [in attendance], "Keep this [fellow] with you, and do not let him part from you until he has recited the Qur’an."

'Uthmān b. Yazīd b. Khālid b. 'Abdallāh b. Khālid b. Asid709 betook himself to [al-Walid] and said, "O Commander of the Faithful, I have a debt." [Al-Walid] said, "Have you recited the Qur’an?" He said, "Yes," and [al-Walid] asked him to recite ten verses from [the Sūrah of] the Spoils and ten from Repentance. He did so, and [al-Walid] said, "Yes, we’ll pay up for you, and we shall make close our ties of relationship thereby."

[The narrator] continued: Al-Walid became ill and fell unconscious. He remained most of that day thought by [those who were in attendance] to be dead. He was wept over, and the official couriers went off with [news of] his death. When a messenger reached al-Ḥajjāj, [the latter] said, "We belong to God and to Him shall we return!" and called for a rope, which was tied to his hand and then secured to a pillar; he said, "O God, do not empower over me one who has no mercy; how often have I asked you to make my death [take place] before his!" and he began to make invocations. He was thus engaged when an official courier reached him with [the news of al-Walid’s] regaining of consciousness.

‘Ali said: When al-Walid regained consciousness, he said, "No one will be happier at the well-being of the Commander of the Faithful than al-Ḥajjāj."

'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz said, "How great is God’s bounty to us through your well-being! In my mind’s eye I envisage a letter coming to you from al-Ḥajjāj, in which he mentions that, when [news of] your recovery reached him, he sank to the ground prostrating himself to God, freed every mamlūk of his, and sent out [as gifts] bottles of Indian preserved fruit." A few days later there arrived a letter saying just that.

['Ali] said: Al-Ḥajjāj did not die before becoming burdensome to

---

708. Presumably, because the mother of Hishām, al-Walid’s brother, was a Makhzūmiyyah.
709. Of the Banū Abī’l-‘Is of ‘Abd Shams of Quraysh [see Caskel, Ġamharat annasab, chart 8].
The Events of the Year 96

al-Walid. A servant of al-Walid's said: One day I was washing al-Walid for lunch. He stretched out his hand, and I began pouring the water on him, he was inattentive, the water was flowing, and I couldn't speak. Then he splashed the water in my face and said, "Are you dozing?" and he raised his head up to me and said, "You don't know what happened last night?" I said, "No." He said, "Woe to you! Al-Ḥajjāj died." I said, "We belong to Him and to Him shall we return!" He said, "Be quiet. It wouldn't please your master [any more] if he had an apple in his hand to smell."

'Ali said: Al-Walid was an enthusiast for building and making constructions and estates. When people met in his time, they would ask one another about building and constructions. Then there took charge Sulaymān, who was an enthusiast for sexual intercourse and food, and people took to asking one another about coupling and slave girls; and, when 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Aziz took charge, they would meet, and one man would say to another "What is your wīrd' tonight? How much of the Qur'ān have you memorized? When will you complete memorizing [it]? When did you complete memorizing [it]? For how much of the month will you fast?" Jarir said, elegizing al-Walid (basīṭ):

O eye, weep copious tears aroused by remembrance; after today there is no point in your tears' being stored.

The Caliph's noble qualities have been concealed by earth in which a burial niche has been dug, a niche the side of which inclines.

When the catastrophe had become clear, his sons were like stars whose central moon has fallen.

They were all [together]; neither 'Abd al-'Aziz, nor Rawḥ, nor 'Umar, repelled his fate.

According to 'Umar—'Ali: Al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik made the pilgrimage, and Muḥammad b. Yūsuf' did likewise from the Yemen, carrying presents for al-Walid. Umm al-Banin said to [her husband] al-Walid, "O Commander of the Faithful, make Muḥammad b. Yūsuf's present over to me!" and he ordered that it should be delivered to her. The messengers of Umm al-Banin

710. A section of the Qur'ān recited privately.
711. Diwān, pp. 296–97 (where two additional verses are given).
712. The brother of al-Ḥajjāj [see EI2, s.v. al-Ḥadjījā] b. Yūsuf [p. 42a].
reached Muhammad concerning [this matter], and Muhammad refused [to hand the presents over], saying, "Not until the Commander of the Faithful takes a look at them and decides," for there were many presents. [Umm al-Banin] said, "O Commander of the Faithful, you ordered that Muhammad's presents were to be delivered to me; I have no need of them." [Al-Walid] said, "Why?" She said, "It has reached me that he took them from people by force, required them to make them, and oppressed them." Muhammad transported the goods to al-Walid, who said, "It has reached me that you acquired [these] by force." [Muhammad] said, "God forbid." [Al-Walid] gave the order, and [Muhammad] was required to swear fifty oaths by God, between the Corner [in which the Black Stone is accommodated] and the Standing Place [of Abraham], 713 that he had not taken any of [the gifts] by force, had not oppressed anyone, and had only acquired them lawfully. He swore; al-Walid accepted [his oaths] and handed [the presents] over to Umm al-Banin. Then Muhammad b. Yusuf died in the Yemen, afflicted by a disease from which he became decomposed. 714

[Al-Walid's Desire to Remove Sulaymān from the Succession]

In this year al-Walid had wanted to go to his brother Sulaymān to remove him from the succession, desiring [that] the oath of allegiance [be taken] to his son as his successor; that was before the illness from which he died.

According to 'Umar—'Ali: Al-Walid and Sulaymān were the two designated successors of 'Abd al-Malik. When power passed to al-Walid, he wanted to have the oath of allegiance taken to his son 'Abd al-'Azīz [as his successor] and to remove Sulaymān from the succession. [Sulaymān] refused, and [al-Walid then] endeavored to induce him [to agree] on the basis that he would make the succession his after 'Abd al-'Azīz. [Sulaymān] refused, and [al-Walid] offered him large amounts of money. [Sulaymān still] refused. [Al-Walid] wrote to his governors, [instructing them] to take the oath of allegiance to 'Abd al-'Azīz. No one responded to

713. See EI2, s.v. Makām Ibrāhim.
714. Which is presumably intended to suggest that he had sworn a false oath.
that except for al-Ḥajjāj and Qutaybah and some of the notables of the people. 'Abbad b. Ziyād715 said [to al-Walid], “The people are not responding to you positively in this matter; and, even if they were to do so, I would not be sure that they would not act perfidiously toward your son. Write to Sulaymān to come to you, for he does owe you obedience, and endeavor to induce him [to agree] to the oath of allegiance being taken to 'Abd al-'Azīz as his successor. He won't be able to hold out while he is with you; and, if he does refuse, the people will be against him.” Al-Walid accordingly wrote to Sulaymān, ordering him to come [to him]. [Sulaymān] delayed, and al-Walid resoled to go to him and remove him from the succession. He ordered [his retinue] to get ready, and he gave the order for his mare,716 which was brought out. Then he became ill, and died before he could go, still desiring that.

According to 'Umar—'Ali—Abū 'Āṣim al-Ziyādī—al-Hilwāth al-Kalbi: We were in al-Hind with Muhammad b. al-Qāsim. God killed Dāhīr, and a letter came to us from al-Ḥajjāj [instructing us] to disavow Sulaymān. When Sulaymān had taken charge, a letter came to us from him: “Sow and till; no Syria for you.” We stayed in that land until 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz came to power. Then we returned.

According to 'Umar—'Ali: Al-Walid wanted to build the mosque of Damascus, in which there was a church.717 He said to his companions, “I beg of you nothing but that each of you bring me one brick,” and each man began to do so. An Iraqi brought him two bricks, and he said to him, “Whom are you from?” He said, “From the people of Iraq.” [Al-Walid] said, “O people of Iraq, you go to excess in everything, even in obedience.” They demolished the church and built it into a mosque. When 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz took charge, [some of the Christians] complained to him of that. It was said [to him], “Everything outside the city was conquered by force of arms,” and he said to [the people who had complained], “We'll return your church to you and demolish the church of Thomas, which was conquered by force of arms, and

715. 'Abbad b. Ziyād b. Abi Sufyān [see EI2, s.v.
716. Reading hajir or hijir, where Guidi has understood hujjar, Ibn al-Athīr gives khiyām.
717. This is what the text says. In fact, al-Walid wanted to enlarge the existing mosque onto adjoining land occupied by the church of St. John the Baptist [see EI2, s.v. Dimashk, at vol. II, pp. 280–81].
build it into a mosque." When he said that to them, they said, "Never mind. We'll leave you to what al-Walid demolished and you leave the church of Thomas to us." 'Umar did that.

In that year Qutaybah conquered Kāshghar and campaigned in China.718

[Qutaybah in Kāshghar and China]

The narrative returns to that of 'Ali b. Muhammad with the list of authorities I mentioned earlier. He said: Then Qutaybah campaigned in the year 96, taking with [his troops] their dependents and desiring to afford his dependents a safe refuge in Samarqand, out of fear of Sulaymān. When he had crossed the river, he put one of his mawlās, a man called al-Khwārazmī, in charge of the river crossing and said, "No one may cross except with a pass." He went to Farghānāh and sent [ahead] to the 'Īṣām pass719 [troops] to facilitate for him the road to Kāshghar, the nearest of the cities of China; [news of] the death of al-Walid reached him while he was at Farghānāh.

According to ['Ali]—Abū al-Dhayyāl—al-Muhallab b. Iyās—Iyās b. Zuhayr: When Qutaybah crossed the river, I went to him and said to him, "I didn't know your view about the dependents, so that we might make preparations in that regard. My older sons are with me, but there are dependents I have left behind, and an old mother, and they do not have with them anyone to take care of them. If you see fit, [I hope] that you will write a letter for me [to go] with one of my sons, whom I shall send to bring me my family." He wrote the letter and gave it to me. I then reached the river, the man in charge of the [crossing] being on the other side. I beckoned with my hand, and some people came [across] in a boat. They said, "Who are you, and where is your pass?" I informed them, and some of them sat with me while others took the boat back to the man in charge and informed him. [Iyās] went on: Then they returned to me and transported me, and I reached [the people


719. Named after 'Īṣām b. 'Abd Allāh al-Bāhili, who is reported to have been appointed in this area by Qutaybah [Barthold, Turkestan, p. 186, and Gibb, Arab Conquests, p. 49, both citing al-Ṭabarī, Ta'rikh, ser. ii, p. 1440].
on the other side; they were eating, and I was hungry, so I hurled myself [at the food]. [The man in charge] asked me things while I was eating and not answering him. He said, “This bedouin is [half-]dead from hunger.” Then I rode, reached Marw, transported my mother, and returned, heading for the camp. [News of] the death of al-Walid came, and I departed for Marw.

According to [‘Ali]—Alū Mikhnaf—his father: Qutaybah sent Kathirb. fulān to Kāshghar; he took captives from it and sealed their necks [with the words] “Part of what God has granted to Qutaybah.” Then Qutaybah returned, and [news of] the death of al-Walid reached them.

[‘Ali] said: According to (i) Yahyā b. Zakariyya’ al-Hamdāni—Khurasani shaykhs, and (ii) al-Ḥakam b. ‘Uthmān—a Khurasani shaykh: Qutaybah penetrated far, until he drew near to China. [‘Ali] continued: The king of China wrote to [Qutaybah], “Send to us one of the nobles who are with you, [that] he may tell us about you and we may ask him about your religion.” Qutaybah chose twelve—one of them said: ten—men from his army, from assorted tribes,”721 good-looking, beefy men, eloquent, hirsute, and brave, [this being] after he had asked about them and found them to be the best of those from among whom they came. Qutaybah spoke to them and contended with them in sagacity; he perceived intellects and good looks, and he ordered that they be well equipped with weapons, fine silks, embroidered garments, soft delicate white clothing, sandals, and perfume. He mounted them on fine horses, to be led with them, and riding animals for them to ride.

[‘Ali] said: Hubayrah b. al-Mushamraj al-Kilābī was eloquent, unconstrained with his tongue. [Qutaybah] said to him, “O Hubayrah, how are you going to conduct [this]?” [Hubayrah] said, “May God cause the amir to prosper! I have a sufficiency of self-discipline. Say what you wish, and I shall say [that] and hold to it.” [Qutaybah] said, “Go with God’s blessing; through God comes success. Do not remove your turbans until you reach [the king’s] country. When you enter into his presence, inform him that I have sworn that I shall not depart until I tread on their land, seal [the necks of] their kings, and collect their tax.”

[‘Ali] said: They went off, led by Hubayrah b. al-Mushamraj.

720. Ibn al-Athīr has “Kabir.”
721. Taking this to be the sense of min afnā’ al-qabā’il here.
When they arrived, the king of China sent to them, summoning them. They entered the bathhouse, and then emerged and donned white clothes with tunics underneath; they applied ghāliyah\(^{722}\) perfume to themselves, censed themselves, put on sandals and rida’s,\(^{723}\) and entered into [the king’s] presence; with him were the grandees of his kingdom. They sat down, and neither the king nor any of those sitting with him spoke to them; then they stood up [and went out]. The king said to those who were present with him, “What do you think of these [people]?” They said, “We think they are people who are nothing but women; there was not one of us who, on seeing them and smelling their perfume, did not have an erection.”

[‘Ali] said: On the next day the king sent for them, and they donned embroidered garments, silken turbans, and maṭārif\(^{724}\) and went to him in the morning. When they entered into his presence, they were told, “Return.” [The king said to his companions, “What do you think of this attire?” They said, “This attire is more like the attire of men than that first one was. They are [indeed men].”]

On the third day the king sent for them, and they strapped on their weapons, donned their head mail and helmets, girded themselves with their swords, shouldered their bows, mounted their horses, and went [to him] in the morning. The king of China looked at them, and he saw what resembled mountains advancing. When they drew near [to him], they fixed their spears into the ground. Then they advanced toward [the king and his companions], tucking up their garments. Before they could enter, they were told, “Return,” on account of the fear of the [Arabs] that had entered the hearts of [the king and his companions].

---

\(^{722}\) Which is variously defined as “a sort of perfume, well known”; “a certain compound of perfumes”; “musk mixed or boiled [with other perfumes]”; and “a perfume composed of musk and ambergris and camphor and oil of ben” (Lane, Lexicon, s.v.).

\(^{723}\) See above, n. 596.

\(^{724}\) The mitraf is defined by Lane (Lexicon, s.v.) as “a garment, . . . or [such as is termed] rida’, . . . of [the kind of cloth called] khazz, . . . square, or four-sided . . . having ornamental or coloured or figured, borders (a’lam): . . . or a garment having, in its two ends, or sides, [fi taraṣayhi] two such borders (‘alamān): . . . or a square, or four-sided, garment of khazz.”
['Ali] said: They departed; they mounted their horses, pulled up their spears, and urged on their horses, as if pursuing one another with them. The king said to his companions, "What do you think of them?" They said, "We have never seen the like of these." In the evening the king sent [word] to them: "Send me your leader, the worthiest of you as a man." They sent Hubayrah to him. When [Hubayrah] had entered into his presence, [the king] said to him, "You have seen the might of my dominion and that no one can protect you from me while you are in my country. You are in the position of an egg in the palm of my hand. I am going to ask you about something, and, if you do not tell me the truth, I shall kill you." [Hubayrah] said, "Ask!" He said, "Why did you do what you did with [your] dress on the first, second, and third days?" [Hubayrah] said, "As for our dress on the first day, that is what we wear among our families, and the perfume we use when with them. As for the second day, [that is what we wear) when we go to our amirs. As for the third day, [that is] our dress for our enemies. When we are aroused and provoked, we [dress] thus." [The king] said, "How well you organize your customs. Depart to your master and tell him to depart, for I know his cupidity and the small number of his companions; otherwise I shall send against you someone who will destroy both you and him." Hubayrah said, "How can one whose front cavalry are in your country, while the last of them are in the places where the olive trees grow, be said to have a small number of companions? How can one who has left the world behind him, under his control, and has campaigned against you, be charged with cupidity? As for your [attempt] to frighten us with being killed, we have allotted spans; when [their ends] come about, the noblest of them [involves] being killed. We do not dislike [that], nor do we fear it." [The king] said, "What then will satisfy your master?" [Hubayrah] said, "He has sworn an oath that he will not depart until he treads your land, seals your kings, and is given tax." [The king] said, "We shall extricate him from his oath. We shall send some soil from the soil of our land, so that he may tread on it; we shall send him some of our sons so that he may seal [their necks], and we shall send him some tax, so that he may be pleased with it." [The narrator] said: He called for some dishes of gold with soil in them, and he sent silk and gold and four young men from [among] the sons of their
kings; he gave them leave [to depart] and presented them with fine gifts, and they went off and reached [Qutaybah] with what [the king] had sent. Qutaybah accepted the tax, sealed the young men and returned them, and trod on the soil. Sawādah b. 'Abdal-lāh al-Salūlī said (kāmil):

There is no disgrace in the delegation you sent to China, if they followed the right way. They broke their eyelids against the motes, out of fear of death, except for the noble Hubayrah b. Mushamraj. He wanted nothing but to seal their necks and [to take] hostages, handed over [as a pledge] for the remission of tax.

[1280] He transmitted the message you asked him to be mindful of, and brought a way out of violating the oath.

['Ali] said: Qutaybah sent Hubayrah to al-Walid, and he died at Qaryah in Fārs. Sawādah elegized him, saying (kāmil):

To God be attributed [the excellence of] the grave of Hubayrah b. Mushamraj; what generosity and beauty it contains! And eloquence that the eloquent fall short of, when people gather to witness what men say. He was [like] spring, when the droughts had followed one another, and [like] a lion, when heroes quailed. May clouds raining torrents give water to Qaryah, where his grave is. The pawing steeds wept at the loss of him, as did every straight and waving spear,

725. Both the poet and the verses that follow are apparently known only here (and in the parallel passage in Ibn al-Athir).

726. In her entries on Fārs, Cornu (Atlas: Répertoires, p. 55) lists twelve place names in which the first component is Qaryah.

727. Ṣāfinūt. More exactly, Lane (Lexicon, s.v.) defines ṣāfin as [a horse] “standing upon three legs and the extremity of the hoof of the fourth leg: . . . or standing upon three legs, and turning back the extremity of the fore part of the fourth hoof, that of his foreleg: . . . or standing upon three legs . . . .”
And there wept for him tousie-headed women, who did not find anyone to console them in the year that was affected by drought and barrenness.

According to [Ali]—The Bāhilis: When Qutaybah returned from campaigning each year, he would buy twelve fine mares and twelve dromedaries, paying no more than four thousand dirhams per mare, and have them looked after until the time for campaigning [came round again]. When he was ready for the campaign and was encamped, he had [the mares] tethered and made lean; he would not cross a river with horses until their flesh was lean. He used to mount his advance parties on them; he used to send on his advance parties horsemen from [among] the ashrāf, together with non-Arabs he thought to be faithful, [these latter being mounted] on the dromedaries. When he sent out an advance scout, he would order that a tablet be inscribed; then he would break it into two pieces and give him one piece and keep the other, which he would not be able to simulate, and would order him to bury [his piece] in a place that he would describe to him, such as a well-known ford or tree, or a ruin. Then he would send someone to search it out, so that he might know whether his advance scout was telling the truth or not. Thabit Qulnah al-'Atākī said, concerning those of the kings of the Turks whom [Qutaybah] killed (wāfir):728

The killing of Kāz.r.nk and K.shbyz gladdened the eye, as did what B.yār encountered.729

Al-Kumayt said, concerning the campaign in Soghd and Khwārazm (basīf):730

Afterwards, in a campaign that was blessed, [a campaign that] destroys peoples' agriculture and reaps,

728. Cf. above, n. 569; the following verse appears not to occur elsewhere.
729. The forms and significations [if any] of these names/titles remain to be elucidated ("B.yār" is given in the Addenda et Emendanda in preference to the "Y.bād" given in the text).
730. If we are to judge by Shi'īr al-Kumayt, no. 146, the following verses are found only here.
The cloud [of this campaign] brought Fil its heavy rain, and Soghd, when its cold shower poured on them. Fil [still has] plunder to give as booty at the divisions of spoil—[and] nothing mean or paltry.

Those [are the] conquests by which the Caliph is afforded the proof that we are people who exert our fullest efforts.

You did not avert your face from [any] people in [any] campaign against them, until they were told, "May you die!" and they were killed.

You were not pleased with any fortress of theirs if it was holding out, until the One, the Everlasting, could be proclaimed in it with the words "God is great!"
Bibliography of Cited Works

Aghanî, see al-İsfahānî.
A'shâ Hamdân, see Geyer, von Goutta.


Dozy, R. P. A. *Dictionnaire détaillé des noms des vêtements chez les arables*. Amsterdam, 1845.

——. *Supplément aux dictionnaires arables*. Leiden, 1881.

Dunlop, D. M. "*Arab Relations with Tibet in the 8th and Early 9th Centuries A.D.*," *İslâm Tetkikleri Enstitüsü Dergisi* 5 (1973), pp. 301–18.


Bibliography of Cited Works


Ibn al-Kalbī, see Caskel.


ʿIqd, see Ibn ʿAbd Rabbihi.


Justi, F. Iranisches Namenbuch. Marburg, 1895.


Løkkegaard, F. Islamic Taxation in the Classic Period with Special Reference to Circumstances in Iraq. Copenhagen, 1950.


Naqä’i’d Jarir wa-al-Farazdaq. Edited by A. A. Bevan. 3 vols. Leiden, 1905–12.
Qur’an. Where two different numbers are given for a verse, the first is that of the official Egyptian edition, the second that of G. Flügel’s text [Leipzig, 1883].
Schlegel, G. La stèle funéraire du Teghni Giogh. Helsinki, 1892.
Al-‘Uyyīn wa-al-ḥadā’iq, see Kitāb al-‘uyūn wa-al-ḥadā’iq.


Index

For purposes of alphabetization, b. (son), bt. (daughter), and the definite article al- have been ignored; tribal names beginning with Banū have, however, been alphabetized under that word.

A

Abūn b. 'Uthmān (b. 'Affān) 13, 33-34, 71
Abazqubahd 68
'Abbād b. Ziyād 223
al-'Abbās b. al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik 140-41, 146, 149, 184, 204, 215-16, 219
'Abd al-'Azīz b. Marwān 80, 108-14
'Abd al-'Azīz b. al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik xiv, 164, 202, 204, 214, 219, 221, 222-23
'Abd al-Ḥakīm b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī Farwah (narrator) 209
'Abd al-Jabbār b. Yazīd b. al-Rab'ah al-Kalībī 158-60
'Abd al-Malik b. 'Abdallāh (narrator) 213
'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān xi, xiv, 6-10, 12, 21-24, 32-33, 52, 57, 66, 71, 79-81, 83-86, 88, 97, 108-21, 126, 181, 212, 222
'Abd al-Malik b. al-Muhallab 47, 86, 129, 156-57

'Abd al-Mu'min b. Shabath b. Rib'ī al-Tamīmī 5
'Abd al-Qays 49, 53-54
'Abd Rabbihi b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Umayr al-Laythī 183
'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Abbās b. Rabī'ah b. al-Ḥārith b. 'Abd al-Muṣṭālib (al-Hāshimi) 17, 21-22, 25, 52-56, 60, 89, 97
'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Āmir al-Ḥaḍramī, ḥalīf of Ḥarb b. Umayyāh 20
'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Abī Laylā 25, 35, 48
'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Abī al-Zinād (narrator) 131
'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Awf al-Ru'āsī, Abū Humayd 39
'Abd al-Raḥmān b. 'Awsajah, Abū Sufyān al-Nihmī 15
'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Ḥabīb al-Ḥakāmī 25
'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Ash'ath xi-xiii, 3-12, 14-26, 35, 38, 42-43, 46-53, 57-58, 62-63,
Index

'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muḥammad b. al-Ash’ath (cont.)
66–69, 72, 77–83, 88, 97, 103, 111, 158, 209, 212
'Abd al-Rahmān b. Mundhir b. Bishr b. Ḥārithah; see 'Abd al-Rahmān b. al-Mundhir b. al- Ĵārūd
'Abd al-Rahmān b. al-Mundhir b. al- Ĵārūd 53–54, 56
'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muslim al-Bāhili
143, 152, 155, 165–72, 175–76, 186, 190
'Abd al-Rahmān b. Sulaym al-Kalbi 25
'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ṭalḥah b. 'Abdallih b. Khalaf 57, 64
'Abd al-Rahmān b. Udhaynah (b. al- Harith al-‘Abdi) 13, 156, 214
'Abd al-Rahmān b. al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik 219
'Abdallih b. Abān al-Ḥārithi 10
'Abdallih b. 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān
23–24, 44, 72, 109, 118, 149
'Abdallih b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar 132, 142
'Abdallāh b. al-Aḥtām 165
'Abdallāh b. 'Āmir b. Mīṣmā' (al-Shahbānī) 11–12, 15
'Abdallāh b. 'Āmir al-Nā‘ār b. al-Tamīmī al-Muṣībī 6, 50–52, 66
'Abdallāh b. 'Āmir b. Rābi‘ah 132
'Abdallāh b. Amr b. 'Uṯmān b. 'Affān 179
'Abdallāh b. Dhu‘āb al-Sulamī 24, 43
'Abdallāh b. Fuḍālā b. al-Zahrānī 56
'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥājjāj b. Tha’labī 120
'Abdallāh b. al-Ḥājjāj b. Yūsuf 216
'Abdallāh b. Hammām al-Salūlī 125
'Abdallāh b. Ja‘far (narrator) 114
'Abdallāh b. Khāzīm 90, 95
'Abdallāh b. Mu‘ammad b. Shumayr al-Yaṣḥūrī 27
'Abdallāh b. Muḥammad b. 'Ašūr; see al-Manṣūr
'Abdallāh b. Mulayl al-Hamādānī 38
'Abdallāh b. Mūsā b. Nuṣayr 201
'Abdallāh b. Muslim, al-Faqīr 129, 199–200
'Abdallāh b. Rizām al-Ḥārithī 15, 25, 39–40, 43
'Abdallāh b. Rumayṭah al-Tā‘ī 10
'Abdallāh b. Shaddād b. al-Ḥād 69
'Abdallāh b. 'Umar 65
'Abdallāh b. Wahb; see Ibn Wahb
'Abdallāh b. Wa‘lān al-‘Adawī 137
'Abdallāh b. Yazīd b. al-Muḥaffāz 43
'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr 88, 114, 116–17, 121, 212
'Ābis al-Bāhili 171
al-Abhrad b. Qurrah al-Tamīmī 25, 42–43
Abraham 148
Abrashahr 155, 164
Abū al-‘Ālā‘ (narrator) 147, 150
Abū al-‘Āš 120
Abū ‘Āṣim [al-Ḍāḥhāk b. Maḥḥad al- Nābīl] (narrator) 210
Abū ‘Āṣim al-Ziyādī (narrator) 223
Abū al-Bakhtārī al-Tā‘ī 25, 36, 37, 42, 48
Abū Bakr b. 'Abd al-‘Azīz b. Marwān 111
Abū Bakr b. 'Abd al-Malīk b. Marwān 118
Abū Bakr b. 'Abd al-Rahmān (b. al- Ḥārith b. Ḥishām) 132, 142, 179, 213
Abū Bakr b. Abī Mūsā al-‘Ash’ārī 139, 156, 214
Abū Bakr b. Amr b. Ḥazm; see Abū Bakr b. Muḥammad b. Amr
Abū Bakr b. ‘Ayyāṣh (narrator) 209–11
Abū Bakr al-Bāhili (narrator) 212
Abū Bakr b. Ḥazm; see Abū Bakr b. Muḥammad b. Amr
Abū Bakr al-Hudhali (narrator) 67
Abū Bakr b. Muḥammad b. Amr b. Ḥazm al-Anṣārī 139, 203, 206
Abū Bakr b. Sulaymān b. Abī Ḥathmāh 132
Abū Burdah b. Abī Mūsā 13
Abū al-Dardā’ al-Khath’āmī 39
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Abu Dāwūd (Khālid b. Ibrāhim al-Dhuhi)</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Dhayyāl (Zuhayr b. Hunayd al-Adawī)</td>
<td>134-138, 147, 150, 153, 185, 187, 198, 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Dhibbān (= ‘Abd al-Malik b. Marwān)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Fawāris al-Tamimi (narrator)</td>
<td>134, 157-158, 147, 150, 153, 185, 187, 198, 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Dhibban (= ’Abd al-Malik b. Marwān)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Fawāris al-Tamimi (narrator)</td>
<td>205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Ghasān Mālik b. Ismā’īl (narrator)</td>
<td>212</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Habibah (narrator)</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Hasan al-Jushamī (narrator)</td>
<td>173-199</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Husayn (narrator)</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Ili, mawlah of ‘Ubaydallāh b. Ma’mar</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Isḥaq (‘Amr b. ‘Abdallāh) al-Sabī’t</td>
<td>7-8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Jahim al-Azdi (narrator)</td>
<td>47-48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Jahim b. Kinānah al-Kalbi</td>
<td>45-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Ḥildah al-Yashkūrī</td>
<td>49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Ḥalib b. ‘Ubayd b. Sarjis</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Kurayb (Muhammad b. al-‘Alā’) (narrator)</td>
<td>209-211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Marḍiyah</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Marḍiyah</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Mihknael Lūt b. Yaḥyā (narrator)</td>
<td>3-5, 6-8, 10-12, 14, 19-20, 24, 26, 35-37, 39, 42, 44, 46-49, 57-59, 63, 68, 77-79, 81, 88, 156, 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Muḥammad b. ‘Abd al-Malik b. Marwān</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Sa’id; see al-Muhallab b. Abī Su‘frah</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Ṣalt (al-‘Awar al-Taymī) (narrator)</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Ṣalt b. Kanārā 63</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Ṣaqr 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Sari al-Marwāzī (narrator)</td>
<td>152, 174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Sawādah 208</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Ṭālib 207</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu ‘Ubaydah Ma’mar b. al-Muthannā (narrator)</td>
<td>63, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu ‘Ubaydah b. al-Walid b. ‘Abd al-Malik</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu ‘Uwaynah b. al-Muhallab 162</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Yazid al-Saksaki (narrator)</td>
<td>24, 26, 37, 42, 46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu Zayd (‘Umar b. Shabbah)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abu al-Zubayr al-Hamdānī al-Arhabi (narrator)</td>
<td>10, 12, 14-15, 20, 35-46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘A’dash b. ‘Abd al-Malik b. Marwān</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘A’ishah bt. ‘Abd al-Malik b. Marwān</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘A’ishah bt. Hishām; see Umm Hishām</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>‘A’ishah bt. Mūsā b. Ṭalḥah, wife of ‘Abd al-Malik b. Marwān</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Akharūn 89, 126, 128
al-Akhrām 134, 142
'Āk' 50
Āl Abī 'Aqīl [a man from] 56
Āl Ja'far 216
Āl Sa'i'd [b. al-ʾĀṣ al-ʾUmārī] 14
al-ʾAlā' b. Jarīr [narrator] 198
al-lāj'; see ʾilī
al-lām 142
'Ali b. Abī Tālib 35, 118
'Ali b. al-Muhājir al-Khuzāʾī 101, 103–4
'Ali b. Muḥammad, see al-Madāʾinī
ʾĀlīj 159
ʾAlqamah b. ʾAmr al-Awdī 77
ʾĀmīr b. Mālik al-Ḥimmānī 165
ʾĀmīr al-Shaʾbī; see al-Shaʾbī
ʾĀmīr b. Waṭṭihāl al-Kinānī, Abū al-Ṭufayl 5, 18
ʾAmmūriyyah (Amorion) 146
ʾĀmr b. Abī Mihzam 168
ʾĀmr b. Abī Qurrah al-Kindī 58
ʾĀmr b. Abī Zahdām [narrator] 197
ʾĀmr b. Dinār 210
ʾĀmr b. Ḥurayth 21
ʾĀmr b. Khālid al-Zuraqī 34
ʾĀmr b. Laqīt al-ʾAbdī 49
ʾĀmr b. Mūlim [narrator] 196–97
ʾĀmr b. Musīlīm [al-Bābīlī] 165, 175
ʾĀmr b. Qays [narrator] 310
ʾĀmr b. Saʿīd al-ʾAshdāq 109
ʾAmsāṭr; see mistr
ʾĀmul 90, 128, 135, 138, 153, 177
Anas b. Abī Shaykh [narrator] 212
ʾAnbasah b. ʾAbd al-Malik b. Marwān 118
ʾAnbasah b. Saʿīd b. al-ʾĀṣ al-Umāwī 14 n. 49, 71, 76
ʾAnbasah b. al-Walīd b. ʾAbd al-Malik 219
al-Andalus 164, 182, 201, 215, 219
ʾAntākkiyāh 134, 204
ʾArahāf 145
ʿArbāʾ 95
Arbinjān 197
al-Arzan 149
ʾĀsāwīrah 191
ʾAṣhā Banī Shaybān 120
ʾAṣhā Hamdān 6, 7, 59–63, 82
ʾĀshārīs 50
al-ʾAshāth b. Qays 25, 58, 79
al-ʾAshjaʾī [narrator] 210
al-ʾAshqarī, see Kaʾb b. Maʿdān al-ʾAshqarī
ʾAshrāf; see sharīf
al-Ashtar 23
ʾĀṭāʾa b. Abī Rabāh 210
ʾĀṭāʾa b. Abī al-Sāʿīb [al-Laythī] 56
[al-]ʾĀṭīk 27, 53, 75
ʾAṭiyah, mawla of ʾĀṭīk 27
ʾAṭiyah b. ʾAmr al-ʾAnbārī 7
ʾAttāb b. Bishr [narrator] 213
ʾAwānah [b. al-Ḥakam] al-Kalbi [narrator] 39, 73, 118
ʾAwf b. al-Khari 205
ʾAynān 194
ʾAyn al-Tamr 22
ʾAyyāsh b. ʾAbdallāh al-Ghanawī [narrator] 174
ʾAyyāsh b. al-Aswād b. ʾAwf al-Zuhrī 56
ʾAyyāsh al-Ghanawī 174–75
ʾAyyūb b. al-Ḥakam b. Abī ʾAqīl [to be understood as al-Ḥakam b. Ayyūb, q.v.] 19, 46, 130
ʾAyyūb b. al-Qirriyyah 72–73
ʾAyyūb b. Sulaymān b. ʾAbd al-Malik 161
al-ʾAzd 150, 152, 159
B
bāʾ 172
al-ʾBāb (= Bāb al-Abwāb) 148, 164
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
<th>241</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bāb al-Ḥadid (the Iron Gate)                                         175</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bāb al-Jābiyyah                                                      125–26</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bāb al-Saghīr                                                        219</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bādghīs                                                              74–75, 88, 133</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bādhām, king of Marw al-Rūdh                                         154, 174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bādhībin                                                             171</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baghālūn                                                             165, 166</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahallāh; see Bahallāh                                              86, 157</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahilāh                                                              165, 170, 177, 193, 197</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahilīs                                                              128, 143, 146, 153, 169, 170, 177, 185, 192, 194–95, 197, 229</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahallāh/Bahallāh                                                    86, 157</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Bakhtārī (narrator)                                               108</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakkār b. ʿAbd al-Malik; see Abū Bakr b. ʿAbd al-Malik b. Marwān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakr b. Ḥabīb al-Sahmī al-Bāhili                                     170</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bakr b. Wāʾil 17, 33, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balkh river; see Oxus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Balṭaʾ al-Saʾdi                                                    17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Bāmīyān                                                           99</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū al-ʿAbbās                                                       144</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Abī al-ʿĀṣ                                                        25</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū ʿĀdī                                                             138</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū ʿĀmir (of Kalb)                                                 39, 45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū al-ʿAnbar                                                        17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Anf al-Nāqah                                                     17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Ḍubayʾah                                                         139</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Ḥanīfah                                                          57</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Ḥāshim                                                           211</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Jaʿfar b. Qurayʾ                                               17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Jaḥdar                                                          18</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Makhzūm                                                          147, 178, 219</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū al-Malakān                                                      137</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Marwān                                                          24, 61</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Mujāshiʿ b. Dārīm                                               50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Naṣr b. Muʿāwiyah                                               63, 65</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Qays b. Thaʿlabah                                               17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Qurayʾ                                                           151, 152</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Rāyḥ b. Yarbū                                                    19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Ṣadūs                                                            6, 195</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Taym Allāḥ b. Thaʿlabah                                        8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Umayyāh                                                          198</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Umayyah b. Zayd                                                  208</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Banū Yarbū                                                            19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Barāʾ (b. Qabiṣah b. Abī ʿAqīl al-Thaqāfī)                        14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Barāʾ b. Abī Ṭaṣlīm b. Abī ʿAmīr                                  192, 196</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barmak                                                               129</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Barūqān                                                           154–55</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bashshār b. ʿAmr (narrator)                                          177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bashshār b. Muslim al-Bāhili                                         143</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Baskharāʾ                                                             187</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ḥaṣrah xiii, 9–19, 21, 34, 46–49, 67, 69, 130, 139, 156–57, 214, 217</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Ḥaṭāʾib                                                           157–58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bayna al-ashajī wa-bayna Qays                                            59, 62</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bishr b. ʿĪsā (narrator)                                             174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bishr b. al-Mundhir b. al-Jārūd                                      117–19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-ʿAbīdi                                                             69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bishr b. al-Walīd b. ʿAbd al-Malik                                    217–19</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bīṣām b. Maṣqalāh b. Hubayrah                                        37, 38, 43–44, 47–48, 69</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Biward                                                               155, 164</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Budandūn (Podendon)                                               146</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bukayr b. Rabiʾah b. Thawwān                                         al-Ḍabbī 48, 70</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bukayr b. Wishāḥ                                                     94</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bukhārā 90–91, 96–97, 100, 135, 137–38, 146–47, 150, 152, 176–77, 197, 205, 216</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bukhārā Khudbāḥ                                                      177</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Būlaq                                                                134</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Būlus (and Qumqum)                                                   134</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burj al-Ḥamām                                                        204</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bust 6, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B.yār                                                                229</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Byzantine Emperor/king                                                142, 149–50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Byzantines xiv, 72, 134, 140, 142, 146, 149–50, 184</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C

| China                                                            144, 171, 224–26, 228 |
| Chosroes                                                        7 |
| Cordova                                                         201 |
| Ctesiphon n. 14                                                  |
Index

D
al-Dahbâk b. Yazîd b. Huzayl 102
Dâhir b. Saâshah 149, 223
Damascus 126, 142, 198, 218–19, 223
Dâmrâh b. Rabi‘ah (narrator) 67
Dâr Marwân 132, 206
Dastawâ 12
Dâwûd b. Jâbâr (narrator) 132
Dayr al-Jamâ‘im, battle 8, 20–26, 35–44, 46, 58, 72
Dayr Murran 219
Dayr Qurrah 22
dhîrâ’ 172
Dhû al-Hulayfah 144
Dhû Khushuh 179
Dhû Tawâ 148 n 498
Dhubâb 113
Dînâr al-Sijistânî 27
Dirâr b. Hûsåyn al-Dabhî 135, 169
Dùjâyl (river = Kârûn) 10, 47, 69
durâ‘ah 180

E
Egypt xii, 80, 109, 111–12, 114, 149, 156, 214
Euphrates 44, 75

F
al-Fâdîl b. Suwayd (narrator) 211
Fahm b. ’Amr (tribe) 119
al-Fâlûjî 22
al-Fâlûjah 43
fâls 219
Fanj Jâh 166
faqih, pl. fuqahâ’ 35, 213
al-Fâradîs graveyard 219
al-Fârazdaq 64–65, 84, 158
Farghânah 143, 190, 195, 197, 204–6, 224
Farghânah valley (south of Baghlân) 166
Fârs 7–8, 16, 18, 24, 65, 156, 228
Fârtânâ 90
al-Fâryâb 147, 154, 165
Fâtimah bt. ’Abd al-Malik b. Marwân 118
Fâyrûz Hûsâyn, Abû ’Uthmân 56, 64, 67
the Fâzâriyyah, mother of Abû ’Ubây’dah b. al-Walîd b. ’Abd al-Malik 219
(al-)Fil 186–89, 229
fitnah 8
fitnâyân 105
fûrâyâb (a place in Transoxania) 175
Fuqaylî b. Khâdîjî (al-Kindî) 10
fuqahâ‘; see faqih
Furs 165

G
ghâliyâh 226
al-Ghârriyân 16
Gharshîstân 165 n. 544
Ghazalât (Gazelon) 142, 184, 204
Ghazwân al-Iskifî, lord of Zamm 27
ghulâm 30, 64
Gufrâk 176, 177, 192, 194–95, 197–98
Ghûrâb 159
Ghushtâbân 128, 174
Gûtân 95, 98, 106, 128

H
Hâ‘, mim 104
Ḫâbîb b. ’Abdallâh b. ’Amr b. Ḥûsâyîn al-Ḫâshîli 172
Ḫâbîb b. al-Muḥallâb 31–32, 63–64, 129, 157, 163
Index 243

Habib b. 'Uqba b. Nafi' al-Fihri 201
Hafl b. 'Umar b. Qabishah (narrator) 56
Hajj al-Hashim; see 'Abd al-Rahman b.
Hafiz b. 'Umar b. Qabigah (narrator) 56
Hajjaj b. 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwan 118
Hajjaj b. Jariyah al-Khatami 25, 39
Hajjaj b. Marwan 107
Hajjaj al-Qayni 171
Hajjani 148
Hakam b. 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwan 118
Hakam b. Ayyub (sometimes wrongly Ayyub b. al-Hakam) b. Abi 'Aqil al-Thaqafi 11-12, 19, 46, 130
Hakam b. Makhrarah al-'Abdi 69
Hakam b. 'Uthman (narrator) 225
Halif 19, 76
Hamdan 7, 21
Hamidah (or Humaydah), the daughter (or sister) of Ziyad b. Muqatil 17
Hammad b. Muslim (al-Bahili) 165
Hamid b. 'Umar 70
Hamza b. Bz 194-95
Hamza b. Ibrahim (narrator) 171-72
Hanafi sword 169
Hanbal b. Abi Huraydah (narrator) 171-72, 174, 185
Hanzalah b. al-Warrad al-Tamimi 19
Har rug 13, 127, 130, 139, 164, 200, 217
Harish b. HilaL al-Sa'di 17-18
Harith (b. Muhammad) (narrator) 114, 116-17
al-Harit b. Malik b. Rabi'ah al-Ash'ari 163
Harit b. Munqidh, uterine brother of Hurayth and Thabit, the sons of Qubah b.
Harith b. Rabi'ah; see al-Harit b. Malik
Harit b. Wa'lah 8
Harun b. 'Isa (narrator) 134
Hasan b. Aban al-'Ulaymi 160
Hasan b. Rushayd al-Jurjani (narrator) 126, 137, 174, 185, 188
Harshim; see 'Abd al-Rahman b.
'Hassan b. Rabi'ah
Ha'tim b. Abi Saghirah (narrator) 197
Hawaran 216
Hawshab (an executioner) 66
Hawshab b. Yazid 73, 73
Hayyan al-Kharjij 207
al-Haytham b. al-Munakhkhal al-Jurmuzi 27
Hayyan (b. Iyas) al-'Adawi 196
Hayyan al-Naba'i 153, 200
Hazarasp 186-87
Hephthalites 97
Herat 52-53, 64, 77, 155, 164
Hilal b. Khubbab (narrator) 213
al-Hilqam b. Na'aym b. al-Qa'q'ah b. Ma'bad b. Zurarah 56-57, 66
al-Hilwah b. al-Kalbi (narrator) 223
al-Hind 204, 215, 219, 223
Hind b. al-Muhallab 157
Hiraqlah (Herakleia) 146, 215
Hisham b. 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwan xv, 118, 134
Hisham b. Ayyub b. 'Abd al-Rahman b. Abi 'Aqil (al-Thaqafi) 19, 49, 57
Hisham b. Hassan 68
Hisham b. Isma'il al-Makhzumi 33, 71, 76, 113-15, 129, 131-33
Hisham b. Muhammed; see Ibn al-Kalbi
Hisin al-Hadid 184
Hit 22
Horsemen of Soghd 91
Hishwar 100
Hubayrah b. al-Musharraj al-Kilabi 225, 227-28
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>[al-]Ḥuḍayn b. al-Mundhir, Abū Sāsān 86–87, 194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hudhayl 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hulay s [b. Ghālib] al-Shaybānī 56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥumayy al-Arqāt 82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥumayy al; see Ḥamidah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Huraym b. Ṭāmah al-Mujashī'i 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥurayth b. Qutbā, mawlā of Khużā'ah 29–31, 96–99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Husayn [b. 'Ali] 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥusayn b. Mūjāhid al-Rāzī [narrator] 134</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ḥuṭamiyyah 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abī Dhi'b 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abī Mulaykah ('Abdallāh b. 'Ubaydallāh) 145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Abī Sabrah [narrator] 40, 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn 'Affān, see 'Uthmān b. 'Affān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Ā'ishah [narrator] 81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn 'āmm 39, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn al-Ash'ath, see 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muhammad b. al-Ash'ath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn 'Attāb b. Warqā [= Khālid b. 'Attāb!] 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Bahlah; see al-Mufaḍdī al-Muhallab</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Bassām al-Layḥī 168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn al-Ḥadrāmi, see 'Abd al-Rahmān b. 'Abdallāh b. Āmir al-Ḥadrāmi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Ja'dah b. Hubayrah 43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Ju'dubah [narrator] 113</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn al-Kalbī, Hishām b. Muhammad [narrator] 4, 14, 20, 35, 39, 46,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>56–57, 73, 77, 81, 88, 156, 160, 218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Kāwān island 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Mūḥammad b. al-Ash'ath; see 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Mūḥammad b. al-Ash'ath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Mūḥayriz al-Jumāhī 140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn al-Qalammas 119</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Qays al-Ruqayyyāt 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn al-Qirriyyah; see Ayyūb b. al-Qirriyyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Sa'd [narrator] 114, 116–17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Shawdhāb [narrator] 67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Ṭalḥāh; see 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Ṭalḥāh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn 'Ubaydallāh b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Samurāh 66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn 'Umar,' see 'Abdallāh b. 'Umar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Wahh ['Abdallāh] [narrator] 218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn Ziyād ('Ubaydallāh b. Ziyād) 103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibn al-Zubayr; see 'Abdallāh b. al-Zubayr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ibrāhīm b. al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idrīs b. Ḥanṣalālah [narrator] 147, 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ifriqiyyah 201, 215</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ihram 144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ikhsād of Farghānah 190–91, 195</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'ilī, pl. al-lāj 25, 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ijmā'at al-salāt 36 n. 151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Imrān b. Faḍil al-Burjumī 139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Imrān b. 'Īsām al-‘Anāzī 109–11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iraq xi–xiii, xv, 6, 9–10, 13, 23, 44, 60, 66, 72, 88, 97, 102, 115–16,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>129, 139, 156, 201, 207, 214, 216, 223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Īsām al-‘Anāzī 111</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>'Īsām pass 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iṣbahān 183, 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iṣbahbadh of Balkh 154, 165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iṣḥāq b. 'Īsā [narrator] 13, 34, 71, 76, 115–16, 129, 139, 145, 148,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>156, 179, 183, 202, 214, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iṣḥāq b. Muḥammad b. al-Ash'ath 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iṣḥāq b. Yahyā 180–81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iṣkimisht 166, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Island of 'Uthmān 106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iṣmā‘īl b. Ibrāhīm b. 'Uqbah [narrator] 178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ısnaḍ 189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʿIwān 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʿIyād b. 'Amr 6 n. 12, 50 n. 188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʿIyād b. Himyān al-Bakrī 6, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ʿIyād b. Ḥuḍayn b. al-Mundhir 87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iyās b. 'Abdallāh b. 'Amr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iyās b. Bayḥās al-Bāḥili</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iyās b. al-Zuhayr (narrator)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Kalbi, Muhammad b. al-Sā‘īb (narrator)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Kallā‘</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Kāmil, Yazid b. al-Muhallab’s horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Karkh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāṣān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāshghar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kaskar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kathīr b. fulān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Kayraj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāzah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kāzirān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khabīs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khalaf b. Khalifah (narrator)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khālid b. ‘Abdallāh al-Qasri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khālid b. Abī Barzah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khālid b. al-‘Asfāḥ (narrator)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khālid b. Bāb, mawla of Muslim b. ‘Amr (narrator)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khālid b. Barmaḳ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khālid b. Jarīt b. ‘Abdallāh al-Qasri</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khālid b. Kāṣān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khālid b. al-Qāsim [al-Bayādī] (narrator)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khālid b. Qaṭān al-Ḥārithī (narrator)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khālid b. al-Walīd b. ‘Abd al-Malik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khālid b. Yazid b. Mu‘āwiyah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khālifah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kham Jīr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khanjārah (Gangra)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khāqān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kharāj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kharashah b. ‘Amr al-Tamīmī</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khārījah b. Zayd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khāriji(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kharqān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kharqānah</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khath’am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khaṭṭ‘ah, a slave girl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khaṭīb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khawārīj; see Khāriji(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Index</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khâzim b. 'Abdallâh b. Khâzim 99, 108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>khazz</em> 101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kh.dâsh 68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kh.n.s Târkhân 168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khubayb b. ‘Abdallâh b. al-Zubayr 202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khujandah 205</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khulayd ‘Aynayn 55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khulm 154, 156, 165–66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>khums 17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khurasani shaykh[s] [narrator[s]] 133, 174, 225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khushaynah b. al-Walid (narrator) 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Khuzâ’i [anonymous], opponent of Mûsâ b. ‘Abdallâh b. Khâzim 94–96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kwârazm 87, 104–9, 190, 194, 200, 205, 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kwârazm Shâh 185–87, 201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Kwârazmî, mawila of Qutaybah b. Muslim 224</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kilâb 39</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kîrmân 8, 10, 16, 49, 79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kîsh 27, 29, 31, 91–93, 100, 147, 174–77, 205, 216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K.shbyz 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Kûfah xiii, 13, 16, 19 ff., 26, 34, 44, 46, 48, 72, 130, 139, 156, 212, 214, 217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kulayb b. Khalaf al-‘Amî [narrator] 87, 126, 153, 185</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kumayl b. Ziyâd al-Nakha’î 26, 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Kumayt b. Zayd al-Asâdi 137, 198, 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kunyâh 117</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Index

Mardādhān 187
Marw [al-J]Rūdha 31, 33, 54, 87, 135, 154, 165, 199
Marwān b. 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān 118
Marwān al-Akbar b. 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān 118
Marwān b. al-Muhallab 157
Marwān b. al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik 184, 219
Marzbān of Qūhistān [narrator] 171–72, 174, 185
al-Marzbānayn 215
Māsabādhan 38
Māsah [Amaseia] 184
Māsāmī'ah 11 n. 38
Maskin 47 n. 178
Maskin, battle 46–48, 53, 63, 68, 69
Masqalāh b. Karib b. Raqabah al-'Abdī 44
Masrūr b. al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik 219
al-Maṣṣiḥah 72, 134
Maṣṭar b. Naṣiyyah al-Yarbū'ī 19–21
maṭurīf 226
muʿūnāh 19
Mawdūd al-Naṣrī al-'Anbārī 78–79
Mawqūf 158
al-Mawṣīl 23, 44
Mawmūn al-Jurjumānī 134
Maysān 84
Mecca xiv, 145, 147, 156, 177, 181, 202, 206, 210, 212, 214
Mīḥfān b. Jaz' al-Kilābī 170
Minā 145
al-Mirbād 17
Misma' b. Mālik b. Misma' 70
mithqāl 137, 142, 194
Moses 105
Mosul; see al-Mawsīl
Muʿāwiyyah b. 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān 118
Muʿāwiyyah b. Abī Sufyān 181, 208
Muʿāwiyyah b. 'Amīr b. 'Alqamah al-ʿUlaymi 169
Muʿāwiyyah b. Khālid b. Abī Barzah 106
al-Mubahshīr b. al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik 219
Muṣṭar 66, 133, 198
Mudārik b. al-Muhallab 105–7
al-Mufaddāl al-Ḍabbī; see al-Mufaddāl b. Muḥammad
al-Mughirah b. 'Abdallāh, subgovernor of Qutaybah's 154, 200–1
al-Mughirah b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī 'Aqīl 130
al-Mughirah b. Ḥabnā' 170, 173
al-Mughirah b. al-Muhallab 13, 26–28
al-Muhallab, a Muslim of Shiʿmān 175
al-Muhallab b. Abī Ṣūfrāh, Abī Saʿīd xiii, 9–11, 13, 26–33, 64, 89, 96, 139, 160, 199
Muhallabids xiii, xv, 84–85, 88
Muḥammad, the Prophet 8–9, 61, 141, 198
Muḥammad b. Abān b. 'Abdallāh 10 n. 30
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Abd al-Malik b.</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Marwân</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Abd al-Rahmān b. al-Ḥārith b. Hishām</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh b. Abi Ḥurrāh (narrator)</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh b. Jumayr, mawla of the Banū al-'Abbās (narrator)</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh b. Marthad al-Khuza‘ī</td>
<td>99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Abdallāh b. Muhammad b. 'Umar (narrator)</td>
<td>132</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. Abi 'Uyaynah</td>
<td>194</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. al-Ash’ath</td>
<td>58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. al-Ḥājaj</td>
<td>16, 48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. al-Qisim al-Thagafi</td>
<td>xiii, 149, 204, 206, 219, 223</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. Sa’d b. Abi Waqqās</td>
<td>25, 46, 56–57, 65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. al-Sā‘ib; see al-Kalbi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. Sulaym al-Nāṣiḥ</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. 'Umar; see al-Wāqidi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. al-Walid b. 'Abd al-Malik</td>
<td>219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. Yazid al-Anṣārī</td>
<td>112</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muhammad b. Yusuf al-Thaqāfi</td>
<td>221–22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Muhill al-Ṭufāwī</td>
<td>101</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>muthāb‘a</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mużāhid (b. Jabr)</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mujāshshar b. Mużāhim al-Sulāmi</td>
<td>189</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muji‘ah b. 'Abd al-Rahmān al-'Ataki</td>
<td>27–28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muji‘ah b. Si‘r al-Sa‘di</td>
<td>85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mukhtubār b. Abi 'Ubayd</td>
<td>7 n. 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mulaykābah, wife of 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Muhammad b. al-Ash‘ath</td>
<td>43, 78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Munakhkhal b. Ḥabīs al-'Abdī (narrator)</td>
<td>6, 49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mundhir b. 'Abd al-Malik b. Marwān</td>
<td>118</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Mundhir b. al-Jārūd</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Munqīd al-'Irāqī</td>
<td>207</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Murra b. 'Aṭā’ b. Abī al-Sā‘ib</td>
<td>56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mūsā, a man reproved in a line of verse</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mūsā b. Abī Bakr (narrator)</td>
<td>142, 179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mūsā b. al-Mutawakkil al-Quray‘ī (narrator)</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mūsā b. Nuṣayr</td>
<td>146, 182, 201, 215, 219</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mūsā b. 'Uqba</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mūsā b. Ya‘qūb (narrator)</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mus‘ab (b. 'Abdallāh b. Abī 'Aqil al-Thaqafi)</td>
<td>14–15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mus‘ab b. Ḥayyān (narrator)</td>
<td>143, 170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mus‘ab b. al-Zubayr</td>
<td>116, 213</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muslim b. 'Amr al-Bahilī, father of Qutaybah</td>
<td>138–39, 192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muslim b. Qutaybah</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>musta‘ribah</td>
<td>134, 142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muṭṭahhar b. Ḥurr al-'Akkī (or al-Judhāmī)</td>
<td>10–12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muṭṭarīf b. 'Āmir b. Wāthilah al-Kinānī</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Muzāḥim, mawla of 'Umar b. 'Abd al-'Azīz</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N

al-Nādir | 172, 190 |
al-Nādr b. Shumayl (narrator) | 68 |
nafal | 192 |
Nāfī’, mawla of the Banū Makhzūm (narrator) | 147, 178 |
Nāfī’ b. 'Alqamah | 84 |
Nahār b. Tawsī‘ah al-Taymī | 32, 147, 172, 199 |
Index

Nahr Tira 68
Nahshal b. Yazid (narrator) 195
Nasaf 27, 100, 147, 174-77, 205, 216
Naṣr b. ‘Abd al-Ḥamid al-Khuzā‘i 99
Naṣr b. Sāyūr 128
al-Nawbahar 129, 154
Nawfāl b. Musāḥiq al-‘Amiri 33
Nile 75
Nishāpur 90, 201
Nizāk, Abū al-Ḥayyāj 74-76, 96-97, 103-4, 133-34, 143, 153-56, 164-74
al-Nūṣayr 62
Nūqān 91
Nuṣayr, mawla of al-Faḍl b. ‘Abbās 16

O

Oxus 29, 90, 99, 186

P

Palestine xv, 84, 159
Paykand 134-37
Pharaoh 6, 46

Q

Qabīsah b. Dhu‘ayb, Abū Ishaq 108-9, 181
al-Qādisiyyah 21
Qahtān 7, 33, 64
qalansuwwah 180
Qamūdīyyah (Kamouliana) 146
Qaryah, in Fārs 228
al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad 132, 142
al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad b. al-Aswath 6, 79-80
al-Qāsim b. Muḥammad al-Ḥaḍrami [narrator] 56
Qaṣr al-Mā‘ 215
qāṣṣ 6
Qaybishtasbān 174
al-Qayrawān 215
Qays 44, 85, 96, 97, 206
qiblah 141, 180
Qinnasrin 216
qubbah 99 n. 370, 110
Quḍā‘ah 61
Qudāmah b. al-Ḥarish al-Tamimi 40-42
Qudāmah b. Yazīd b. Huzayl 102
Qūmīs 105
Qumqum 134
Qur’an 32, 140, 163, 220-21
Quraysh 14, 21-22, 25, 61, 81, 110, 121, 144
Qurayyah 172, 190
qurrā‘ 12, 15, 22, 25-26, 35-37, 67, 211
Qurrāh b. Sharik 149, 156, 214
Qustantin 142

R

al-Rabadhah 210
Rabī‘ah 38, 97
rafāghah 22
Rajā‘ b. Ḥaywah [al-Kindi] 181
rajaz poet 28
Rāmīthanah 143, 146
Raqabah b. al-Ḥurr al-‘Anbari 100-1, 103, 107
Raqāsh 194
rasīl 148
Rawb b. al-Walid b. ‘Abd al-Malik 219, 221
al-Rayy 38, 58, 63, 99, 129
Index

ridā’ 150, 180, 212, 226
rit’ 54
Riyāb b. ‘Ubaydallāh 207
Roderic; see Adrinūq
al-Ru‘b 165
Ru‘b Khan 165
al-Rukhkhaj 80
al-Ruqād b. ‘Ubayd (or Ziyād) al-Azdi
al-‘Ataki 53
Rustam 98
Rustāqubādh 12, 156

S
al-Sabal 96–97, 106, 171
Sabrah b. [al-]Nakhīf b. Abī Sufrāh 56
Sābūr 48
Sa‘d b. Najd al-Qurdūsī 56
Sa‘d b. ‘Ubaydallāh [narrator] 81
Ṣadaqah b. al-Walīd b. ‘Abd al-Malik 219
Safawān 17
Ṣaffūriyyah 25
al-Ṣaghāniyyān 97, 102, 104, 127–28
Ṣabīn Wā’il 205
Sahm b. ‘Abd al-Rahmān al-Juhani
[narrator] 19, 37
Sa‘īd b. ‘Amr al-Aṣārī [narrator] 208–9
Sa‘īd b. ‘Amr b. al-Aswād al-Harāshī
[narrator] 40–42
Sa‘īd b. al-‘Āṣ [al-Umawī] 23
Sa‘īd al-Harāshī; see Sa‘īd b. ‘Amr b.
al-Aswād al-Harāshī
Sa‘īd b. Jubayr, Abū ‘Abdallāh 25, 36,
42, 209–13
Marwān 118
Sa‘īd b. al-Musayyab 113–15, 132,
179–80, 213
Sa‘īd b. ‘Abbās b. Sa‘īd b. al-‘Āṣ [al-
Umawī] 15
al-Fahmi 118–19

ṣalāt 129, 217
Ṣāliḥ b. Kaysān [narrator] 40, 142,
144–45, 179
Ṣāliḥ b. Muslim, brother of Qutaybah
128, 170, 175, 191, 196
Sālim b. ‘Abdallāh b. ‘Umar 132, 142
Sālim al-Aftas [narrator] 213
Salm b. Qutaybah 194
Samarqand 91, 188–200, 224
Samastiyyah [Mistheia] 184
al-Samāwāh 158
Sarakh 155, 164
al-Sarī b. Ismā‘īl [narrator] 58
Sawādah b. ‘Abdallāh al-Salūlī 228
Sawwār, mawlā of Mūsā b. ‘Abdallāh
b. Khāzim 98
Sawwār b. Marwān 56
Sawwār b. Zahdām al-Jarmī 170
Sayf b. Bishr al-‘Ijli [narrator] 6, 49
sayyid 27
al-Sha‘bī‘, ‘Āmir b. Sharāhil 25, 36, 58,
59
al-Shadh 155, 171
shākiyyah 31, 99, 103, 104
Shaqrā‘ī bt. Salamah b. Ḥalbas al-Tā‘ī,
wife of ‘Abd al-Malik b. Marwān
118
Shaqrān; see ‘Uthmān [called Shaqrān]
Sharawrā 60
sharīf, pl. ashrāf xi–xii, 55, 58, 67,
229
al-Shāsh 190–91, 195, 197, 204–6,
215–16
al-Shaybānī [narrator] 67
Sh. bās 187
Shu‘bah b. Zuhayr 195–96
Shūmān 89, 126, 128, 133, 174–75,
177
al-Sib 68–69
Ṣiffin 35
Sijistān xii, 5, 6, 9–10, 18, 48, 50–53,
63, 79, 177, 183, 189
Siminjān 166
Sinān al-Arābī 107
Sind xi, xiii, 56, 149
Index

Siyāh, mawla of Qutaybah b. Muslim 135
Soghd 91, 106, 153, 176-77, 185, 188-90, 195-200, 205, 229
Soghdians 135, 143, 147, 150, 189-95, 197
Solomon, son of David 201
Sufyān b. Al-Abra'īd al-Kalbi 15, 25, 42, 47-48, 61
Sufyān b. Sulaymān al-Azdi 159
Suhrāk, king of al-Tālaqān 154
Sūl, son of Nizāk's brother 168, 170, 173-74
Sūl Tarkhān 168
Sulaymān al-Nāṣīḥ, mawla of 'Ubaydallāh b. Abī Bakrah 133, 136, 166-69
Sulaymān b. 'Abd al-Malik xiv-xv, 13, 112-14, 118, 156, 159-63, 221-24
Sulaymān b. Abī Rāshid [narrator] 78
Sulaymān b. 'Āli 194
Sulaymān b. Ḥabīb [alm-Muhāribī] 213
Sulaymān b. Kathīr al-'Ammī [narrator] 126
Sulaymān b. Mujālīd [narrator] 174
Sulaymān b. Yāsār 132
Sumayyāh [wife of 'Āmir b. Wāthilāh?] 18
Sūriyāh [Issurīa] 146, 149, 204
al-Sūs 48
Sūsanah [Sisōn] 134, 182
al-Suwaydā' 179, 202
Syria xii, 10, 22, 44, 116, 159, 173, 198, 204, 207, 213, 223

T
al-Ṭabasayn 56
[alm-Ṭ] Taghlib 33, 138
al-Ṭā'īf 156
takbir 94, 95
al-Tālaqān 127, 154-56, 165, 172
Ṭālāstānah 87
Ṭalḥāh b. 'Abdallāh al-Khuza'i 64, 103
Ṭalq b. Ḥabīb 210
[alm-Banū] Tamīm 21, 50, 90, 97, 150-52
Tammām b. al-Walīd b. 'Abd al-Malik 219
Tan'im 144
Ṭarāfah [b. al-'Abd] 198
Ṭarhamah 184
Ṭāriq b. 'Abdallāh al-Asadī 38
Ṭāriq b. Ziyād, mawla of Mūsā b. Nuṣayr xiv, 182, 201
Ṭārkhūn 91-92, 96-98, 100, 102-4, 106, 152, 176-77, 190, 196
Ṭawā 148
Ṭaybāh 202
Ṭaybān b. Abjar 8
Ṭābīt al-Awar, mawla of Muslim 185
Ṭābīt Qutnah 172, 229
Ṭhamūd 198
Ṭhaqīf 7, 14, 45, 85
Ṭawr b. Yazīd [narrator] 140
Ṭawr b. Ziyād, mawla of Musa b. Nuṣayr xiv, 182, 201
Ṭalāstānah 87
Ṭūsik, king of al-Fāryāb 154
Index

Wahb b. Jarîr [b. Hāzim] [narrator] 211
Wâki‘ b. Abî Sûd, Abû Mu‘tarrif 150–51
Wâksh Khâshân 170
Wa‘lân al-‘Adawi 138, 139
al-Walîd b. Hîshâm al-Mu‘ayyî 204
al-Walîd b. Naḥît al-Kalbi 39
al-Walîd b. Yazîd b. ‘Abd al-Malik 141
Wardân Khudâh 147, 150
Wâsîl b. Tayṣâlah al-‘Anbarî 107
Wâsît/Wâsît al-Qasab xiii, 64, 70–71, 84, 215
wîd 221
Wuḥayb b. ‘Abd al-Râhmân al-Azdi 159

Y

Yahyâ b. al-Ḥakam 33
Yahyâ b. Khâlid [narrator] 192
Yahyâ b. al-Nu‘mân al-Ghifârî [narrator] 142
Yahyâ b. al-Walîd b. ‘Abd al-Malik 219
Yahyâ b. Ya‘mar al-Adwânî 76

Yâmaniyyah 63
Yawm al-Dân 117
Yazdajird 195
Yazid b. ‘Abd al-Malik b. Marwân 118, 144
Yazid b. Abî Kabshah 84, 204, 217
Yazid b. Abî Muslim 58, 217
Yazid b. Abî Ziyâd, mawlá of the Banû Hâshim [narrator] 211
Yazid b. Dinâr 84
Yazid b. Husayn b. Numayr 84
Yazid b. Huzayl 101–3
Yazid b. Jubayr 133
Yazid b. Mu‘âwiyyah 65
Yazid b. al-Walîd b. ‘Abd al-Malik 195, 219
Yemen 97, 221–22
Yûnûs b. Abî Ishaq [narrator] 19, 20, 134, 205, 218

Z

Zabârâ bridge 20
al-Zâbir [b. ‘Abdallâh b. al-Zubayr?] 178
al-Zâbul 183
Zâbulistân 7
Zâghûl 31
Zâmm 27, 90, 135, 138, 147
Zamzam 148
Zarānî 6, 50
al-Zâwiyyah 11, 24, 49, 67
Zawraq, a herdsman and guide 68
Ziyâd, a man with al-Ḥajjâj at al-Zâwiyyah 15
Ziyâd b. Ghunaym al-Qaynî 47
Ziyâd b. Jarîr b. ‘Abdallâh al-Bajalî 82, 130, 139, 156, 214
Ziyâd al-Qâṣîr al-Khuza‘î 102
al-Zubayr, mawlá of ‘Abîs al-Bâhîlî 171
Zubayrîds xi–xii, 85, 88
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Name</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Zuhayr, Abū Sa'īd, companion of Thābit b. Qurṭbah</td>
<td>101-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zuhayr b. Ḥayyān</td>
<td>195-96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zuhayr b. Hunayd, see Abū al-Dhayyāl</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>al-Zuhri, ibn Shihāb ( narrator)</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zunbil</td>
<td>3, 6, 50-53, 63, 77-81, 183, 209</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zur‘ah b. ‘Alqamah al-Sulami</td>
<td>90, 92, 107</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>